



Operation and Maintenance Manual

322B L , 325B L Excavators and , 322B, 325B Forest Machines and , 325B Material Handler

2JR 1-Up (325B)
1YS 1-Up (322B)

Language: Original Instructions



Scan to find and purchase genuine Cat® parts and related service information.



Important Safety Information

Most accidents that involve product operation, maintenance and repair are caused by failure to observe basic safety rules or precautions. An accident can often be avoided by recognizing potentially hazardous situations before an accident occurs. A person must be alert to potential hazards, including human factors that can affect safety. This person should also have the necessary training, skills and tools to perform these functions properly.

Improper operation, lubrication, maintenance or repair of this product can be dangerous and could result in injury or death.

Do not operate or perform any lubrication, maintenance or repair on this product, until you verify that you are authorized to perform this work, and have read and understood the operation, lubrication, maintenance and repair information.

Safety precautions and warnings are provided in this manual and on the product. If these hazard warnings are not heeded, bodily injury or death could occur to you or to other persons.

The hazards are identified by the "Safety Alert Symbol" and followed by a "Signal Word" such as "DANGER", "WARNING" or "CAUTION". The Safety Alert "WARNING" label is shown below.



The meaning of this safety alert symbol is as follows:

Attention! Become Alert! Your Safety is Involved.

The message that appears under the warning explains the hazard and can be either written or pictorially presented.

A non-exhaustive list of operations that may cause product damage are identified by "NOTICE" labels on the product and in this publication.

Caterpillar cannot anticipate every possible circumstance that might involve a potential hazard. The warnings in this publication and on the product are, therefore, not all inclusive. You must not use this product in any manner different from that considered by this manual without first satisfying yourself that you have considered all safety rules and precautions applicable to the operation of the product in the location of use, including site-specific rules and precautions applicable to the worksite. If a tool, procedure, work method or operating technique that is not specifically recommended by Caterpillar is used, you must satisfy yourself that it is safe for you and for others. You should also ensure that you are authorized to perform this work, and that the product will not be damaged or become unsafe by the operation, lubrication, maintenance or repair procedures that you intend to use.

The information, specifications, and illustrations in this publication are on the basis of information that was available at the time that the publication was written. The specifications, torques, pressures, measurements, adjustments, illustrations, and other items can change at any time. These changes can affect the service that is given to the product. Obtain the complete and most current information before you start any job. Cat dealers have the most current information available.



When replacement parts are required for this product Caterpillar recommends using Cat replacement parts.

Failure to follow this warning may lead to premature failures, product damage, personal injury or death.

In the United States, the maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems may be performed by any repair establishment or individual of the owner's choosing.

Table of Contents

Foreword	4	Before Operation	47
Safety Section		Machine Operation	50
Safety Messages	6	Engine Starting	98
General Hazard Information	15	Operation	103
Crushing Prevention and Cutting Prevention ..	17	Operating Techniques	107
Burn Prevention	18	Parking	118
Fire Prevention and Explosion Prevention	19	Transportation Information	121
Fire Extinguisher Location	22	Towing Information	129
Track Information	22	Engine Starting (Alternate Methods)	132
Electrical Storm Injury Prevention	22	Maintenance Section	
Before Starting Engine	22	Lubricant Viscosities and Refill Capacities ...	134
Engine Starting	23	Maintenance Support	140
Before Operation	23	Maintenance Interval Schedule	141
Work Tools	23	Reference Information Section	
Operation	24	Reference Materials	197
Lifting Objects	25	Index Section	
Parking	25	Index	198
Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped	26		
Sound Information and Vibration Information .	26		
Operator Station	29		
Guards (Operator Protection)	29		
Product Information Section			
General Information	31		
Identification Information	46		
Operation Section			

Foreword

California Proposition 65 Warning

Diesel engine exhaust and some of its constituents are known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects, and other reproductive harm.



WARNING – This product can expose you to chemicals including ethylene glycol, which is known to the State of California to cause birth defects or other reproductive harm. For more information go to:

www.P65Warnings.ca.gov

Do not ingest this chemical. Wash hands after handling to avoid incidental ingestion.



WARNING – This product can expose you to chemicals including lead and lead compounds, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer, birth defects, or other reproductive harm. For more information go to:

www.P65Warnings.ca.gov

Wash hands after handling components that may contain lead.

Literature Information

This manual should be stored in the operator's compartment in the literature holder or seat back literature storage area.

This manual contains safety information, operation instructions, transportation information, lubrication information, and maintenance information.

Some photographs or illustrations in this publication show details or attachments that can be different from your machine. Guards and covers might have been removed for illustrative purposes.

Continuing improvement and advancement of product design might have caused changes to your machine which are not included in this publication. Read, study, and keep this manual with the machine.

Whenever a question arises regarding your machine, or this publication, please consult your Cat dealer for the latest available information.

Safety

The safety section lists basic safety precautions. In addition, this section identifies the text and locations of warning signs and labels used on the machine.

Read and understand the basic precautions listed in the safety section before operating or performing lubrication, maintenance, and repair on this machine.

Operation

The operation section is a reference for the new operator and a refresher for the experienced operator. This section includes a discussion of gauges, switches, machine controls, attachment controls, transportation, and towing information.

Photographs and illustrations guide the operator through correct procedures of checking, starting, operating, and stopping the machine.

Operating techniques outlined in this publication are basic. Skill and techniques develop as the operator gains knowledge of the machine and its capabilities.

Maintenance

The maintenance section is a guide to equipment care. The Maintenance Interval Schedule (MIS) lists the items to be maintained at a specific service interval. Items without specific intervals are listed under the "When Required" service interval. The Maintenance Interval Schedule lists the page number for the step-by-step instructions required to accomplish the scheduled maintenance. Use the Maintenance Interval Schedule as an index or "one safe source" for all maintenance procedures.

Maintenance Intervals

Use the service hour meter to determine servicing intervals. Calendar intervals shown (daily, weekly, monthly, etc.) can be used instead of service hour meter intervals if the calendar intervals provide more convenient servicing schedules and approximate the indicated service hour meter reading. Perform the recommended service at the interval that occurs first.

Under severe, dusty, or wet operating conditions, more frequent lubrication than is specified in the maintenance intervals chart might be necessary.

Perform service on items at multiples of the original requirement. For example, at every 500 service hours or 3 months, also service those items listed under every 250 service hours or monthly and every 10 service hours or daily.

Certified Engine Maintenance

Proper maintenance and repair are essential to keep the engine and machine systems operating correctly. As the heavy-duty off-road diesel engine owner, you are responsible for the performance of the required maintenance listed in the Owner Manual, Operation and Maintenance Manual, and Service Manual.

It is prohibited for any person engaged in the business of repairing, servicing, selling, leasing, or trading engines or machines to remove, alter, or to render inoperative, any emission-related device or element of design installed on or in an engine or machine that is in compliance with all applicable regulations of the intended country to which it has been shipped. Certain elements of the machine and engine such as the exhaust system, fuel system, electrical system, intake air system, and cooling system may be emission-related and should not be altered unless approved by Caterpillar.

Machine Capacity

Additional attachments or modifications may exceed machine design capacity which can adversely affect performance characteristics. Included would be stability and system certifications such as brakes, steering, and rollover protective structures (ROPS). Contact your Cat dealer for further information.

Product Identification Number

Effective First Quarter 2001 the Product Identification Number (PIN) has changed from 8 to 17 characters. To provide uniform equipment identification, construction equipment manufacturers are moving to comply with the latest version of the product identification numbering standard. Non-road machine PINs are defined by ISO 10261. The new PIN format will apply to all machines and generator sets. The PIN plates and frame marking will display the 17 character PIN. The new format will look like the following:

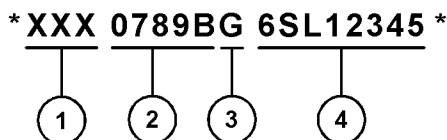


Illustration 1

g03891925

Where:

1. World Manufacturing Code (characters 1-3)

2. Machine Descriptor (characters 4-8)

3. Check Character (character 9)

4. Machine Indicator Section (MIS) or Product Sequence Number (characters 10-17). These were previously referred to as the Serial Number.

Machines and generator sets produced before First Quarter 2001 will maintain their 8 character PIN format.

Components such as engines, transmissions, axles, and work tools will continue to use an 8 character Serial Number (S/N).

Safety Section

i01955986

Safety Messages

SMCS Code: 7000; 7405

There are several specific safety messages on this machine. The exact location of the hazards and the description of the hazards are reviewed in this section. Please become familiarized with all safety messages.

Clean the safety messages or replace the safety messages if you cannot read the words. Replace the illustrations if the illustrations are not visible. When you clean the safety messages, use a cloth, water and soap. Do not use solvent, gasoline, or other harsh chemicals to clean the safety messages. Solvents, gasoline, or harsh chemicals could loosen the adhesive that secures the safety message. Loose adhesive will allow the safety message to fall.

Replace any safety message that is damaged, or missing. If a safety sign is attached to a part that is replaced, install a safety message on the replacement part. Any Caterpillar dealer can provide new safety messages.

Do Not Operate

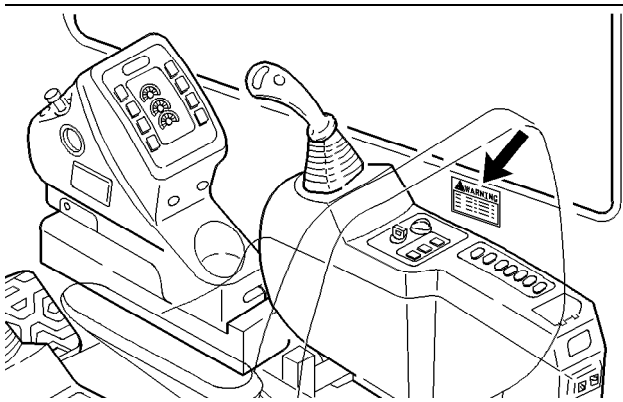


Illustration 2

g00107227

This safety message is positioned in the cab.

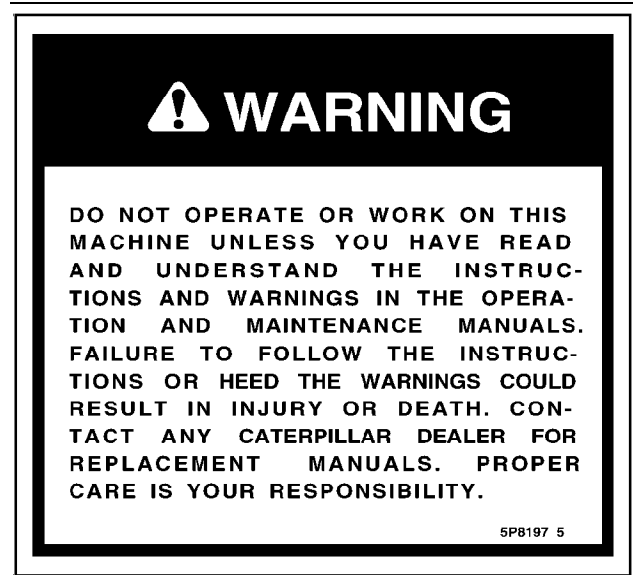
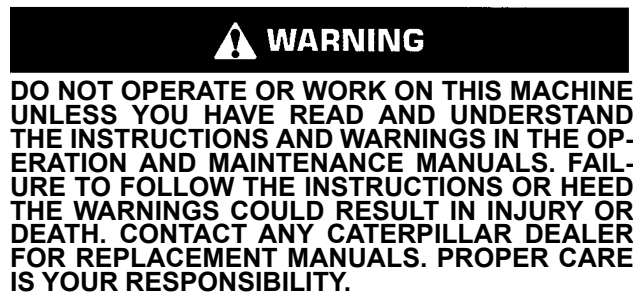


Illustration 3

g00038370



Height And Reach Of Machine

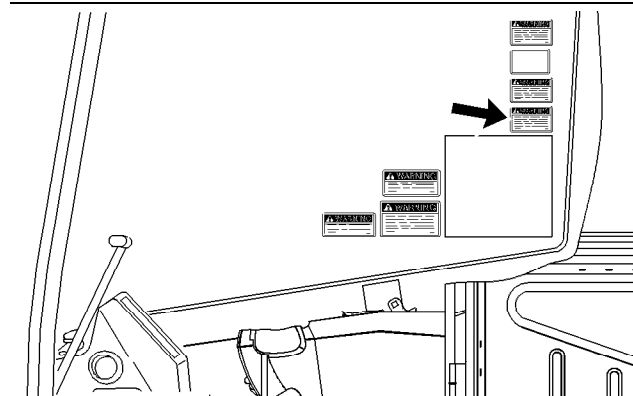


Illustration 4

g00274805

This safety message is positioned in the cab.

⚠ WARNING

KNOW THE MAXIMUM HEIGHT AND REACH OF YOUR MACHINE

SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH BY ELECTROCUTION CAN OCCUR IF MACHINE OR ATTACHMENTS ARE NOT KEPT A SAFE DISTANCE FROM ELECTRICAL POWER LINES. KEEP DISTANCE AT LEAST 3 M (10 FEET) PLUS ADDITIONAL 10 MM (0.4 INCH) FOR EACH 1,000 VOLTS OVER 50,000 VOLTS.

7Y0003 2

Illustration 5

g00100702

⚠ WARNING

KNOW THE MAXIMUM HEIGHT AND REACH OF YOUR MACHINE. SERIOUS INJURY OR DEATH BY ELECTROCUTION CAN OCCUR IF MACHINE OR ATTACHMENTS ARE NOT KEPT A SAFE DISTANCE FROM ELECTRICAL POWER LINES. KEEP DISTANCE AT LEAST 3 M (10 FEET) PLUS ADDITIONAL 10 MM (0.4 INCH) FOR EACH 1,000 VOLTS OVER 50,000 VOLTS.

Improper Connections For Jump Start Cables

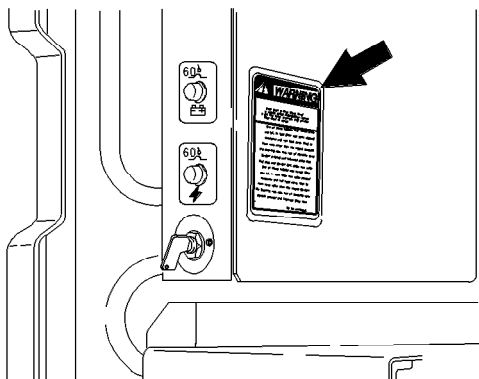


Illustration 6

g00100710

This safety message is positioned on the circuit breaker panel.

⚠ WARNING

IMPROPER JUMPER CABLE CONNECTIONS CAN CAUSE EXPLOSION RESULTING IN PERSONAL INJURY.

BATTERIES MAY BE LOCATED IN SEPARATE COMPARTMENTS. WHEN USING JUMPER CABLES, ALWAYS CONNECT POSITIVE (+) CABLE TO POSITIVE (+) TERMINAL OF BATTERY CONNECTED TO STARTER SOLENOID AND NEGATIVE (-) CABLE FROM EXTERNAL SOURCE TO STARTER NEGATIVE (-) TERMINAL (IF MACHINE NOT EQUIPPED WITH STARTER NEGATIVE TERMINAL, CONNECT TO ENGINE BLOCK.) FOLLOW PROCEDURE IN THE OPERATION MANUAL.

6V-4611 4

Illustration 7

g00038786

⚠ WARNING

IMPROPER JUMPER CABLE CONNECTIONS CAN CAUSE EXPLOSION RESULTING IN PERSONAL INJURY.

BATTERIES MAY BE LOCATED IN SEPARATE COMPARTMENTS. WHEN USING JUMPER CABLES, ALWAYS CONNECT POSITIVE (+) CABLE TO POSITIVE (+) TERMINAL OF BATTERY CONNECTED TO STARTER SOLENOID AND NEGATIVE (-) CABLE FROM EXTERNAL SOURCE TO STARTER NEGATIVE (-) TERMINAL (IF MACHINE NOT EQUIPPED WITH STARTER NEGATIVE TERMINAL, CONNECT TO ENGINE BLOCK.) FOLLOW PROCEDURE IN THE OPERATION MANUAL.

Relieve Hydraulic Tank Pressure

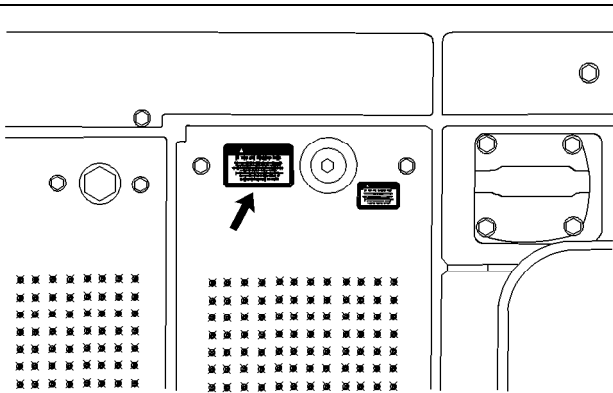


Illustration 8

g00100721

This safety message is located on the top of the hydraulic tank.



Illustration 9

g00100722



Lift Eyes Can Fail

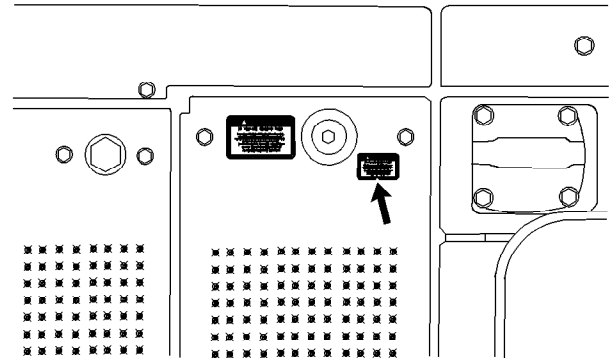


Illustration 10

g00100726

This safety message is positioned on the top of the hydraulic tank.

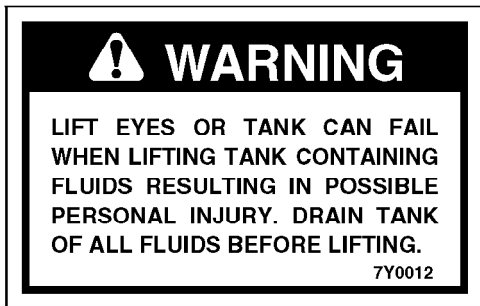


Illustration 11

g00100728



High Pressure Gas

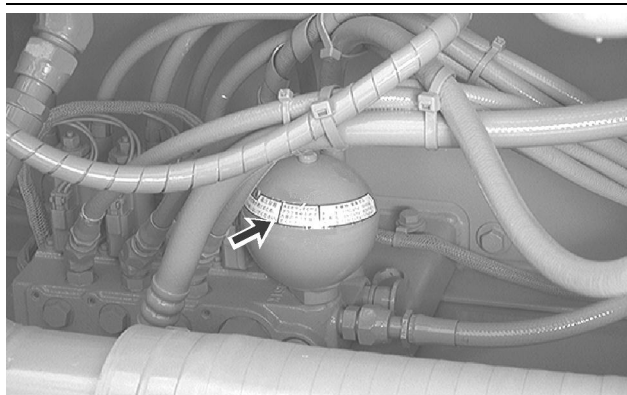


Illustration 12

g00100731

This safety message is positioned on the accumulator.



Illustration 13

g00100733



TO AVOID EXPLOSION AND PERSONAL INJURY, DO NOT EXPOSE TO FIRE, DO NOT WELD, DO NOT DRILL. RELIEVE PRESSURE BEFORE DISCHARGING.

SEE OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL FOR CHARGING AND DISCHARGING. SEE YOUR CATERPILLAR DEALER FOR TOOLS AND DETAILED INFORMATION.

High Pressure Cylinder

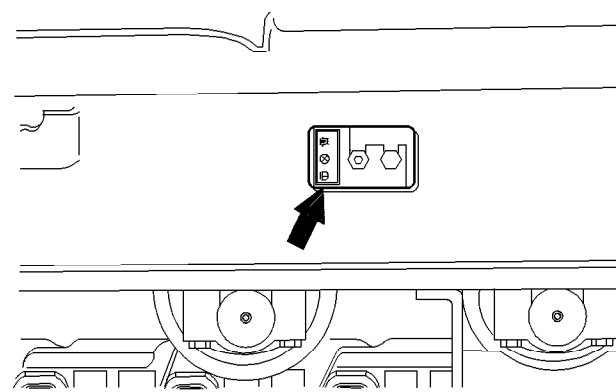


Illustration 14

g00100741

This safety message is positioned on the track adjuster.

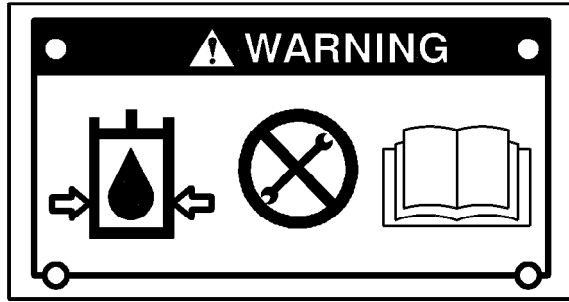


Illustration 15

g00100742

HIGH PRESSURE CYLINDER

Do not remove any parts until all of the pressure has been relieved. This will avoid possible personal injury. The knob can be rotated to a maximum of one counterclockwise turn.

See the Operation and Maintenance Manual , “Track Adjustment - Adjust” information for your product.

No Ether

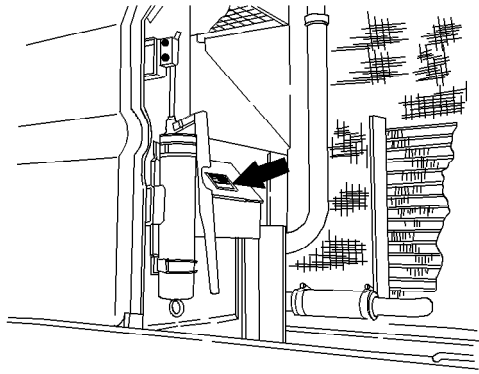


Illustration 16

g00100744

This safety message is positioned on the air cleaner.



Illustration 17

g00100745

NO ETHER

The following information is not applicable to any machines that are equipped with an ether starting aid.

Do not spray ether into the air intake because this machine is equipped with an air inlet heater. Using ether may result in a serious accident.

To start engines that are equipped with an ether starting aid, refer to the Operation and Maintenance, “Starting Engine” information for your product.

Automatic Engine Speed Control (AEC)

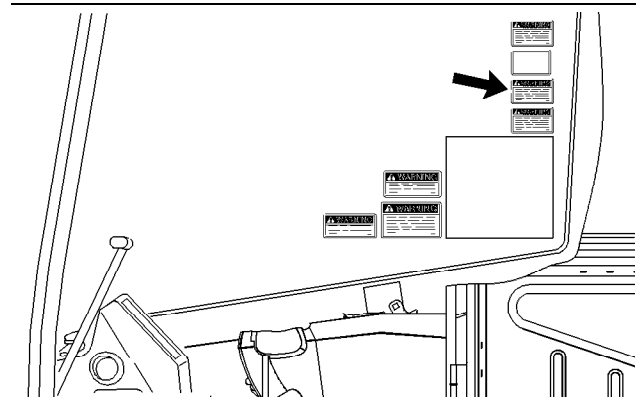


Illustration 18

g00274807

This safety message is positioned in the cab.

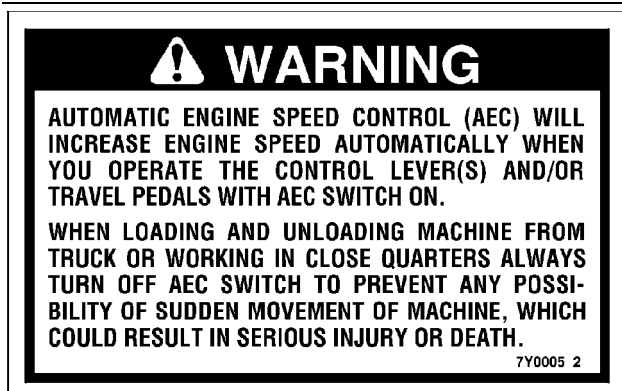


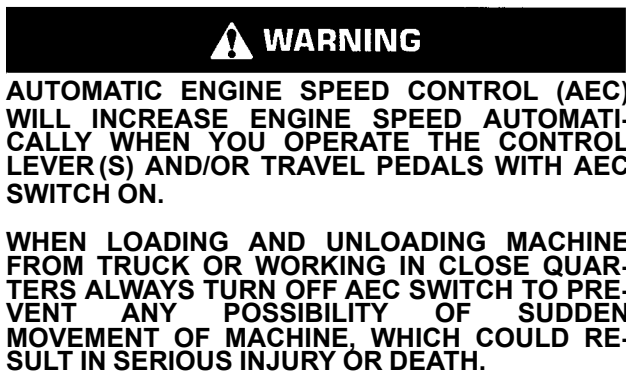
Illustration 19

g00100749



Illustration 21

g00100755



Travel Speed Control Switch

Pressurized System

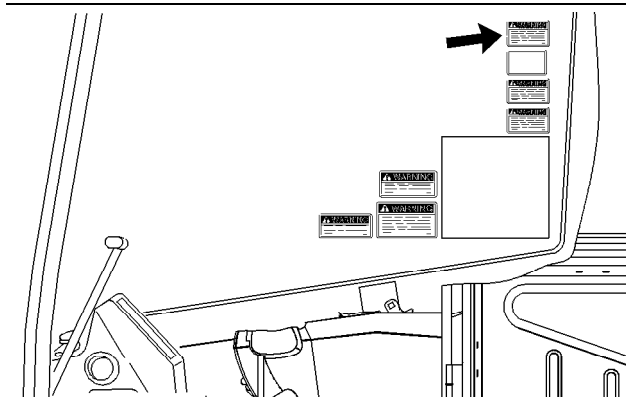


Illustration 20

g00274809

Illustration 22

g00100759

This safety message is positioned in the cab.

This safety message is positioned on the radiator.

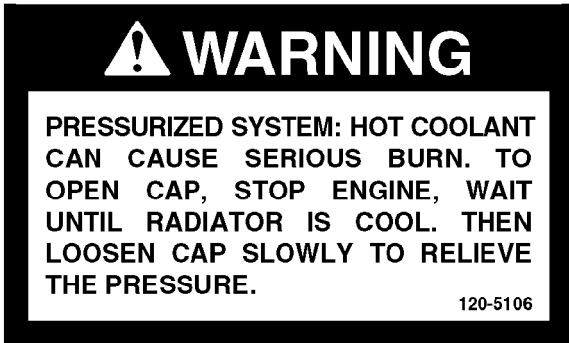


Illustration 23

g00100763

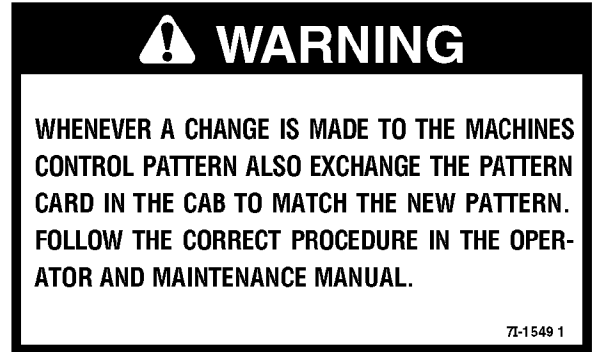
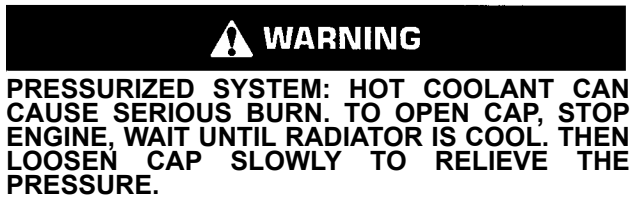


Illustration 25

g00100767



Changes To Machine Control Pattern

Machine Control Pattern

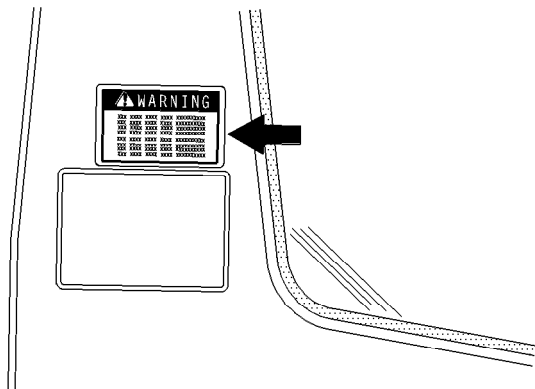


Illustration 24

g00106761

This safety message is positioned on the right side of the cab. This safety message is on machines that are equipped with a two-way valve.

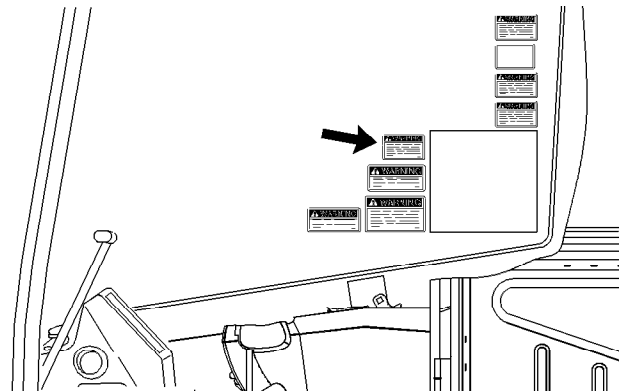


Illustration 26

g00274810

This safety message is positioned in the cab.



Illustration 27

g00100776



Engagement of the Quick Coupler Wedge

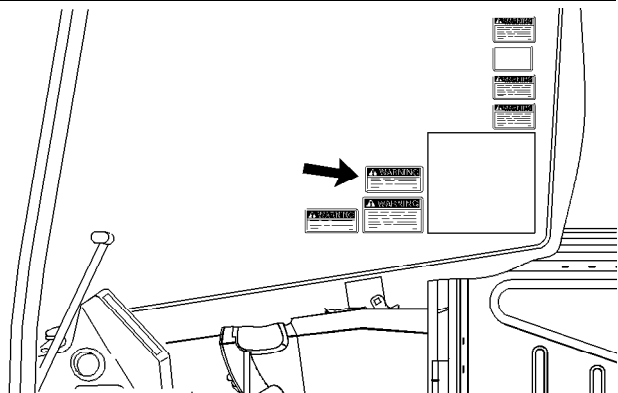


Illustration 28

g00274808

This safety message is positioned in the cab if your machine is equipped with an attachment for the quick coupler.



Illustration 29

g00100783



COUPLER WEDGE ENGAGEMENT CAN BE INSPECTED FROM THE CAB BY ROTATING THE BUCKET OR ATTACHMENT IN. EXTEND THE BUCKET CYLINDER (BUCKET CLOSE) TO BRING THE COUPLER ACTUATOR INTO VIEW AND BRING THE STICK IN UNTIL THE WEDGES ARE VISIBLE.

Tilting the Cab

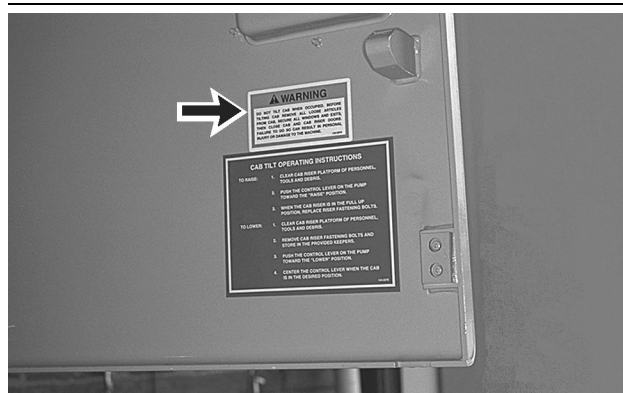


Illustration 30

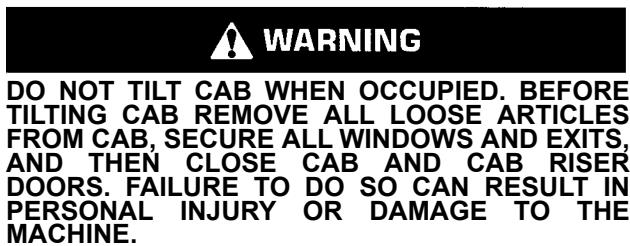
g00101889

This safety message is positioned inside the left access door on a forest machine. The safety message is positioned on the outside of the cab riser compartment access door on a material handler.



Illustration 31

g00102389



Crush Points



Illustration 32

g00107273

This safety message can be positioned in the following locations: inside of the cab riser compartment access door and next to the cab riser compartment access door on the left side of the machine. This safety message is also located on the front of the machine below the cab riser.

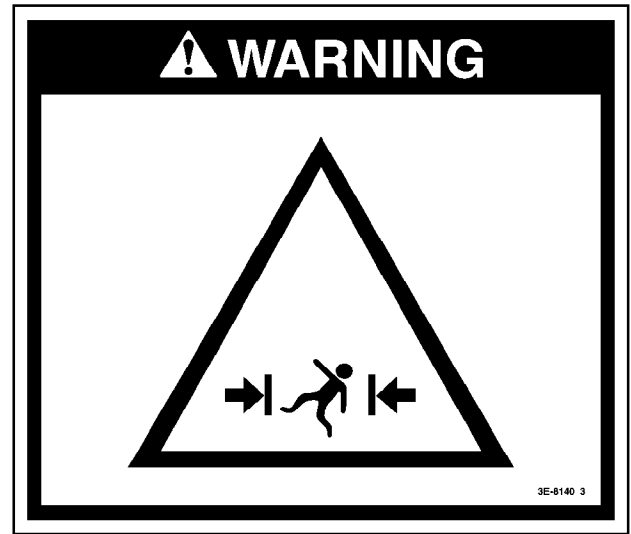


Illustration 33

g00104210

Stand away from the cab when the cab is being tilted for transportation or repair. There is no clearance for a person in this area. Severe injury or death from crushing could occur.

Certification for Falling Object Guard Structure (If Equipped)

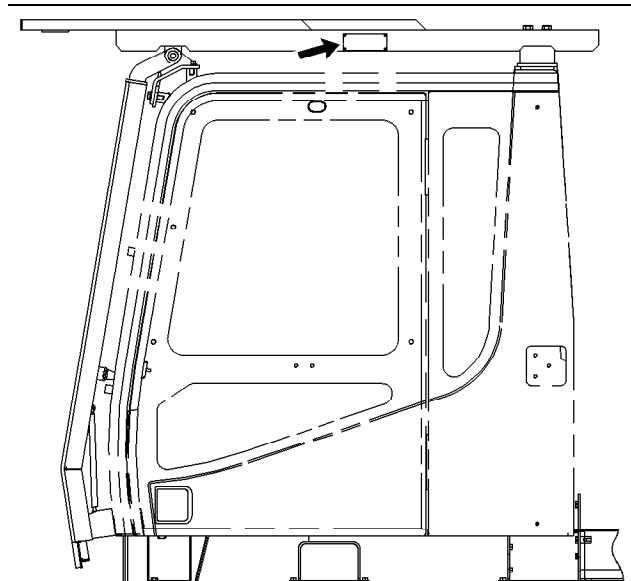


Illustration 34

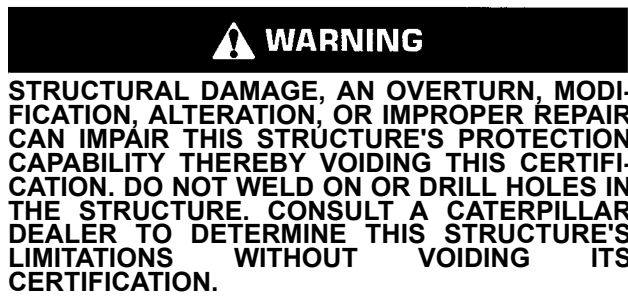
g00104265

This safety message is located on the left side of the falling object guard structure.



Illustration 35

g00104332



i07500894

General Hazard Information

SMCS Code: 7000

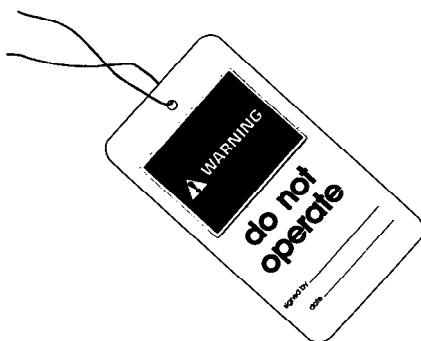


Illustration 36

g00104545

Typical example

Attach a “Do Not Operate” warning tag or a similar warning tag to the start switch or to the controls. Attach the warning tag before you service the equipment or before you repair the equipment. Warning tag SEHS7332 is available from your Cat dealer.

WARNING

Operating the machine while distracted can result in the loss of machine control. Use extreme caution when using any device while operating the machine. Operating the machine while distracted can result in personal injury or death.

Know the width of your equipment in order to maintain proper clearance when you operate the equipment near fences or near boundary obstacles.

Be aware of high voltage power lines and power cables that are buried. If the machine comes in contact with these hazards, serious injury or death may occur from electrocution.

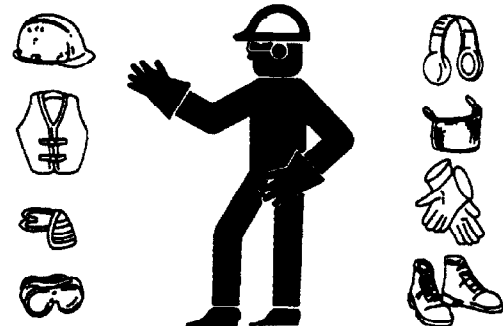


Illustration 37

g00702020

Wear a hard hat, protective glasses, and other protective equipment, as required.

Do not wear loose clothing or jewelry that can snag on controls or on other parts of the equipment.

Make sure that all protective guards and all covers are secured in place on the equipment.

Keep the equipment free from foreign material. Remove debris, oil, tools, and other items from the deck, from walkways, and from steps.

Secure all loose items such as lunch boxes, tools, and other items that are not a part of the equipment.

Know the appropriate work site hand signals and the personnel that are authorized to give the hand signals. Accept hand signals from one person only.

Do not smoke when you service an air conditioner. Also, do not smoke if refrigerant gas may be present. Inhaling the fumes that are released from a flame that contacts air conditioner refrigerant can cause bodily harm or death. Inhaling gas from air conditioner refrigerant through a lighted cigarette can cause bodily harm or death.

Never put maintenance fluids into glass containers. Drain all liquids into a suitable container.

Safety Section
General Hazard Information

Obey all local regulations for the disposal of liquids.

Use all cleaning solutions with care. Report all necessary repairs.

Do not allow unauthorized personnel on the equipment.

Unless you are instructed otherwise, perform maintenance with the equipment in the servicing position. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual for the procedure for placing the equipment in the servicing position.

When you perform maintenance above ground level, use appropriate devices such as ladders or man lift machines. If equipped, use the machine anchorage points and use approved fall arrest harnesses and lanyards.

Pressurized Air and Water

Pressurized air and/or water can cause debris and/or hot water to be blown out. The debris and/or hot water could result in personal injury.

When pressurized air and/or pressurized water is used for cleaning, wear protective clothing, protective shoes, and eye protection. Eye protection includes goggles or a protective face shield.

The maximum air pressure for cleaning purposes must be reduced to 205 kPa (30 psi) when the nozzle is deadheaded and the nozzle is used with an effective chip deflector and personal protective equipment. The maximum water pressure for cleaning purposes must be below 275 kPa (40 psi).

Avoid direct spraying of water on electrical connectors, connections, and components. When using air for cleaning, allow the machine to cool to reduce the possibility of fine debris igniting when re-deposited on hot surfaces.

Trapped Pressure

Pressure can be trapped in a hydraulic system. Releasing trapped pressure can cause sudden machine movement or attachment movement. Use caution if you disconnect hydraulic lines or fittings. High-pressure oil that is released can cause a hose to whip. High-pressure oil that is released can cause oil to spray. Fluid penetration can cause serious injury and possible death.

Fluid Penetration

Pressure can be trapped in the hydraulic circuit long after the machine has been stopped. The pressure can cause hydraulic fluid or items such as pipe plugs to escape rapidly if the pressure is not relieved correctly.

Do not remove any hydraulic components or parts until pressure has been relieved or personal injury may occur. Do not disassemble any hydraulic components or parts until pressure has been relieved or personal injury may occur. Refer to the Service Manual for any procedures that are required to relieve the hydraulic pressure.

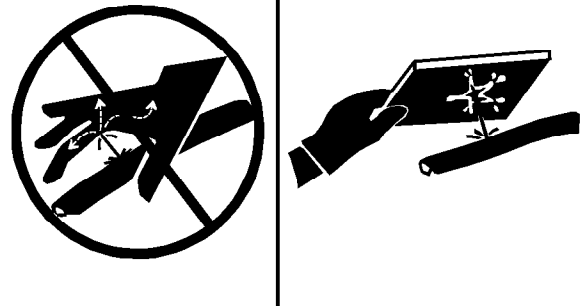


Illustration 38

g00687600

Always use a board or cardboard when you check for a leak. Leaking fluid that is under pressure can penetrate body tissue. Fluid penetration can cause serious injury and possible death. A pin hole leak can cause severe injury. If fluid is injected into your skin, you must get treatment immediately. Seek treatment from a doctor that is familiar with this type of injury.

Containing Fluid Spillage

Care must be taken in order to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting, and repair of the equipment. Prepare to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component that contains fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, NENG2500, "Cat dealer Service Tool Catalog" for the following items:

- Tools that are suitable for collecting fluids and equipment that is suitable for collecting fluids
- Tools that are suitable for containing fluids and equipment that is suitable for containing fluids

Obey all local regulations for the disposal of liquids.

Inhalation

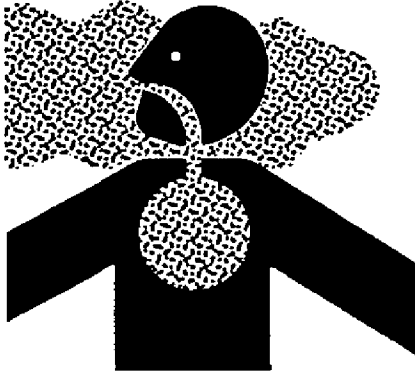


Illustration 39

g02159053

Exhaust

Use caution. Exhaust fumes can be hazardous to your health. If you operate the machine in an enclosed area, adequate ventilation is necessary.

Asbestos Information

Cat equipment and replacement parts that are shipped from Caterpillar are asbestos free. Caterpillar recommends the use of only genuine Cat replacement parts. Use the following guidelines when you handle any replacement parts that contain asbestos or when you handle asbestos debris.

Use caution. Avoid inhaling dust that might be generated when you handle components that contain asbestos fibers. Inhaling this dust can be hazardous to your health. The components that may contain asbestos fibers are brake pads, brake bands, lining material, clutch plates, and some gaskets. The asbestos that is used in these components is bound in a resin or sealed in some way. Normal handling is not hazardous unless airborne dust that contains asbestos is generated.

If dust that may contain asbestos is present, there are several guidelines that should be followed:

- Never use compressed air for cleaning.
- Avoid brushing materials that contain asbestos.
- Avoid grinding materials that contain asbestos.
- Use a wet method in order to clean up asbestos materials.
- A vacuum cleaner that is equipped with a high efficiency particulate air filter (HEPA) can also be used.

- Use exhaust ventilation on permanent machining jobs.
- Wear an approved respirator if there is no other way to control the dust.
- Comply with applicable rules and regulations for the work place. In the United States, use Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) requirements. These OSHA requirements can be found in "29 CFR 1910.1001". In Japan, use the requirements found in the "Ordinance on Prevention of Health Impairment due to Asbestos" in addition to the requirements of the Industrial Safety and Health Act.
- Obey environmental regulations for the disposal of asbestos.
- Stay away from areas that might have asbestos particles in the air.

Dispose of Waste Properly

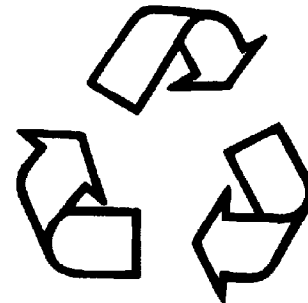


Illustration 40

g00706404

Improperly disposing of waste can threaten the environment. Potentially harmful fluids should be disposed of according to local regulations.

Always use leakproof containers when you drain fluids. Do not pour waste onto the ground, down a drain, or into any source of water.

i01359664

Crushing Prevention and Cutting Prevention

SMCS Code: 7000

Support the equipment properly before you perform any work or maintenance beneath that equipment. Do not depend on the hydraulic cylinders to hold up the equipment. Equipment can fall if a control is moved, or if a hydraulic line breaks.

Safety Section

Burn Prevention

Do not work beneath the cab of the machine unless the cab is properly supported.

Unless you are instructed otherwise, never attempt adjustments while the machine is moving or while the engine is running.

Never jump across the starter solenoid terminals in order to start the engine. Unexpected machine movement could result.

Whenever there are equipment control linkages the clearance in the linkage area will change with the movement of the equipment or the machine. Stay clear of areas that may have a sudden change in clearance with machine movement or equipment movement.

Stay clear of all rotating and moving parts.

If it is necessary to remove guards in order to perform maintenance, always install the guards after the maintenance is performed.

Keep objects away from moving fan blades. The fan blade will throw objects or cut objects.

Do not use a kinked wire cable or a frayed wire cable. Wear gloves when you handle wire cable.

When you strike a retainer pin with force, the retainer pin can fly out. The loose retainer pin can injure personnel. Make sure that the area is clear of people when you strike a retainer pin. To avoid injury to your eyes, wear protective glasses when you strike a retainer pin.

Chips or other debris can fly off an object when you strike the object. Make sure that no one can be injured by flying debris before striking any object.

i04760300

Burn Prevention

SMCS Code: 7000

Do not touch any part of an operating engine. Allow the engine to cool before any maintenance is performed on the engine. Relieve all pressure in the air system, in the oil system, in the lubrication system, in the fuel system, or in the cooling system before any lines, fittings, or related items are disconnected.

Coolant

When the engine is at operating temperature, the engine coolant is hot. The coolant is also under pressure. The radiator and all lines to the heaters or to the engine contain hot coolant.

Any contact with hot coolant or with steam can cause severe burns. Allow cooling system components to cool before the cooling system is drained.

Check the coolant level only after the engine has been stopped.

Ensure that the filler cap is cool before removing the filler cap. The filler cap must be cool enough to touch with a bare hand. Remove the filler cap slowly in order to relieve pressure.

Cooling system conditioner contains alkali. Alkali can cause personal injury. Do not allow alkali to contact the skin, the eyes, or the mouth.

Oils

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil to contact the skin. Also, do not allow hot components to contact the skin.

Remove the hydraulic tank filler cap only after the engine has been stopped. The filler cap must be cool enough to touch with a bare hand. Follow the standard procedure in this manual in order to remove the hydraulic tank filler cap.

Batteries

The liquid in a battery is an electrolyte. Electrolyte is an acid that can cause personal injury. Do not allow electrolyte to contact the skin or the eyes.

Do not smoke while checking the battery electrolyte levels. Batteries give off flammable fumes which can explode.

Always wear protective glasses when you work with batteries. Wash hands after touching batteries. The use of gloves is recommended.

i06180998

Fire Prevention and Explosion Prevention

SMCS Code: 7000



Illustration 41

g00704000

General

All fuels, most lubricants, and some coolant mixtures are flammable.

To minimize the risk of fire or explosion, Caterpillar recommends the following actions.

Always perform a Walk-Around Inspection, which may help you identify a fire hazard. Do not operate a machine when a fire hazard exists. Contact your Cat dealer for service.

Understand the use of the primary exit and alternative exit on the machine. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Alternative Exit".

Do not operate a machine with a fluid leak. Repair leaks and clean up fluids before resuming machine operation. Fluids that are leaking or spilled onto hot surfaces or onto electrical components can cause a fire. A fire may cause personal injury or death.

Remove flammable material such as leaves, twigs, papers, trash, and so on. These items may accumulate in the engine compartment or around other hot areas and hot parts on the machine.

Keep the access doors to major machine compartments closed and access doors in working condition in order to permit the use of fire suppression equipment, in case a fire should occur.

Clean all accumulations of flammable materials such as fuel, oil, and debris from the machine.

Do not operate the machine near any flame.

Keep shields in place. Exhaust shields (if equipped) protect hot exhaust components from oil spray or fuel spray in case of a break in a line, in a hose, or in a seal. Exhaust shields must be installed correctly.

Do not weld or flame cut on tanks or lines that contain flammable fluids or flammable material. Empty and purge the lines and tanks. Then clean the lines and tanks with a nonflammable solvent prior to welding or flame cutting. Ensure that the components are properly grounded in order to avoid unwanted arcs.

Dust that is generated from repairing nonmetallic hoods or fenders may be flammable and/or explosive. Repair such components in a well ventilated area away from open flames or sparks. Use suitable Personal Protection Equipment (PPE).

Inspect all lines and hoses for wear or deterioration. Replace damaged lines and hoses. The lines and the hoses should have adequate support and secure clamps. Tighten all connections to the recommended torque. Damage to the protective cover or insulation may provide fuel for fires.

Store fuels and lubricants in properly marked containers away from unauthorized personnel. Store oily rags and flammable materials in protective containers. Do not smoke in areas that are used for storing flammable materials.



Illustration 42

g03839130

Use caution when you are fueling a machine. Do not smoke while you are fueling a machine. Do not fuel a machine near open flames or sparks. Do not use cell phones or other electronic devices while you are refueling. Always stop the engine before fueling. Fill the fuel tank outdoors. Properly clean areas of spillage.

Safety Section
Fire Prevention and Explosion Prevention

Avoid static electricity risk when fueling. Ultra low sulfur diesel (ULSD) poses a greater static ignition hazard than earlier diesel formulations with a higher sulfur content. Avoid death or serious injury from fire or explosion. Consult with your fuel or fuel system supplier to ensure that the delivery system is in compliance with fueling standards for proper grounding and bonding practices.

Never store flammable fluids in the operator compartment of the machine.

Battery and Battery Cables



Illustration 43

g03839133

Caterpillar recommends the following in order to minimize the risk of fire or an explosion related to the battery.

Do not operate a machine if battery cables or related parts show signs of wear or damage. Contact your Cat dealer for service.

Follow safe procedures for engine starting with jump-start cables. Improper jumper cable connections can cause an explosion that may result in injury. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Engine Starting with Jump Start Cables" for specific instructions.

Do not charge a frozen battery. This may cause an explosion.

Gases from a battery can explode. Keep any open flames or sparks away from the top of a battery. Do not smoke in battery charging areas. Do not use cell phones or other electronic devices in battery charging areas.

Never check the battery charge by placing a metal object across the terminal posts. Use a voltmeter in order to check the battery charge.

Daily inspect battery cables that are in areas that are visible. Inspect cables, clips, straps, and other restraints for damage. Replace any damaged parts. Check for signs of the following, which can occur over time due to use and environmental factors:

- Fraying
- Abrasion
- Cracking
- Discoloration
- Cuts on the insulation of the cable
- Fouling
- Corroded terminals, damaged terminals, and loose terminals

Replace damaged battery cable(s) and replace any related parts. Eliminate any fouling, which may have caused insulation failure or related component damage or wear. Ensure that all components are reinstalled correctly.

An exposed wire on the battery cable may cause a short to ground if the exposed area comes into contact with a grounded surface. A battery cable short produces heat from the battery current, which may be a fire hazard.

An exposed wire on the ground cable between the battery and the disconnect switch may cause the disconnect switch to be bypassed if the exposed area comes into contact with a grounded surface. This may result in an unsafe condition for servicing the machine. Repair components or replace components before servicing the machine.

WARNING

Fire on a machine can result in personal injury or death. Exposed battery cables that come into contact with a grounded connection can result in fires. Replace cables and related parts that show signs of wear or damage. Contact your Cat dealer.

Wiring

Check electrical wires daily. If any of the following conditions exist, replace parts before you operate the machine.

- Fraying
- Signs of abrasion or wear
- Cracking
- Discoloration

- Cuts on insulation
- Other damage

Make sure that all clamps, guards, clips, and straps are reinstalled correctly. This will help to prevent vibration, rubbing against other parts, and excessive heat during machine operation.

Attaching electrical wiring to hoses and tubes that contain flammable fluids or combustible fluids should be avoided.

Consult your Cat dealer for repair or for replacement parts.

Keep wiring and electrical connections free of debris.

Lines, Tubes, and Hoses

Do not bend high-pressure lines. Do not strike high-pressure lines. Do not install any lines that are bent or damaged. Use the appropriate backup wrenches in order to tighten all connections to the recommended torque.

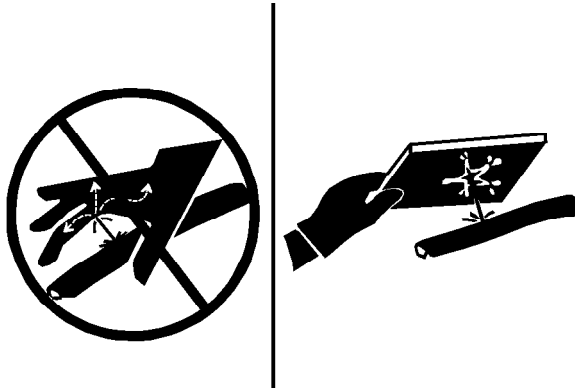


Illustration 44

g00687600

Check lines, tubes, and hoses carefully. Wear Personal Protection Equipment (PPE) in order to check for leaks. Always use a board or cardboard when you check for a leak. Leaking fluid that is under pressure can penetrate body tissue. Fluid penetration can cause serious injury and possible death. A pin hole leak can cause severe injury. If fluid is injected into your skin, you must get treatment immediately. Seek treatment from a doctor that is familiar with this type of injury.

Replace the affected parts if any of the following conditions are present:

- End fittings are damaged or leaking.
- Outer coverings are chafed or cut.
- Wires are exposed.
- Outer coverings are swelling or ballooning.
- Flexible parts of the hoses are kinked.

- Outer covers have exposed embedded armoring.
- End fittings are displaced.

Make sure that all clamps, guards, and heat shields are installed correctly. During machine operation, this will help to prevent vibration, rubbing against other parts, excessive heat, and failure of lines, tubes, and hoses.

Do not operate a machine when a fire hazard exists. Repair any lines that are corroded, loose, or damaged. Leaks may provide fuel for fires. Consult your Cat dealer for repair or for replacement parts. Use genuine Cat parts or the equivalent, for capabilities of both the pressure limit and temperature limit.

Ether

Ether (if equipped) is commonly used in cold-weather applications. Ether is flammable and poisonous.

Only use approved Ether canisters for the Ether dispensing system fitted to your machine, do not spray Ether manually into an engine, follow the correct cold engine starting procedures. Refer to the section in the Operation and Maintenance Manual with the label "Engine Starting" .

Use ether in ventilated areas. Do not smoke while you are replacing an ether cylinder.

Do not store ether cylinders in living areas or in the operator compartment of a machine. Do not store ether cylinders in direct sunlight or in temperatures above 49° C (120.2° F). Keep ether cylinders away from open flames or sparks.

Dispose of used ether cylinders properly. Do not puncture an ether cylinder. Keep ether cylinders away from unauthorized personnel.

Fire Extinguisher

As an additional safety measure, keep a fire extinguisher on the machine.

Be familiar with the operation of the fire extinguisher. Inspect the fire extinguisher and service the fire extinguisher regularly. Follow the recommendations on the instruction plate.

Consider installation of an aftermarket Fire Suppression System, if the application and working conditions warrant the installation.

i01329108

i01974431

Fire Extinguisher Location

SMCS Code: 7000; 7419

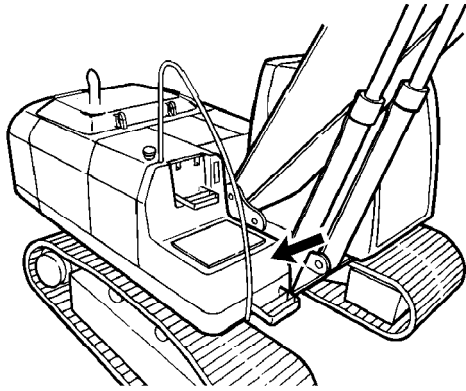


Illustration 45

g01005330

Standard machine

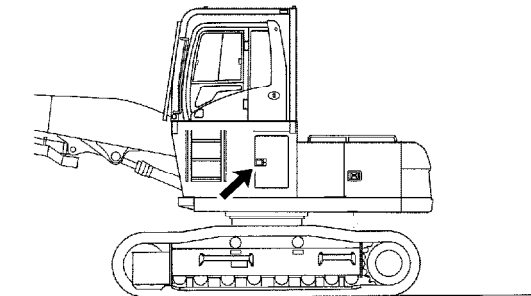


Illustration 46

g00955441

Forest Machine and Material Handler

Make sure that a fire extinguisher is available. Be familiar with the operation of the fire extinguisher. Inspect the fire extinguisher and service the fire extinguisher regularly. Obey the recommendations on the instruction plate.

The recommended location for mounting the fire extinguisher is in the storage box for the standard machine.

The recommended location for mounting the fire extinguisher is on the inside surface of the cab riser compartment access door for the Forest Machine and Material Handler.

Track Information

SMCS Code: 4170; 7000

Track adjusting systems use either grease or oil under high pressure to keep the track under tension.

Grease or oil under high pressure coming out of the relief valve can penetrate the body causing injury or death. Do not watch the relief valve to see if grease or oil is escaping. Watch the track or track adjustment cylinder to see if the track is being loosened.

The pins and bushings in a dry track pin joint can become very hot. It is possible to burn the fingers if there is more than brief contact with these components.

i01122596

Electrical Storm Injury Prevention

SMCS Code: 7000

When lightning is striking in the vicinity of the machine, the operator should never attempt the following procedures:

- Mount the machine.
- Dismount the machine.

If you are in the operator's station during an electrical storm, stay in the operator's station. If you are on the ground during an electrical storm, stay away from the vicinity of the machine.

i00771840

Before Starting Engine

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Start the engine only from the operator compartment. Never short across the starter terminals or across the batteries. Shorting could damage the electrical system by bypassing the engine neutral start system.

Inspect the condition of the seat belt and of the mounting hardware. Replace any parts that are worn or damaged. Regardless of appearance, replace the seat belt after three years of use. Do not use a seat belt extension on a retractable seat belt.

Adjust the seat so that full pedal travel can be achieved with the operator's back against the back of the seat.

Make sure that the machine is equipped with a lighting system that is adequate for the job conditions. Make sure that all machine lights are working properly.

Before you start the engine and before you move the machine, make sure that no one is underneath the machine, around the machine, or on the machine. Make sure that the area is free of personnel.

i04159629

Engine Starting

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

If a warning tag is attached to the engine start switch or to the controls, do not start the engine. Also, do not move any controls.

Make sure that you are seated before you start the engine.

Move all hydraulic controls to the HOLD position before you start the engine. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position. For further details on this procedure, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Operator Controls".

Diesel engine exhaust contains products of combustion which can be harmful to your health. Always run the engine in a well ventilated area. If you are in an enclosed area, vent the exhaust to the outside.

Briefly sound the horn before you start the engine.

i03562260

i01953294

Before Operation

SMCS Code: 7000

Clear all personnel from the machine and from the area.

Clear all obstacles from the machine's path. Beware of hazards (wires, ditches, etc).

Be sure that all windows are clean. Secure the doors and the windows in the open position or in the shut position.

Adjust the rearview mirrors (if equipped) for the best visibility close to the machine. Make sure that the horn, the travel alarm (if equipped), and all other warning devices are working properly.

Fasten the seat belt securely.

Warm up the engine and the hydraulic oil before operating the machine.

Before moving the machine, check the position of the undercarriage. The normal travel position is with the idler wheels to the front under the cab and the drive sprockets to the rear. When the undercarriage is in the reversed position, the directional controls must be operated in opposite directions.

Work Tools

SMCS Code: 6700

Only use work tools that are recommended by Caterpillar for use on Cat machines.

Use of work tools, including buckets, which are outside of Caterpillar's recommendations or specifications for weight, dimensions, flows, pressures, and so on, may result in less-than-optimal vehicle performance, including but not limited to reductions in production, stability, reliability, and component durability. Caterpillar recommends appropriate work tools for our machines to maximize the value our customers receive from our products. Caterpillar understands that special circumstances may lead a customer to use tools outside of our specifications. In these cases, customers must be aware that such choices can reduce vehicle performance and will affect their ability to claim warranty in the event of what a customer may perceive as a premature failure.

Work tools and work tool control systems, that are compatible with your Cat machine, are required for safe machine operation and/or reliable machine operation. If you are in doubt about the compatibility of a particular work tool with your machine, consult your Cat dealer.

Make sure that all necessary guarding is in place on the host machine and on the work tool.

Keep all windows and doors closed on the host machine. A polycarbonate shield must be used when the host machine is not equipped with windows and when a work tool could throw debris.

Do not exceed the maximum operating weight that is listed on the ROPS certification.

If your machine is equipped with an extendable stick, install the transport pin when you are using the following work tools: hydraulic hammers, augers and compactors

Always wear protective glasses. Always wear the protective equipment that is recommended in the operation manual for the work tool. Wear any other protective equipment that is required for the operating environment.

To prevent personnel from being struck by flying objects, ensure that all personnel are out of the work area.

While you are performing any maintenance, any testing, or any adjustments to the work tool stay clear of the following areas: cutting edges, pinching surfaces and crushing surfaces.

Never use the work tool for a work platform.

i07529751

Operation

SMCS Code: 7000

Machine Operating Temperature Range

The machine must function satisfactorily in the anticipated ambient temperature limits that are encountered during operation. The standard machine configuration is intended for use within an ambient temperature range of $-18\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ ($0\text{ }^{\circ}\text{F}$) to $43\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ ($109\text{ }^{\circ}\text{F}$). Special configurations for different ambient temperatures may be available. Consult your Cat dealer for additional information on special configurations of your machine.

Limiting Conditions and Criteria

Limiting conditions are immediate issues with this machine that must be addressed prior to continuing operation.

The Safety Section of the Operation and Maintenance Manual describes limiting condition criteria for replacing items such as safety messages, seat belt and mounting hardware, lines, tubes, hoses, battery cables and related parts, electrical wires, and repairing any fluid leak.

The Maintenance Interval Schedule in the Operation and Maintenance Manual describes limiting condition criteria that require repair or replacement for items (if equipped) such as alarms, horns, braking system, steering system, and rollover protective structures.

The Monitoring System (if equipped) described in the Operation Section of the Operation and Maintenance Manual provides information on limiting condition criteria, including a warning level that requires immediate shutdown of the machine.

Machine Operation

Only operate the machine while you are in a seat. The seat belt must be fastened while you operate the machine. Only operate the controls while the engine is running.

Check for proper operation of all controls and of all protective devices while you operate the machine slowly in an open area.

When the machine is moving watch the clearance of the boom. Uneven ground can cause the boom to move in all directions.

Make sure that no personnel will be endangered before you move the machine. Do not allow riders on the machine unless the machine has an additional seat with a seat belt.

Report any machine damage that was noted during machine operation. Make any necessary repairs.

Never use the work tool for a work platform.

Hold attachments approximately 40 cm (15 inches) above ground level while you drive the machine. Do not drive the machine close to an overhang, to the edge of a cliff, or to the edge of an excavation.

If the machine begins to sideslip on a grade, immediately dump the load and turn the machine downhill.

Be careful to avoid any ground condition which could cause the machine to tip. Tipping can occur when you work on hills, on banks, or on slopes. Tipping can also occur when you cross ditches, ridges, or other unexpected obstructions.

When possible, operate the machine up slopes and down slopes with the final drive sprockets facing down the slope. Avoid operating the machine across the slope. Place the heaviest end of the machine uphill when you are working on an incline.

Keep the machine under control. Do not overload the machine beyond capacity.

Avoid changing the direction of travel on a slope. Changing the direction of travel on a slope could result in tipping or side slipping of the machine.

Bring the load close to the machine before traveling any distances.

Bring the load close to the machine before swinging the load.

Lifting capacity decreases as the load is moved further from the machine.

Make sure that the towing eyes and the towing devices are adequate for your needs.

Only connect trailing equipment to a drawbar or to a hitch.

Never straddle a wire cable. Never allow other personnel to straddle a wire cable.

When you maneuver in order to connect the equipment, make sure that no personnel are between the machine and trailing equipment. Block up the hitch of the trailing equipment in order to align the equipment with the drawbar.

Check the local regulations, state codes, and/or directives of the job site for a specific minimum distance from obstacles.

Before you operate the machine, check with local utilities for the locations of underground pipes and for the locations of buried cables.

Know the maximum dimensions of your machine.

Watch the load at all times.

Do not operate the machine without the counterweight. The machine can tip when the boom is over the side.

The clamshell, the grapple, or the magnet can swing in all directions. Move the joysticks in a continuous motion. Failure to move the joysticks in a continuous motion can cause the clamshell, the grapple, or the magnet to swing into the cab or into a person in the work area. This will result in personal injury.

Certain machine front linkage combinations (boom, stick, quick coupler, work tool) can allow the work tool to contact the machine undercarriage, swing frame, boom, boom hydraulic cylinder and or the cab. Be aware of the position of the work tool while you operate the machine.

Shut down the machine until damaged or non-functioning visibility aid(s) is repaired (if applicable) or until appropriate job site organization is used to minimize hazards that are caused by any resulting restricted visibility.

Machine Operation when the Machine is not Completely Assembled

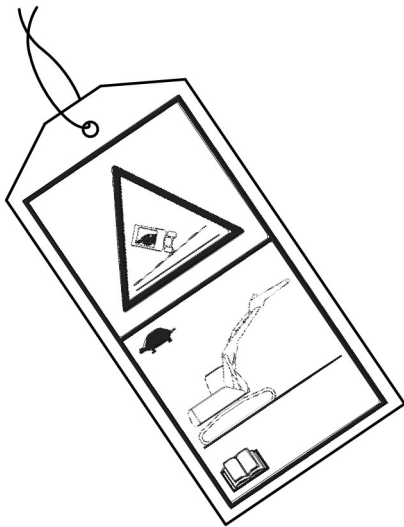


Illustration 47

g02202544

Attach the tag to the controls of the machine. When the tag is attached to the controls, operate the machine as described below.

If the machine needs to be operated without the boom, stick, and/or counterweight being installed, the machine should be operated slowly on flat, stable ground or pavement by qualified operators. Avoid any machine operations which could affect machine stability, including the swing function. The ROPS structural certification depends on the support of the boom, stick, and counterweight in the event of a machine tip over or a machine rollover incident.

i07262981

Lifting Objects

SMCS Code: 7000

There may be local regulations and/or government regulations that govern the use of machines which lift heavy objects. Obey all local and government regulations.

If this machine is used to lift objects within an area that is controlled by the European Directive "2006/42/EC", the machine must be equipped with a boom lowering control valve, a stick lowering control valve, and an overload warning device.

i01953354

Parking

SMCS Code: 7000

The hydraulic system remains pressurized provided that the accumulator is charged. This condition is true even when the engine is not running. This pressure should decrease in a short time (approximately one minute). While the hydraulic system maintains a charge, the hydraulic implements and machine controls remains functional.

Machine movement that is sudden and unexpected will occur if any of the controls are moved. This can cause personal injury or death.

Always move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position before you shut off the engine or immediately after the engine stops running.

Park the machine on a level surface. If you must park the machine on a grade, chock the tracks of the machine.

Safety Section

Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped

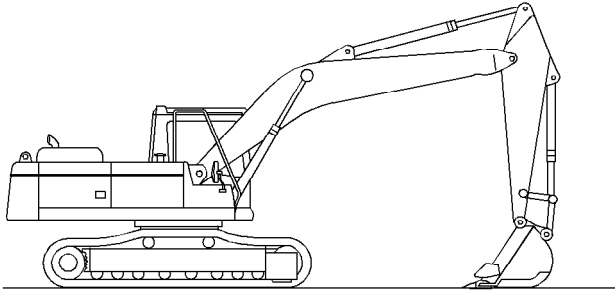


Illustration 48

g01015899

This is the servicing position for an excavator.

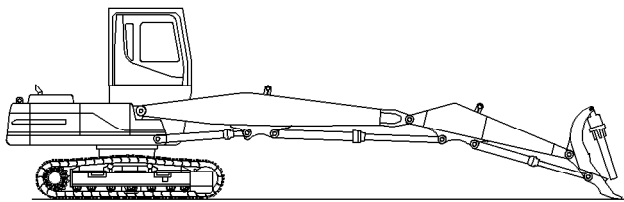


Illustration 49

g00101564

This is the servicing position for a forest machine.

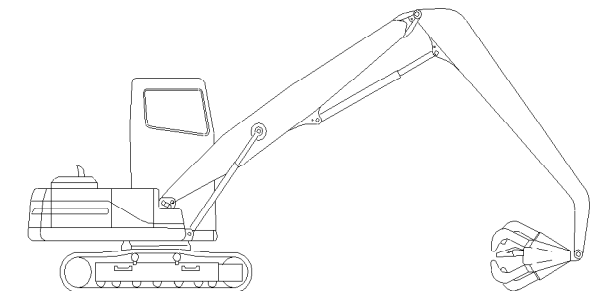


Illustration 50

g01015888

This is the servicing position for a material handler.

Place the machine in the servicing position.

Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.

Stop the engine.

Turn the engine start switch to the OFF position and remove the engine start switch key.

Turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position. Remove the disconnect switch key if you do not operate the machine for an extended period of time. This will prevent drainage of the battery. A battery short circuit, any current draw from certain components, and vandalism can cause drainage of the battery.

i01329161

Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped

SMCS Code: 7000-II

Before lowering any equipment with the engine stopped, clear the area around the equipment of all personnel. The procedure to use will vary with the type of equipment to be lowered. Keep in mind most systems use a high pressure fluid or air to raise or lower equipment. The procedure will cause high pressure air, hydraulic, or some other media to be released in order to lower the equipment. Wear appropriate personal protective equipment and follow the established procedure in the Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped" in the Operation Section of the manual.

i07489719

Sound Information and Vibration Information

SMCS Code: 7000

Sound Level Information

Hearing protection may be needed when the machine is operated with an open operator station for extended periods or in a noisy environment. Hearing protection may be needed when the machine is operated with a cab that is not properly maintained or when the doors and windows are open for extended periods or in a noisy environment.

"The European Union Physical Agents (Vibration) Directive 2002/44/EC"

Vibration Data for Track Type Excavator

Information Concerning Hand/Arm Vibration Level

When the machine is operated according to the intended use, the hand/arm vibration of this machine is below 2.5 meter per second squared.

Information Concerning Whole Body Vibration Level

This section provides vibration data and a method for estimating the vibration level for track type excavators.

Note: Vibration levels are influenced by many different parameters. Many items are listed below.

- Operator training, behavior, mode and stress
- Job site organization, preparation, environment, weather and material
- Machine type, quality of the seat, quality of the suspension system, attachments and condition of the equipment

It is not possible to get precise vibration levels for this machine. The expected vibration levels can be estimated with the information in Table 1 in order to calculate the daily vibration exposure. A simple evaluation of the machine application can be used.

Estimate the vibration levels for the three vibration directions. For typical operating conditions, use the average vibration levels as the estimated level. With an experienced operator and smooth terrain, subtract the Scenario Factors from the average vibration level in order to obtain the estimated vibration level. For aggressive operations and severe terrain, add the Scenario Factors to the average vibration level in order to obtain the estimated vibration level.

Note: All vibration levels are in meter per second squared.

Table 1

"ISO Reference Table A - Equivalent vibration levels of whole body vibration emission for earthmoving equipment."							
Machine Type	Typical Operating Activity	Vibration Levels			Scenario Factors		
		X axis	Y axis	Z axis	X axis	Y axis	Z axis
Track Type Excavator	excavating	0,44	0,27	0,30	0,24	0,16	0,17
	hydraulic breaker application	0,53	0,31	0,55	0,30	0,18	0,28
	mining application	0,65	0,42	0,61	0,21	0,15	0,32
	transfer	0,48	0,32	0,79	0,19	0,20	0,23

Note: Refer to “ISO/TR 25398 Mechanical Vibration - Guideline for the assessment of exposure to whole body vibration of ride on operated earthmoving machines” for more information about vibration. This publication uses data that is measured by international institutes, organizations and manufacturers. This document provides information about the whole body exposure of operators of earthmoving equipment. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU8257, “The European Union Physical Agents (Vibration) Directive 2002/44/EC” for more information about machine vibration levels.

The Caterpillar suspension seat meets the criteria of “ISO 7096”. This represents vertical vibration level under severe operating conditions.

Guidelines for Reducing Vibration Levels on Earthmoving Equipment

Properly adjust machines. Properly maintain machines. Operate machines smoothly. Maintain the conditions of the terrain. The following guidelines can help reduce the whole body vibration level:

1. Use the right type and size of machine, equipment, and attachments.
2. Maintain machines according to the manufacturer's recommendations.
 - a. Tire pressures
 - b. Brake and steering systems
 - c. Controls, hydraulic system and linkages
3. Keep the terrain in good condition.
 - a. Remove any large rocks or obstacles.
 - b. Fill any ditches and holes.
 - c. Provide machines and schedule time in order to maintain the conditions of the terrain.
4. Use a seat that meets “ISO 7096”. Keep the seat maintained and adjusted.
 - a. Adjust the seat and suspension for the weight and the size of the operator.
 - b. Inspect and maintain the seat suspension and adjustment mechanisms.
5. Perform the following operations smoothly.
 - a. Steer
 - b. Brake
 - c. Accelerate.
 - d. Shift the gears.
6. Move the attachments smoothly.
7. Adjust the machine speed and the route in order to minimize the vibration level.
 - a. Drive around obstacles and rough terrain.
 - b. Slow down when it is necessary to go over rough terrain.
8. Minimize vibrations for a long work cycle or a long travel distance.
 - a. Use machines that are equipped with suspension systems.
 - b. Use the ride control system on track type excavators.
 - c. If no ride control system is available, reduce speed in order to prevent bounce.
 - d. Haul the machines between workplaces.
9. Less operator comfort may be caused by other risk factors. The following guidelines can be effective in order to provide better operator comfort:
 - a. Adjust the seat and adjust the controls in order to achieve good posture.
 - b. Adjust the mirrors in order to minimize twisted posture.
 - c. Provide breaks in order to reduce long periods of sitting.
 - d. Avoid jumping from the cab.
 - e. Minimize repeated handling of loads and lifting of loads.
 - f. Minimize any shocks and impacts during sports and leisure activities.

Sources

The vibration information and calculation procedure is based on “ISO/TR 25398 Mechanical Vibration - Guideline for the assessment of exposure to whole body vibration of ride on operated earthmoving machines”. Harmonized data is measured by international institutes, organizations and manufacturers.

This literature provides information about assessing the whole body vibration exposure of operators of earthmoving equipment. The method is based on measured vibration emission under real working conditions for all machines.

You should check the original directive. This document summarizes part of the content of the applicable law. This document is not meant to substitute the original sources. Other parts of these documents are based on information from the United Kingdom Health and Safety Executive.

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU8257, "The European Union Physical Agents (Vibration) Directive 2002/44/EC" for more information about vibration.

Consult your local Caterpillar dealer for more information about machine features that minimize vibration levels. Consult your local Caterpillar dealer about safe machine operation.

Use the following web site in order to find your local dealer:

Caterpillar, Inc.
www.cat.com

i07199012

Operator Station

SMCS Code: 7300; 7301; 7325

Any modifications to the inside of the operator station should not project into the operator space or into the space for the companion seat (if equipped). The addition of a radio, fire extinguisher, and other equipment must be installed so that the defined operator space and the space for the companion seat (if equipped) is maintained. Any item that is brought into the cab should not project into the defined operator space or the space for the companion seat (if equipped). A lunch box or other loose items must be secured. Objects must not pose an impact hazard in rough terrain or in the event of a rollover.

i07349154

Guards (Operator Protection)

SMCS Code: 7000; 7150

There are different types of guards that are used to protect the operator. The machine and the machine application determine the type of guard that should be used.

A daily inspection of the guards is required in order to check for structures that are bent, cracked or loose. Never operate a machine with a damaged structure.

The operator becomes exposed to a hazardous situation if the machine is used improperly or if poor operating techniques are used. This situation can occur even though a machine is equipped with an appropriate protective guard. Follow the established operating procedures that are recommended for your machine.

Rollover Protective Structure (ROPS), Falling Object Protective Structure (FOPS) or Tip Over Protection Structure (TOPS)

The ROPS/FOPS Structure (if equipped) on your machine is specifically designed, tested and certified for that machine. Any alteration or any modification to the ROPS/FOPS Structure could weaken the structure. This places the operator into an unprotected environment. Modifications or attachments that cause the machine to exceed the weight that is stamped on the certification plate also place the operator into an unprotected environment. Excessive weight may inhibit the brake performance, the steering performance and the ROPS. The protection that is offered by the ROPS/FOPS Structure will be impaired if the ROPS/FOPS Structure has structural damage. Damage to the structure can be caused by an overturn, a falling object, a collision, etc.

Do not mount items (fire extinguishers, first aid kits, work lights, etc) by welding brackets to the ROPS/FOPS Structure or by drilling holes in the ROPS/FOPS Structure. Welding brackets or drilling holes in the ROPS/FOPS Structures can weaken the structures. Consult your Cat dealer for mounting guidelines.

The Tip Over Protection Structure (TOPS) is another type of guard that is used on mini hydraulic excavators. This structure protects the operator in the event of a tipover. The same guidelines for the inspection, the maintenance and the modification of the ROPS/FOPS Structure are required for the Tip Over Protection Structure.

Other Guards (If Equipped)

Protection from flying objects and/or falling objects is required for special applications. Logging applications and demolition applications are two examples that require special protection.

A front guard needs to be installed when a work tool that creates flying objects is used. Mesh front guards that are approved by Caterpillar or polycarbonate front guards that are approved by Caterpillar are available for machines with a cab or an open canopy. On machines that are equipped with cabs, the windows should also be closed. Safety glasses are recommended when flying hazards exist for machines with cabs and machines with open canopies.

If the work material extends above the cab, top guards and front guards should be used. Typical examples of this type of application are listed below:

- Demolition applications
- Rock quarries

- Forestry products

Additional guards may be required for specific applications or work tools. The Operation and Maintenance Manual for your machine or your work tool will provide specific requirements for the guards. Refer to Operation Maintenance manual, "Demolition" for additional information. Consult your Cat dealer for additional information.

Product Information Section

General Information

i02039942

Lifting Capacities

SMCS Code: 7000



Load Point Height (H) – Height of the load point



Front Load Radius (F) – Load radius over the front of the machine



Side Load Radius (S) – Load radius over the side of the machine



Maximum Reach – Load at maximum reach

322B Forest Machine

Product Information Section
Lifting Capacities

Under/Under Heel Boom

Table 2

322B Forest Machine Under/Under Heel Boom Metric Units										
(H)		3.0 m		4.5 m		6.0 m		7.5 m		
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	
12.0 m	kg			13600 ⁽¹⁾	13600 ⁽¹⁾					
10.5 m	kg					10700 ⁽¹⁾	10700 ⁽¹⁾	9100 ⁽¹⁾	8700	
9.0 m	kg					10300 ⁽¹⁾	10300 ⁽¹⁾	8900 ⁽¹⁾	8700 ⁽¹⁾	
7.5 m	kg					10400 ⁽¹⁾	10400 ⁽¹⁾	8900 ⁽¹⁾	8700 ⁽¹⁾	
6.0 m	kg					10900 ⁽¹⁾	10900 ⁽¹⁾	9100 ⁽¹⁾	8800 ⁽¹⁾	
4.5 m	kg			14200 ⁽¹⁾	14200 ⁽¹⁾	11600 ⁽¹⁾	11600 ⁽¹⁾	9400 ⁽¹⁾	8700	
3.0 m	kg			15900 ⁽¹⁾	15900 ⁽¹⁾	12300 ⁽¹⁾	11800	9700 ⁽¹⁾	8400	
1.5 m	kg			14200 ⁽¹⁾	14200 ⁽¹⁾	12400 ⁽¹⁾	11200	9700 ⁽¹⁾	8000	
0.0 m	kg			12200 ⁽¹⁾	12200 ⁽¹⁾	12000 ⁽¹⁾	10800	9300 ⁽¹⁾	7800	
-1.5 m	kg	6200 ⁽¹⁾	6200 ⁽¹⁾	12900 ⁽¹⁾	12900 ⁽¹⁾	10800 ⁽¹⁾	10600 ⁽¹⁾	8300 ⁽¹⁾	7700	
-3.0 m	kg	8000 ⁽¹⁾	8000 ⁽¹⁾	10600 ⁽¹⁾	10600 ⁽¹⁾	8500 ⁽¹⁾	8500 ⁽¹⁾	6600 ⁽¹⁾	6600 ⁽¹⁾	
-4.5 m	kg					5300 ⁽¹⁾	5300 ⁽¹⁾	3800 ⁽¹⁾	3800 ⁽¹⁾	
322B Forest Machine Under/Under Heel Boom Metric Units										
(H)		9.0 m		10.5 m		12.0 m		Maximum Reach		
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	m
12.0 m	kg							11500 ⁽¹⁾	11500 ⁽¹⁾	5.90
10.5 m	kg							8800 ⁽¹⁾	7700	7.94
9.0 m	kg	7700 ⁽¹⁾	6400					7500 ⁽¹⁾	6000	9.30
7.5 m	kg	7700 ⁽¹⁾	6600					6700 ⁽¹⁾	5100	10.27
6.0 m	kg	7700 ⁽¹⁾	6500	6500 ⁽¹⁾	5000			6000 ⁽¹⁾	4500	10.94
4.5 m	kg	7800 ⁽¹⁾	6400	6500 ⁽¹⁾	4900			5400 ⁽¹⁾	4200	11.38
3.0 m	kg	7900 ⁽¹⁾	6300	6400 ⁽¹⁾	4900			4800 ⁽¹⁾	4100	11.60
1.5 m	kg	7700 ⁽¹⁾	6300	6100 ⁽¹⁾	4800			4200 ⁽¹⁾	4100	11.62
0.0 m	kg	7300 ⁽¹⁾	6000	5500 ⁽¹⁾	4700			3500 ⁽¹⁾	3500 ⁽¹⁾	11.45
-1.5 m	kg	6300 ⁽¹⁾	5900	4200 ⁽¹⁾	4200 ⁽¹⁾			2500 ⁽¹⁾	2500 ⁽¹⁾	11.07
-3.0 m	kg	4600 ⁽¹⁾	4600 ⁽¹⁾							
-4.5 m	kg									

⁽¹⁾ Capacity is limited by hydraulics rather than by a tipping load. The loads do not exceed 100 percent of hydraulic lifting capacity or 100 percent of tipping capacity. Weight of all lifting accessories must be subtracted from the lifting capacities.

Table 3

322B Forest Machine Under/Under Heel Boom English Units										
(H)		10.0 ft		15.0 ft		20.0 ft		25.0 ft		
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	
40.0 ft	lb			30800 ⁽¹⁾	30800 ⁽¹⁾					
35.0 ft	lb					23700 ⁽¹⁾	23700 ⁽¹⁾	20100 ⁽¹⁾	18400 ⁽¹⁾	
30.0 ft	lb					22500 ⁽¹⁾	22500 ⁽¹⁾	19600 ⁽¹⁾	19100	
25.0 ft	lb					22700 ⁽¹⁾	22700 ⁽¹⁾	19500 ⁽¹⁾	19000 ⁽¹⁾	
20.0 ft	lb			20800 ⁽¹⁾	20800 ⁽¹⁾	23700 ⁽¹⁾	23700 ⁽¹⁾	19900 ⁽¹⁾	19100	
15.0 ft	lb			30800 ⁽¹⁾	30800 ⁽¹⁾	25300 ⁽¹⁾	25300 ⁽¹⁾	20500 ⁽¹⁾	18600	
10.0 ft	lb			34600 ⁽¹⁾	34600 ⁽¹⁾	26700 ⁽¹⁾	25400	21000 ⁽¹⁾	18000	
5.0 ft	lb			32500 ⁽¹⁾	32500 ⁽¹⁾	27100 ⁽¹⁾	24100	21000 ⁽¹⁾	17300	
0.0 ft	lb			31100 ⁽¹⁾	31100 ⁽¹⁾	26200 ⁽¹⁾	23200	20200 ⁽¹⁾	16800	
-5.0 ft	lb	14100 ⁽¹⁾	14100 ⁽¹⁾	30500 ⁽¹⁾	30500 ⁽¹⁾	23500 ⁽¹⁾	22800	18100 ⁽¹⁾	16600	
-10.0 ft	lb	18800 ⁽¹⁾	18800 ⁽¹⁾	23100 ⁽¹⁾	23100 ⁽¹⁾	18500 ⁽¹⁾	18500 ⁽¹⁾	14200 ⁽¹⁾	14200 ⁽¹⁾	
322B Forest Machine Under/Under Heel Boom English Units										
(H)		30.0 ft		35.0 ft		40.0 ft		Maximum Reach		
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	ft
40.0 ft	lb							26800 ⁽¹⁾	26800 ⁽¹⁾	18.22
35.0 ft	lb							19800 ⁽¹⁾	17700	25.46
30.0 ft	lb	16900 ⁽¹⁾	13600					16800 ⁽¹⁾	13400	30.17
25.0 ft	lb	16700 ⁽¹⁾	14100					14900 ⁽¹⁾	11300	33.48
20.0 ft	lb	16800 ⁽¹⁾	14000	14000	10600			13400 ⁽¹⁾	10100	35.78
15.0 ft	lb	17000 ⁽¹⁾	13800	14000 ⁽¹⁾	10600			12100 ⁽¹⁾	9300 ⁽¹⁾	37.27
10.0 ft	lb	17100 ⁽¹⁾	13500	13800 ⁽¹⁾	10400			10800 ⁽¹⁾	9000	38.04
5.0 ft	lb	16800 ⁽¹⁾	13100 ⁽¹⁾	13100 ⁽¹⁾	10300			9300 ⁽¹⁾	8900	38.14
0.0 ft	lb	15800 ⁽¹⁾	12800	11600 ⁽¹⁾	10200 ⁽¹⁾			7700 ⁽¹⁾	7700 ⁽¹⁾	37.57
-5.0 ft	lb	13600 ⁽¹⁾	12700	8500 ⁽¹⁾	8500 ⁽¹⁾			5600 ⁽¹⁾	5600 ⁽¹⁾	36.30
-10.0 ft	lb	9700 ⁽¹⁾	9700 ⁽¹⁾							

⁽¹⁾ Capacity is limited by hydraulics rather than by a tipping load. The loads do not exceed 100 percent of hydraulic lifting capacity or 100 percent of tipping capacity. Weight of all lifting accessories must be subtracted from the lifting capacities.

Product Information Section
Lifting Capacities

Over/Under Heel Boom

Table 4

322B Forest Machine Over/Under Heel Boom Metric Units										
(H)		3.0 m		4.5 m		6.0 m		7.5 m		
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	
12.0 m	kg			14800 ⁽¹⁾	14800 ⁽¹⁾	10700 ⁽¹⁾	10700 ⁽¹⁾			
10.5 m	kg					10700 ⁽¹⁾	10700 ⁽¹⁾	8700 ⁽¹⁾	8700 ⁽¹⁾	
9.0 m	kg					10300 ⁽¹⁾	10300 ⁽¹⁾	8900 ⁽¹⁾	8600	
7.5 m	kg					10400 ⁽¹⁾	10400 ⁽¹⁾	8900 ⁽¹⁾	8800	
6.0 m	kg					10900 ⁽¹⁾	10900 ⁽¹⁾	9100 ⁽¹⁾	8800 ⁽¹⁾	
4.5 m	kg					10600 ⁽¹⁾	10600 ⁽¹⁾	9400 ⁽¹⁾	8800	
3.0 m	kg			14900 ⁽¹⁾	14900 ⁽¹⁾	11700 ⁽¹⁾	11700 ⁽¹⁾	9600 ⁽¹⁾	8400	
1.5 m	kg			16300 ⁽¹⁾	16300	12200 ⁽¹⁾	11300	9600 ⁽¹⁾	8100	
0.0 m	kg			16400 ⁽¹⁾	16300 ⁽¹⁾	12100 ⁽¹⁾	10700	9400 ⁽¹⁾	7800	
-1.5 m	kg	5200 ⁽¹⁾	5200 ⁽¹⁾	14700 ⁽¹⁾	14700 ⁽¹⁾	11200 ⁽¹⁾	10400	8700 ⁽¹⁾	7600	
-3.0 m	kg	8200 ⁽¹⁾	8200 ⁽¹⁾	11900 ⁽¹⁾	11900 ⁽¹⁾	9300 ⁽¹⁾	9300 ⁽¹⁾	7200 ⁽¹⁾	7200 ⁽¹⁾	
-4.5 m	kg			7800 ⁽¹⁾	7800 ⁽¹⁾	6500 ⁽¹⁾	6500 ⁽¹⁾	4900 ⁽¹⁾	4900 ⁽¹⁾	
322B Forest Machine Over/Under Heel Boom Metric Units										
(H)		9.0 m		10.5 m		12.0 m		Maximum Reach		
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	m
12.0 m	kg							9500 ⁽¹⁾	9500 ⁽¹⁾	7.03
10.5 m	kg							7700 ⁽¹⁾	6700	8.81
9.0 m	kg	7500 ⁽¹⁾	6800					6800 ⁽¹⁾	5100	10.06
7.5 m	kg	7700 ⁽¹⁾	6700	6600 ⁽¹⁾	5100			6200	4700	10.95
6.0 m	kg	7700 ⁽¹⁾	6700	6500 ⁽¹⁾	5100			5600 ⁽¹⁾	4200	11.59
4.5 m	kg	7800 ⁽¹⁾	6500	6500 ⁽¹⁾	5000			5100 ⁽¹⁾	3900	12.00
3.0 m	kg	7800 ⁽¹⁾	6300	6500 ⁽¹⁾	4900	5000 ⁽¹⁾	3900	4500 ⁽¹⁾	3800	12.21
1.5 m	kg	7800 ⁽¹⁾	6100	6300 ⁽¹⁾	4800	4500 ⁽¹⁾	3900	4000 ⁽¹⁾	3800	12.23
0.0 m	kg	7500 ⁽¹⁾	5900	5800 ⁽¹⁾	4700	3400 ⁽¹⁾	3400 ⁽¹⁾	3300 ⁽¹⁾	3300 ⁽¹⁾	12.07
-1.5 m	kg	6700 ⁽¹⁾	5800	4900 ⁽¹⁾	4700			2500 ⁽¹⁾	2500 ⁽¹⁾	11.71
-3.0 m	kg	5400 ⁽¹⁾	5400 ⁽¹⁾	3200 ⁽¹⁾	3200 ⁽¹⁾					
-4.5 m	kg	3100 ⁽¹⁾	3100 ⁽¹⁾							

⁽¹⁾ Capacity is limited by hydraulics rather than by a tipping load. The loads do not exceed 100 percent of hydraulic lifting capacity or 100 percent of tipping capacity. Weight of all lifting accessories must be subtracted from the lifting capacities.

Table 5

322B Forest Machine Over/Under Heel Boom English Units										
(H)		10.0 ft		15.0 ft		20.0 ft		25.0 ft		
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	
40.0 ft	lb			30000 ⁽¹⁾	30000 ⁽¹⁾	24900 ⁽¹⁾	24900 ⁽¹⁾			
35.0 ft	lb					23700 ⁽¹⁾	23700 ⁽¹⁾	20300 ⁽¹⁾	19100 ⁽¹⁾	
30.0 ft	lb					22600 ⁽¹⁾	22600 ⁽¹⁾	19700 ⁽¹⁾	19100	
25.0 ft	lb					22800 ⁽¹⁾	22800 ⁽¹⁾	19500 ⁽¹⁾	19000 ⁽¹⁾	
20.0 ft	lb					23700 ⁽¹⁾	23700 ⁽¹⁾	19900 ⁽¹⁾	19100	
15.0 ft	lb					23300 ⁽¹⁾	23300 ⁽¹⁾	20500 ⁽¹⁾	18900	
10.0 ft	lb			32400 ⁽¹⁾	32400 ⁽¹⁾	25200 ⁽¹⁾	25000	21000 ⁽¹⁾	18200	
5.0 ft	lb			35600 ⁽¹⁾	35000 ⁽¹⁾	26500 ⁽¹⁾	24200	20900 ⁽¹⁾	17300	
0.0 ft	lb			35600 ⁽¹⁾	35000 ⁽¹⁾	26300 ⁽¹⁾	23000	20400 ⁽¹⁾	16700	
-5.0 ft	lb	12000 ⁽¹⁾	12000 ⁽¹⁾	32100 ⁽¹⁾	32100 ⁽¹⁾	24300 ⁽¹⁾	22400	18800 ⁽¹⁾	16400	
-10.0 ft	lb	18600 ⁽¹⁾	18600 ⁽¹⁾	26000 ⁽¹⁾	26000 ⁽¹⁾	20200 ⁽¹⁾	20200 ⁽¹⁾	15600 ⁽¹⁾	15600 ⁽¹⁾	
-15.0 ft	lb			16900 ⁽¹⁾	16900 ⁽¹⁾	13900 ⁽¹⁾	13900 ⁽¹⁾	10400 ⁽¹⁾	10400 ⁽¹⁾	
322B Forest Machine Over/Under Heel Boom English Units										
(H)		30.0 ft		35.0 ft		40.0 ft		Maximum Reach		
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	ft
40.0 ft	lb							21900 ⁽¹⁾	21900 ⁽¹⁾	22.13
35.0 ft	lb							17400 ⁽¹⁾	15300	28.36
30.0 ft	lb	16700 ⁽¹⁾	14400					15300 ⁽¹⁾	12100	32.65
25.0 ft	lb	16900 ⁽¹⁾	14400	14300 ⁽¹⁾	10900			13700	10400	35.73
20.0 ft	lb	17000 ⁽¹⁾	14000	14200	10900			12400	9300	37.90
15.0 ft	lb	17000 ⁽¹⁾	13600	14200 ⁽¹⁾	10800			11300 ⁽¹⁾	8700	39.31
10.0 ft	lb	17000 ⁽¹⁾	13600	14000 ⁽¹⁾	10600	10100 ⁽¹⁾	8400	10100 ⁽¹⁾	8400	40.04
5.0 ft	lb	16900 ⁽¹⁾	13200 ⁽¹⁾	13600 ⁽¹⁾	10300	9100 ⁽¹⁾	8300	8800 ⁽¹⁾	8300	40.14
0.0 ft	lb	16200 ⁽¹⁾	12800	12600 ⁽¹⁾	10200			7300 ⁽¹⁾	7300 ⁽¹⁾	39.59
-5.0 ft	lb	14500 ⁽¹⁾	12600	10500 ⁽¹⁾	10100			5500 ⁽¹⁾	5500 ⁽¹⁾	38.39
-10.0 ft	lb	11500 ⁽¹⁾	11500 ⁽¹⁾	6400 ⁽¹⁾	6400 ⁽¹⁾					
-15.0 ft	lb									

⁽¹⁾ Capacity is limited by hydraulics rather than by a tipping load. The loads do not exceed 100 percent of hydraulic lifting capacity or 100 percent of tipping capacity. Weight of all lifting accessories must be subtracted from the lifting capacities.

Product Information Section
Lifting Capacities

Butt-N-Top

Table 6

322B Forest Machine Butt-N-Top Metric Units										
H		3.0 m		4.5 m		6.0 m		7.5 m		
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	
12.0 m	kg									
10.5 m	kg			13800 ⁽¹⁾	13800 ⁽¹⁾	11700 ⁽¹⁾	11700 ⁽¹⁾			
9.0 m	kg					11100 ⁽¹⁾	11100 ⁽¹⁾	9700 ⁽¹⁾	9000	
7.5 m	kg					11100 ⁽¹⁾	11100 ⁽¹⁾	9500 ⁽¹⁾	9100	
6.0 m	kg			14200 ⁽¹⁾	14200 ⁽¹⁾	11500 ⁽¹⁾	11500 ⁽¹⁾	9700 ⁽¹⁾	9000	
4.5 m	kg			15700 ⁽¹⁾	15700 ⁽¹⁾	12100 ⁽¹⁾	12100 ⁽¹⁾	9900 ⁽¹⁾	8800	
3.0 m	kg					12700 ⁽¹⁾	11700	10100 ⁽¹⁾	8500	
1.5 m	kg					12700 ⁽¹⁾	11200	9900 ⁽¹⁾	8200	
0.0 m	kg			9700 ⁽¹⁾	9700 ⁽¹⁾	11800 ⁽¹⁾	10900	9200 ⁽¹⁾	8000	
-1.5 m	kg			12200 ⁽¹⁾	12200 ⁽¹⁾	9900 ⁽¹⁾	9900 ⁽¹⁾	7800 ⁽¹⁾	7800 ⁽¹⁾	
-3.0 m	kg			8000 ⁽¹⁾	8000 ⁽¹⁾	7100 ⁽¹⁾	7100 ⁽¹⁾	5400 ⁽¹⁾	5400 ⁽¹⁾	
322B Forest Machine Butt-N-Top Metric Units										
(H)		9.0 m		10.5 m		12.0 m		Maximum Reach		
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	m
12.0 m	kg							18400 ⁽¹⁾	18400 ⁽¹⁾	3.72
10.5 m	kg							11300 ⁽¹⁾	11000	6.50
9.0 m	kg							9200 ⁽¹⁾	7800	8.11
7.5 m	kg	8300 ⁽¹⁾	6700					8100 ⁽¹⁾	6400	9.21
6.0 m	kg	8300 ⁽¹⁾	6700					7200 ⁽¹⁾	5700	9.95
4.5 m	kg	8300 ⁽¹⁾	6700					6500 ⁽¹⁾	5200	10.43
3.0 m	kg	8200 ⁽¹⁾	6500	6300 ⁽¹⁾	5200			5800 ⁽¹⁾	5000	10.67
1.5 m	kg	7900 ⁽¹⁾	6400	5700 ⁽¹⁾	5100			5000 ⁽¹⁾	5000	10.70
0.0 m	kg	7100 ⁽¹⁾	6300	4200 ⁽¹⁾	4200 ⁽¹⁾			4100 ⁽¹⁾	4100 ⁽¹⁾	10.51
-1.5 m	kg	5700 ⁽¹⁾	5700 ⁽¹⁾							
-3.0 m	kg									

⁽¹⁾ Capacity is limited by hydraulics rather than by a tipping load. The loads do not exceed 100 percent of hydraulic lifting capacity or 100 percent of tipping capacity. Weight of all lifting accessories must be subtracted from the lifting capacities.

Table 7

322B Forest Machine Butt-N-Top English Units										
(H)		10.0 ft		15.0 ft		20.0 ft		25.0 ft		
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	
40.0 ft	lb	48200 ⁽¹⁾	48200 ⁽¹⁾							
35.0 ft	lb			30500 ⁽¹⁾	30500 ⁽¹⁾	26000 ⁽¹⁾	26000 ⁽¹⁾			
30.0 ft	lb					24300 ⁽¹⁾	24300 ⁽¹⁾	21300 ⁽¹⁾	19300	
25.0 ft	lb					24200 ⁽¹⁾	24200 ⁽¹⁾	20900 ⁽¹⁾	19600 ⁽¹⁾	
20.0 ft	lb			30900 ⁽¹⁾	30900 ⁽¹⁾	25100 ⁽¹⁾	25100 ⁽¹⁾	21100 ⁽¹⁾	19400	
15.0 ft	lb			34100 ⁽¹⁾	34100 ⁽¹⁾	26400 ⁽¹⁾	26400 ⁽¹⁾	21600 ⁽¹⁾	18900	
10.0 ft	lb					27600 ⁽¹⁾	25300	21900 ⁽¹⁾	18300	
5.0 ft	lb					27600 ⁽¹⁾	24200	21500 ⁽¹⁾	17700	
0.0 ft	lb			23400 ⁽¹⁾	23400 ⁽¹⁾	25700 ⁽¹⁾	23500	20000 ⁽¹⁾	17300	
-5.0 ft	lb			26700 ⁽¹⁾	26700 ⁽¹⁾	21600 ⁽¹⁾	21600 ⁽¹⁾	16800 ⁽¹⁾	16800 ⁽¹⁾	
-10.0 ft	lb			17500 ⁽¹⁾	17500 ⁽¹⁾	15200 ⁽¹⁾	15200 ⁽¹⁾	11500 ⁽¹⁾	11500 ⁽¹⁾	
322B Forest Machine Butt-N-Top English Units										
(H)		30.0 ft		35.0 ft		40.0 ft		Maximum Reach		
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	ft
40.0 ft	lb									
35.0 ft	lb									
30.0 ft	lb							20800 ⁽¹⁾	17600	26.20
25.0 ft	lb							18100 ⁽¹⁾	14300	29.96
20.0 ft	lb	18000 ⁽¹⁾	14500					16100 ⁽¹⁾	12500	32.52
15.0 ft	lb	18000 ⁽¹⁾	14300					14500 ⁽¹⁾	11600	34.16
10.0 ft	lb	17800 ⁽¹⁾	14000					12900 ⁽¹⁾	11000	35.00
5.0 ft	lb	17000 ⁽¹⁾	13700	11500 ⁽¹⁾	11000			11200 ⁽¹⁾	11000	35.11
0.0 ft	lb	15300 ⁽¹⁾	13500					9100 ⁽¹⁾	9100 ⁽¹⁾	34.48
-5.0 ft	lb	12000 ⁽¹⁾	12000							
-10.0 ft	lb									

⁽¹⁾ Capacity is limited by hydraulics rather than by a tipping load. The loads do not exceed 100 percent of hydraulic lifting capacity or 100 percent of tipping capacity. Weight of all lifting accessories must be subtracted from the lifting capacities.

325B Forest Machine

Product Information Section
Lifting Capacities

Under/Under Heel Boom

Table 8

325B Forest Machine Under/Under Heel Boom										
Metric Units										
(H)		3.0 m		4.5 m		6.0 m		7.5 m		
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	
12.0 m	kg			16400 ⁽¹⁾	16400 ⁽¹⁾	13100 ⁽¹⁾	13100 ⁽¹⁾			
10.5 m	kg			14900 ⁽¹⁾	14900 ⁽¹⁾	12600 ⁽¹⁾	12600 ⁽¹⁾	11100 ⁽¹⁾	10700 ⁽¹⁾	
9.0 m	kg					12300 ⁽¹⁾	12300 ⁽¹⁾	10700 ⁽¹⁾	10500	
7.5 m	kg			11800 ⁽¹⁾	11800 ⁽¹⁾	12500 ⁽¹⁾	12500 ⁽¹⁾	10700 ⁽¹⁾	10600	
6.0 m	kg			14200 ⁽¹⁾	14200 ⁽¹⁾	13300 ⁽¹⁾	13300 ⁽¹⁾	11100 ⁽¹⁾	10800	
4.5 m	kg			16900 ⁽¹⁾	16900 ⁽¹⁾	13800 ⁽¹⁾	13800 ⁽¹⁾	11500 ⁽¹⁾	10500	
3.0 m	kg					14700 ⁽¹⁾	14300	11900 ⁽¹⁾	9600	
1.5 m	kg					15200 ⁽¹⁾	13500	11900 ⁽¹⁾	9600	
0.0 m	kg			10900 ⁽¹⁾	10900 ⁽¹⁾	14900 ⁽¹⁾	12900	11500 ⁽¹⁾	9300	
-1.5 m	kg	4300 ⁽¹⁾	4300 ⁽¹⁾	11300 ⁽¹⁾	11300 ⁽¹⁾	13500 ⁽¹⁾	12500	10500 ⁽¹⁾	9100	
-3.0 m	kg	7100 ⁽¹⁾	7100 ⁽¹⁾	13000 ⁽¹⁾	13000 ⁽¹⁾	11000 ⁽¹⁾	11000 ⁽¹⁾	8600 ⁽¹⁾	8600 ⁽¹⁾	
-4.5 m	kg					7300 ⁽¹⁾	7300 ⁽¹⁾	5600 ⁽¹⁾	5600 ⁽¹⁾	
322B Forest Machine Under/Under Heel Boom										
Metric Units										
(H)		9.0 m		10.5 m		12.0 m		Maximum Reach		
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	m
12.0 m	kg							10900 ⁽¹⁾	10900 ⁽¹⁾	7.01
10.5 m	kg							8900 ⁽¹⁾	8000	8.78
9.0 m	kg	9400 ⁽¹⁾	8000					7800 ⁽¹⁾	6400	10.02
7.5 m	kg	9300 ⁽¹⁾	8100	8000	6000			7300 ⁽¹⁾	5500	10.92
6.0 m	kg	9400 ⁽¹⁾	8000	8000	6100			6600	5000	11.55
4.5 m	kg	9600 ⁽¹⁾	7800	7900	6000			6200 ⁽¹⁾	4600	11.95
3.0 m	kg	9700 ⁽¹⁾	7600	7800	5800	6000 ⁽¹⁾	4600	5600 ⁽¹⁾	4500	12.16
1.5 m	kg	9600 ⁽¹⁾	7300	7600	5700	5500 ⁽¹⁾	4600	4900 ⁽¹⁾	4500	12.18
0.0 m	kg	9100 ⁽¹⁾	7100	7100 ⁽¹⁾	5600			4000 ⁽¹⁾	4000 ⁽¹⁾	12.01
-1.5 m	kg	8100 ⁽¹⁾	7000	5900 ⁽¹⁾	5600			3000 ⁽¹⁾	3000 ⁽¹⁾	11.64
-3.0 m	kg	6400 ⁽¹⁾	6400 ⁽¹⁾	3800 ⁽¹⁾	3800 ⁽¹⁾					
-4.5 m	kg									

⁽¹⁾ Capacity is limited by hydraulics rather than by a tipping load. The loads do not exceed 100 percent of hydraulic lifting capacity or 100 percent of tipping capacity. Weight of all lifting accessories must be subtracted from the lifting capacities.

Table 9

325B Forest Machine Under/Under Heel Boom English Units										
(H)		10.0 ft		15.0 ft		20.0 ft		25.0 ft		
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	
45.0 ft	lb									
40.0 ft	lb			37000 ⁽¹⁾	37000 ⁽¹⁾	29500 ⁽¹⁾	29500 ⁽¹⁾			
35.0 ft	lb			32900 ⁽¹⁾	32900 ⁽¹⁾	27700 ⁽¹⁾	27700 ⁽¹⁾	24200 ⁽¹⁾	23200 ⁽¹⁾	
30.0 ft	lb			31900 ⁽¹⁾	31900 ⁽¹⁾	27400 ⁽¹⁾	27400 ⁽¹⁾	23700 ⁽¹⁾	23100 ⁽¹⁾	
25.0 ft	lb			27300 ⁽¹⁾	27300 ⁽¹⁾	27700 ⁽¹⁾	27700 ⁽¹⁾	23600 ⁽¹⁾	23100 ⁽¹⁾	
20.0 ft	lb			31600 ⁽¹⁾	31600 ⁽¹⁾	29000 ⁽¹⁾	29000 ⁽¹⁾	24200 ⁽¹⁾	23400	
15.0 ft	lb			37200 ⁽¹⁾	37200 ⁽¹⁾	31000 ⁽¹⁾	31000 ⁽¹⁾	25100 ⁽¹⁾	22600	
10.0 ft	lb					31800 ⁽¹⁾	30800	25800 ⁽¹⁾	21700	
5.0 ft	lb					33100 ⁽¹⁾	29000	25900 ⁽¹⁾	20800	
0.0 ft	lb			26500 ⁽¹⁾	26500 ⁽¹⁾	32400 ⁽¹⁾	27700	25100 ⁽¹⁾	20000	
-5.0 ft	lb	10000 ⁽¹⁾	10000 ⁽¹⁾	26300 ⁽¹⁾	26300 ⁽¹⁾	29200 ⁽¹⁾	27100	22700 ⁽¹⁾	19600	
-10.0 ft	lb	16300 ⁽¹⁾	16300 ⁽¹⁾	28400 ⁽¹⁾	28400 ⁽¹⁾	23900 ⁽¹⁾	23900 ⁽¹⁾	18600 ⁽¹⁾	18600 ⁽¹⁾	
325B Forest Machine Under/Under Heel Boom English Units										
(H)		30.0 ft		35.0 ft		40.0 ft		Maximum Reach		
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	ft
45.0 ft	lb							44900 ⁽¹⁾	44900 ⁽¹⁾	10.87
40.0 ft	lb							25600 ⁽¹⁾	25600 ⁽¹⁾	22.05
35.0 ft	lb							20200 ⁽¹⁾	18100	28.27
30.0 ft	lb	20600 ⁽¹⁾	17100					17600 ⁽¹⁾	14300	32.55
25.0 ft	lb	20500 ⁽¹⁾	17300	17000	12800			16200 ⁽¹⁾	12200	35.60
20.0 ft	lb	20600 ⁽¹⁾	17100	17100	12900			14700	11000	37.77
15.0 ft	lb	20800 ⁽¹⁾	16700	16900	12800			13800	10300	39.17
10.0 ft	lb	21000 ⁽¹⁾	16200	16700	12500			12400 ⁽¹⁾	9900	39.88
5.0 ft	lb	20800 ⁽¹⁾	15700	16400 ⁽¹⁾	12300			10800 ⁽¹⁾	9800	39.96
0.0 ft	lb	19800 ⁽¹⁾	15300	15200 ⁽¹⁾	12100			9000 ⁽¹⁾	9000 ⁽¹⁾	39.39
-5.0 ft	lb	17500 ⁽¹⁾	15000	12500 ⁽¹⁾	12000			3000 ⁽¹⁾	6700 ⁽¹⁾	38.16
-10.0 ft	lb	13700 ⁽¹⁾	13700 ⁽¹⁾	7300 ⁽¹⁾	7300 ⁽¹⁾					

⁽¹⁾ Capacity is limited by hydraulics rather than by a tipping load. The loads do not exceed 100 percent of hydraulic lifting capacity or 100 percent of tipping capacity. Weight of all lifting accessories must be subtracted from the lifting capacities.

Product Information Section
Lifting Capacities

Over/Under Heel Boom

Table 10

325B Forest Machine Over/Under Heel Boom Metric Units										
(H)		3.0 m		4.5 m		6.0 m		7.5 m		
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	
12.0 m	kg					12300 ⁽¹⁾	12300 ⁽¹⁾			
10.5 m	kg			15200 ⁽¹⁾	15200 ⁽¹⁾	12700 ⁽¹⁾	12700 ⁽¹⁾	10300 ⁽¹⁾	10300 ⁽¹⁾	
9.0 m	kg			14700 ⁽¹⁾	14700 ⁽¹⁾	12500 ⁽¹⁾	12500 ⁽¹⁾	10800 ⁽¹⁾	10300	
7.5 m	kg					12800 ⁽¹⁾	12800 ⁽¹⁾	10900 ⁽¹⁾	10500	
6.0 m	kg					10800 ⁽¹⁾	10800 ⁽¹⁾	11200 ⁽¹⁾	10600	
4.5 m	kg							11100 ⁽¹⁾	10700	
3.0 m	kg							11700 ⁽¹⁾	10300	
1.5 m	kg							11900 ⁽¹⁾	9800	
0.0 m	kg							11700 ⁽¹⁾	9400	
-1.5 m	kg					13800 ⁽¹⁾	12600	10700 ⁽¹⁾	9100	
-3.0 m	kg			7100 ⁽¹⁾	7100 ⁽¹⁾	11400 ⁽¹⁾	11400 ⁽¹⁾	9000 ⁽¹⁾	9000 ⁽¹⁾	
-4.5 m	kg			9400 ⁽¹⁾	9400 ⁽¹⁾	8000 ⁽¹⁾	8000 ⁽¹⁾	6200 ⁽¹⁾	6200 ⁽¹⁾	
325B Forest Machine Over/Under Heel Boom Metric Units										
(H)		9.0 m		10.5 m		12.0 m		Maximum Reach		
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	m
12.0 m	kg							9100 ⁽¹⁾	9100 ⁽¹⁾	8.01
10.5 m	kg	9300 ⁽¹⁾	7600					7700 ⁽¹⁾	7000	9.60
9.0 m	kg	9000 ⁽¹⁾	8100					7000 ⁽¹⁾	5800	10.74
7.5 m	kg	9300 ⁽¹⁾	8200	7900	6100			6500 ⁽¹⁾	5100	11.58
6.0 m	kg	9400 ⁽¹⁾	8100	8000	6100			6100	4600	12.17
4.5 m	kg	9600 ⁽¹⁾	7900	7900	6000	6200	4700	5800	4400	12.56
3.0 m	kg	9700 ⁽¹⁾	7700	7800	5900	6200	4700	5300 ⁽¹⁾	4200	12.76
1.5 m	kg	9600 ⁽¹⁾	7400	7600	5800	5800 ⁽¹⁾	4600	4600 ⁽¹⁾	4200	12.78
0.0 m	kg	9300 ⁽¹⁾	7200	7300 ⁽¹⁾	5700	4800 ⁽¹⁾	4600	3900 ⁽¹⁾	3900 ⁽¹⁾	12.61
-1.5 m	kg	8400 ⁽¹⁾	7000	6200 ⁽¹⁾	5600			3000 ⁽¹⁾	3000 ⁽¹⁾	12.26
-3.0 m	kg	6800 ⁽¹⁾	6800 ⁽¹⁾	4300 ⁽¹⁾	4300 ⁽¹⁾					
-4.5 m	kg	4100 ⁽¹⁾	4100 ⁽¹⁾							

⁽¹⁾ Capacity is limited by hydraulics rather than by a tipping load. The loads do not exceed 100 percent of hydraulic lifting capacity or 100 percent of tipping capacity. Weight of all lifting accessories must be subtracted from the lifting capacities.

Table 11

325B Forest Machine Over/Under Heel Boom English Units										
(H)		10.0 ft		15.0 ft		20.0 ft		25.0 ft		
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	
45.0 ft	lb									
40.0 ft	lb			36200 ⁽¹⁾	36200 ⁽¹⁾	28700 ⁽¹⁾	28700 ⁽¹⁾	24200 ⁽¹⁾	22700	
35.0 ft	lb			32600 ⁽¹⁾	32600 ⁽¹⁾	27400 ⁽¹⁾	27400 ⁽¹⁾	22700 ⁽¹⁾	22700 ⁽¹⁾	
30.0 ft	lb			31100 ⁽¹⁾	31100 ⁽¹⁾	27300 ⁽¹⁾	27300 ⁽¹⁾	23600 ⁽¹⁾	22900 ⁽¹⁾	
25.0 ft	lb					26500 ⁽¹⁾	26500 ⁽¹⁾	23600 ⁽¹⁾	23000 ⁽¹⁾	
20.0 ft	lb					26000 ⁽¹⁾	26000 ⁽¹⁾	24200 ⁽¹⁾	23400	
15.0 ft	lb			23200 ⁽¹⁾	23200 ⁽¹⁾	28000 ⁽¹⁾	28000 ⁽¹⁾	25100 ⁽¹⁾	23300	
10.0 ft	lb					30700 ⁽¹⁾	30700	25900 ⁽¹⁾	22200	
5.0 ft	lb					32600 ⁽¹⁾	29500	26000 ⁽¹⁾	21100	
0.0 ft	lb					32800 ⁽¹⁾	27900	25400 ⁽¹⁾	20200	
-5.0 ft	lb			25400 ⁽¹⁾	25400 ⁽¹⁾	30400 ⁽¹⁾	27200	23700 ⁽¹⁾	19800	
-10.0 ft	lb	13800 ⁽¹⁾	13800 ⁽¹⁾	28700 ⁽¹⁾	28700 ⁽¹⁾	26100 ⁽¹⁾	26100 ⁽¹⁾	20400 ⁽¹⁾	19500 ⁽¹⁾	
325B Forest Machine Over/Under Heel Boom English Units										
(H)		30.0 ft		35.0 ft		40.0 ft		Maximum Reach		
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	ft
45.0 ft	lb							30100 ⁽¹⁾	30100 ⁽¹⁾	16.82
40.0 ft	lb							21400 ⁽¹⁾	21400 ⁽¹⁾	25.46
35.0 ft	lb	20600 ⁽¹⁾	17200					17600 ⁽¹⁾	15900	30.98
30.0 ft	lb	20100 ⁽¹⁾	17900					15600 ⁽¹⁾	13000	34.93
25.0 ft	lb	20400 ⁽¹⁾	17900	17400	13400			14500 ⁽¹⁾	11300	37.80
20.0 ft	lb	20600 ⁽¹⁾	17700	17400	13400			13600	10300	39.84
15.0 ft	lb	20900 ⁽¹⁾	17200	17200	13200	13500	10200			
10.0 ft	lb	21000 ⁽¹⁾	16600	16800	12800	13400	10100	11700 ⁽¹⁾	9300	41.85
5.0 ft	lb	21000	16000	16500	12500	13200 ⁽¹⁾	10000	10300 ⁽¹⁾	9300	41.92
0.0 ft	lb	20300 ⁽¹⁾	15500	16100	12200	11500 ⁽¹⁾	9900	8700 ⁽¹⁾	8700 ⁽¹⁾	41.38
-5.0 ft	lb	18600 ⁽¹⁾	15200	14100 ⁽¹⁾	12100	7300 ⁽¹⁾	6700 ⁽¹⁾	6700 ⁽¹⁾	6700 ⁽¹⁾	40.21
-10.0 ft	lb	15500 ⁽¹⁾	15000 ⁽¹⁾	10500 ⁽¹⁾	10500 ⁽¹⁾					

⁽¹⁾ Capacity is limited by hydraulics rather than by a tipping load. The loads do not exceed 100 percent of hydraulic lifting capacity or 100 percent of tipping capacity. Weight of all lifting accessories must be subtracted from the lifting capacities.

Product Information Section
Lifting Capacities

Butt-N-Top

Table 12

325B Forest Machine Butt-N-Top Metric Units										
(H)		3.0 m		4.5 m		6.0 m		7.5 m		
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	
12.0 m	kg			16800 ⁽¹⁾	16800 ⁽¹⁾					
10.5 m	kg			16100 ⁽¹⁾	16100 ⁽¹⁾	13800 ⁽¹⁾	13800 ⁽¹⁾			
9.0 m	kg			15600 ⁽¹⁾	15600 ⁽¹⁾	13300 ⁽¹⁾	13300 ⁽¹⁾	11800 ⁽¹⁾		11500
7.5 m	kg			16000 ⁽¹⁾	1600 ⁽¹⁾	13500 ⁽¹⁾	13500 ⁽¹⁾	11800 ⁽¹⁾		11500
6.0 m	kg			16900 ⁽¹⁾	16900 ⁽¹⁾	14200 ⁽¹⁾	14200 ⁽¹⁾	12100 ⁽¹⁾		11400
4.5 m	kg					15200 ⁽¹⁾	15200 ⁽¹⁾	12500 ⁽¹⁾		11100
3.0 m	kg					16000 ⁽¹⁾	14800	12800 ⁽¹⁾		10800
1.5 m	kg					16200 ⁽¹⁾	14200	12700 ⁽¹⁾		10200
0.0 m	kg					15300 ⁽¹⁾	13900	12100 ⁽¹⁾		10200
-1.5 m	kg			9800 ⁽¹⁾	9800 ⁽¹⁾	13300 ⁽¹⁾	13300 ⁽¹⁾	10600 ⁽¹⁾		10100
-3.0 m	kg			11700 ⁽¹⁾	11700 ⁽¹⁾	10100 ⁽¹⁾	10100 ⁽¹⁾	8100 ⁽¹⁾		8100 ⁽¹⁾
325B Forest Machine Butt-N-Top Metric Units										
(H)		9.0 m		10.5 m		12.0 m		Maximum Reach		
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	m
12.0 m	kg							16200 ⁽¹⁾	16200 ⁽¹⁾	5.25
10.5 m	kg							11900 ⁽¹⁾	11200	7.47
9.0 m	kg							10200 ⁽¹⁾	8600	8.90
7.5 m	kg	10400 ⁽¹⁾	8700					9200 ⁽¹⁾	7300	9.89
6.0 m	kg	10400 ⁽¹⁾	8600	8700	6700			8500	6600	10.59
4.5 m	kg	10500 ⁽¹⁾	8500	8700	6700			7800 ⁽¹⁾	6200	11.03
3.0 m	kg	10500 ⁽¹⁾	8300	8600 ⁽¹⁾	6700			7000 ⁽¹⁾	6000	11.25
1.5 m	kg	10300 ⁽¹⁾	8100	8100 ⁽¹⁾	6600			6100 ⁽¹⁾	6000	11.27
0.0 m	kg	9500 ⁽¹⁾	8000	7100 ⁽¹⁾	6600			5100 ⁽¹⁾	5100 ⁽¹⁾	11.09
-1.5 m	kg	8100 ⁽¹⁾	8000	4900 ⁽¹⁾	4900 ⁽¹⁾					
-3.0 m	kg	5600 ⁽¹⁾	5600 ⁽¹⁾							

⁽¹⁾ Capacity is limited by hydraulics rather than by a tipping load. The loads do not exceed 100 percent of hydraulic lifting capacity or 100 percent of tipping capacity. Weight of all lifting accessories must be subtracted from the lifting capacities.

Table 13

325B Forest Machine Butt-N-Top English Units										
(H)		10.0 ft		15.0 ft		20.0 ft		25.0 ft		
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	
40.00 ft	lb	52100 ⁽¹⁾	52100 ⁽¹⁾	40400 ⁽¹⁾	40400 ⁽¹⁾					
35.00 ft	lb			35600 ⁽¹⁾	35600 ⁽¹⁾	31300 ⁽¹⁾	31300 ⁽¹⁾			
30.0 ft	lb			35200 ⁽¹⁾	35200 ⁽¹⁾	29700 ⁽¹⁾	29700 ⁽¹⁾	26200 ⁽¹⁾	24700	
25.0 ft	lb			35400 ⁽¹⁾	35400 ⁽¹⁾	29800 ⁽¹⁾	29800 ⁽¹⁾	25900 ⁽¹⁾	24800 ⁽¹⁾	
20.0 ft	lb			37600 ⁽¹⁾	37600 ⁽¹⁾	31000 ⁽¹⁾	31000 ⁽¹⁾	26300 ⁽¹⁾	24500	
15.0 ft	lb					32900 ⁽¹⁾	32900 ⁽¹⁾	27100 ⁽¹⁾	23900	
10.0 ft	lb					34800 ⁽¹⁾	31900	27800 ⁽¹⁾	23200	
5.0 ft	lb					35300 ⁽¹⁾	30700	27700 ⁽¹⁾	22500	
0.0 ft	lb					33400 ⁽¹⁾	29900	26200 ⁽¹⁾	22100	
-5.0 ft	lb			23100 ⁽¹⁾	23100 ⁽¹⁾	28900 ⁽¹⁾	28900 ⁽¹⁾	22800 ⁽¹⁾	21800	
-10.0 ft	lb			25700 ⁽¹⁾	25700 ⁽¹⁾	22000 ⁽¹⁾	22000 ⁽¹⁾	17300 ⁽¹⁾	17300 ⁽¹⁾	
325B Forest Machine Butt-N-Top English Units										
(H)		30.0 ft		35.0 ft		40.0 ft		Maximum Reach		
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	ft
40.0 ft	lb							39600 ⁽¹⁾	39600 ⁽¹⁾	15.95
35.0 ft	lb							27300 ⁽¹⁾	25600	23.85
30.0 ft	lb							22800 ⁽¹⁾	19300	28.81
25.0 ft	lb	22800 ⁽¹⁾	18600					20600 ⁽¹⁾	16300	32.24
20.0 ft	lb	22700 ⁽¹⁾	18500					18900	14700	34.61
15.0 ft	lb	22900 ⁽¹⁾	18300	18600	14500			17300 ⁽¹⁾	13700	36.13
10.0 ft	lb	22900 ⁽¹⁾	17900	18500 ⁽¹⁾	14300			15500 ⁽¹⁾	13300	36.91
5.0 ft	lb	22300 ⁽¹⁾	17600	17300 ⁽¹⁾	14200			13600 ⁽¹⁾	13200	36.99
0.0 ft	lb	20600 ⁽¹⁾	17300	14800 ⁽¹⁾	14200			11300 ⁽¹⁾	11300 ⁽¹⁾	36.38
-5.0 ft	lb	17400 ⁽¹⁾	17200	8600 ⁽¹⁾	8600 ⁽¹⁾					
-10.0 ft	lb	11700 ⁽¹⁾	11700 ⁽¹⁾							

⁽¹⁾ Capacity is limited by hydraulics rather than by a tipping load. The loads do not exceed 100 percent of hydraulic lifting capacity or 100 percent of tipping capacity. Weight of all lifting accessories must be subtracted from the lifting capacities.

Product Information Section
Lifting Capacities

325B Material Handler

Table 14

325B Material Handler Metric Units											
(H)		3.0 m		4.5 m		6.0 m		7.5 m		9.0 m	
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)
13.5 m	kg							7600 ⁽¹⁾	7600 ⁽¹⁾		
12.0 m	kg									6700 ⁽¹⁾	6700 ⁽¹⁾
10.5 m	kg									6500 ⁽¹⁾	6500 ⁽¹⁾
9.0 m	kg									6500 ⁽¹⁾	6500 ⁽¹⁾
7.5 m	kg									6700 ⁽¹⁾	6700 ⁽¹⁾
6.0 m	kg							7700 ⁽¹⁾	7700 ⁽¹⁾	7000 ⁽¹⁾	7000 ⁽¹⁾
4.5 m	kg					9800 ⁽¹⁾	9800 ⁽¹⁾	8400 ⁽¹⁾	8400 ⁽¹⁾	7400 ⁽¹⁾	7400 ⁽¹⁾
3.0 m	kg					11200 ⁽¹⁾	11200 ⁽¹⁾	9200 ⁽¹⁾	9200 ⁽¹⁾	7900 ⁽¹⁾	7700
1.5 m	kg					12300 ⁽¹⁾	12300 ⁽¹⁾	9800 ⁽¹⁾	9600	8200 ⁽¹⁾	7400
0.0 m	kg			7600 ⁽¹⁾	7600 ⁽¹⁾	13000 ⁽¹⁾	12500	10200 ⁽¹⁾	9200	8400 ⁽¹⁾	7100
-1.5 m	kg	2900 ⁽¹⁾	2900 ⁽¹⁾	7200 ⁽¹⁾	7200 ⁽¹⁾	12900 ⁽¹⁾	12000	10200 ⁽¹⁾	8900	8300 ⁽¹⁾	6900
-3.0 m	kg	4600 ⁽¹⁾	4600 ⁽¹⁾	8300 ⁽¹⁾	8300 ⁽¹⁾	12200 ⁽¹⁾	11800	9700 ⁽¹⁾	8700	7900 ⁽¹⁾	6800
-4.5 m	kg	6300 ⁽¹⁾	6300 ⁽¹⁾	9900 ⁽¹⁾	9900 ⁽¹⁾	10800 ⁽¹⁾	10800 ⁽¹⁾	8700 ⁽¹⁾	8600	7100 ⁽¹⁾	6800
-6.0 m	kg			10600 ⁽¹⁾	10600 ⁽¹⁾	8700 ⁽¹⁾	8700 ⁽¹⁾	7100 ⁽¹⁾	7100 ⁽¹⁾	5600 ⁽¹⁾	5600 ⁽¹⁾
325B Material Handler Metric Units											
(H)		10.5 m		12.0 m		13.5 m		Maximum Reach			
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	m	
13.5 m	kg							6600 ⁽¹⁾	6600 ⁽¹⁾	8.93	
12.0 m	kg	6000 ⁽¹⁾	6000 ⁽¹⁾					5900 ⁽¹⁾	5900 ⁽¹⁾	10.56	
10.5 m	kg	6200 ⁽¹⁾	6200 ⁽¹⁾					5500 ⁽¹⁾	5400	11.78	
9.0 m	kg	6200 ⁽¹⁾	6200 ⁽¹⁾	5800 ⁽¹⁾	5300			5200 ⁽¹⁾	4800	12.70	
7.5 m	kg	6200 ⁽¹⁾	6200 ⁽¹⁾	5800	5300			5100 ⁽¹⁾	4400	13.39	
6.0 m	kg	6400 ⁽¹⁾	6400 ⁽¹⁾	5900	5200	5400 ⁽¹⁾	4300	5000 ⁽¹⁾	4100	13.89	
4.5 m	kg	6600 ⁽¹⁾	6300	6000 ⁽¹⁾	5100	5400 ⁽¹⁾	4200	5000 ⁽¹⁾	3900	14.21	
3.0 m	kg	6900 ⁽¹⁾	6100 ⁽¹⁾	6100 ⁽¹⁾	5000	5400 ⁽¹⁾	4200	4900 ⁽¹⁾	3800	14.36	
1.5 m	kg	7100 ⁽¹⁾	5900	6100	4900	5300 ⁽¹⁾	4100	4700 ⁽¹⁾	3800	14.35	
0.0 m	kg	7100 ⁽¹⁾	5800	6100 ⁽¹⁾	4800	5100 ⁽¹⁾	4100	4400 ⁽¹⁾	3800	14.19	
-1.5 m	kg	6900 ⁽¹⁾	5600	5800 ⁽¹⁾	4700	4600 ⁽¹⁾	4000	4200 ⁽¹⁾	3900	13.86	
-3.0 m	kg	6500 ⁽¹⁾	5600	5200 ⁽¹⁾	4700			3800 ⁽¹⁾	3800 ⁽¹⁾	13.35	
-4.5 m	kg	5700 ⁽¹⁾	5600	4200 ⁽¹⁾	4200 ⁽¹⁾			3300 ⁽¹⁾	3300 ⁽¹⁾	12.65	
-6.0 m	kg	4200 ⁽¹⁾	4200 ⁽¹⁾								

⁽¹⁾ Capacity is limited by hydraulics rather than by a tipping load. The loads do not exceed 87 percent of hydraulic lifting capacity or 75 percent of tipping capacity. Weight of all lifting accessories must be subtracted from the lifting capacities.

Table 15

325B Material Handler English Units											
(H)		5.0 ft		10.0 ft		15.0 ft		20.0 ft		25.0 ft	
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)
45.0 ft	lb							18600 ⁽¹⁾	18600 ⁽¹⁾		
40.0 ft	lb									15200 ⁽¹⁾	15200 ⁽¹⁾
35.0 ft	lb									14100 ⁽¹⁾	14100 ⁽¹⁾
30.0 ft	lb									13900 ⁽¹⁾	13900 ⁽¹⁾
25.0 ft	lb									14300 ⁽¹⁾	14300 ⁽¹⁾
20.0 ft	lb									15000 ⁽¹⁾	15000 ⁽¹⁾
15.0 ft	lb							18500 ⁽¹⁾	18500 ⁽¹⁾	16200 ⁽¹⁾	16200 ⁽¹⁾
10.0 ft	lb					26700 ⁽¹⁾	26700 ⁽¹⁾	21100 ⁽¹⁾	21100 ⁽¹⁾	17600 ⁽¹⁾	17600 ⁽¹⁾
5.0 ft	lb					31700 ⁽¹⁾	31700 ⁽¹⁾	23500 ⁽¹⁾	23500 ⁽¹⁾	19000 ⁽¹⁾	17600
0.0 ft	lb					30400 ⁽¹⁾	30400 ⁽¹⁾	25000 ⁽¹⁾	23100	19700 ⁽¹⁾	17000
-5.0 ft	lb			9600 ⁽¹⁾	9600 ⁽¹⁾	24000 ⁽¹⁾	24000 ⁽¹⁾	25000 ⁽¹⁾	22400	19700 ⁽¹⁾	16500
-10.0 ft	lb	9100 ⁽¹⁾	9100 ⁽¹⁾	13700 ⁽¹⁾	13700 ⁽¹⁾	25600 ⁽¹⁾	25600 ⁽¹⁾	23800 ⁽¹⁾	22100	18800 ⁽¹⁾	16300
-15.0 ft	lb			18000 ⁽¹⁾	18000 ⁽¹⁾	26900 ⁽¹⁾	26900 ⁽¹⁾	20900 ⁽¹⁾	20900 ⁽¹⁾	16600 ⁽¹⁾	16200
-20.0 ft	lb					20100 ⁽¹⁾	20100 ⁽¹⁾	16200 ⁽¹⁾	16200 ⁽¹⁾	12800 ⁽¹⁾	12800 ⁽¹⁾
325B Material Handler English Units											
(H)		30.0 ft		35.0 ft		40.0 ft		Maximum Reach			
		(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	(F)	(S)	ft	
45.0 ft	lb							18300 ⁽¹⁾	18300 ⁽¹⁾	21.43	
40.0 ft	lb							14900 ⁽¹⁾	14900 ⁽¹⁾	28.68	
35.0 ft	lb	13600 ⁽¹⁾	13600 ⁽¹⁾					13400 ⁽¹⁾	12400	33.67	
30.0 ft	lb	13500 ⁽¹⁾	13500 ⁽¹⁾	12800 ⁽¹⁾	11800			12400 ⁽¹⁾	10500	37.32	
25.0 ft	lb	13400 ⁽¹⁾	13400 ⁽¹⁾	12600 ⁽¹⁾	11800	11900 ⁽¹⁾	9400	11900 ⁽¹⁾	9400	40.02	
20.0 ft	lb	13800 ⁽¹⁾	13800 ⁽¹⁾	12700 ⁽¹⁾	11700	11800 ⁽¹⁾	9500	11200	8700	41.94	
15.0 ft	lb	14400 ⁽¹⁾	14400 ⁽¹⁾	13100 ⁽¹⁾	11500	11800 ⁽¹⁾	9400	10700	8300	43.19	
10.0 ft	lb	15200 ⁽¹⁾	14100	13400 ⁽¹⁾	11300	11900	9200	10400	8000	43.84	
5.0 ft	lb	15900 ⁽¹⁾	13700	13700 ⁽¹⁾	11000	11700	9100	10100 ⁽¹⁾	7900	43.90	
0.0 ft	lb	16300 ⁽¹⁾	13300	13800 ⁽¹⁾	10700	11600	8900	9700 ⁽¹⁾	8000	43.39	
-5.0 ft	lb	16100 ⁽¹⁾	13000	13300 ⁽¹⁾	10600	10700 ⁽¹⁾	8900	9000 ⁽¹⁾	8300	42.27	
-10.0 ft	lb	15200 ⁽¹⁾	12800	12200 ⁽¹⁾	10500	8800 ⁽¹⁾	8800 ⁽¹⁾	8200 ⁽¹⁾	8200 ⁽¹⁾	40.50	
-15.0 ft	lb	13200 ⁽¹⁾	12800	9900 ⁽¹⁾	9900 ⁽¹⁾			7100 ⁽¹⁾	7100 ⁽¹⁾	37.98	
-20.0 ft	lb	9500 ⁽¹⁾	9500 ⁽¹⁾								

⁽¹⁾ Capacity is limited by hydraulics rather than by a tipping load. The loads do not exceed 87 percent of hydraulic lifting capacity or 75 percent of tipping capacity. Weight of all lifting accessories must be subtracted from the lifting capacities.

Identification Information

i01953475

Plate Locations and Film Locations

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

The Product Identification Number (PIN) will be used to identify a powered machine that is designed for an operator to ride.

Caterpillar products such as engines, transmissions and major attachments that are not designed for an operator to ride are identified by Serial Numbers.

For quick reference, record the identification numbers in the spaces that are provided below the illustration.

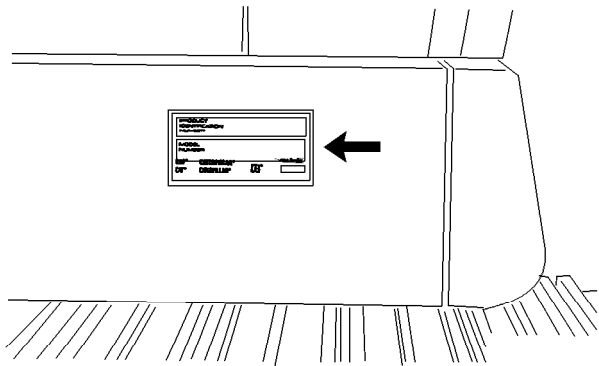


Illustration 51 g00100840

Machine PIN _____

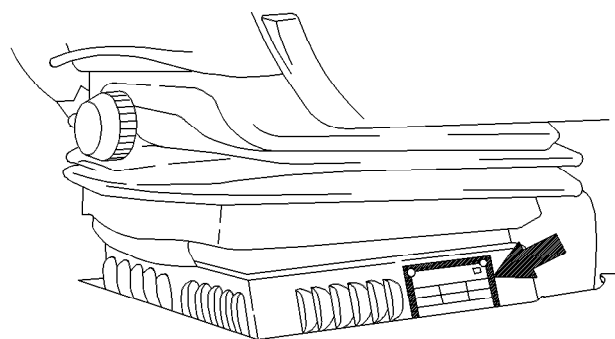


Illustration 52 g00100841

Service Information Number Plate (SIN)

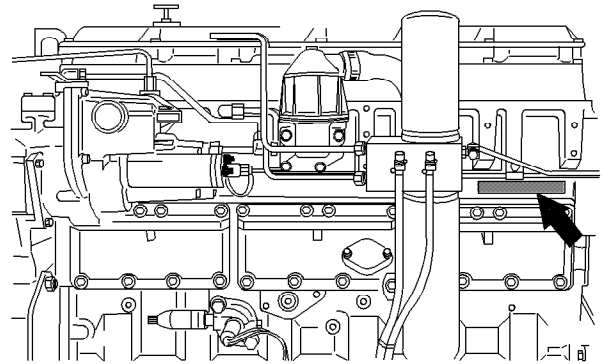


Illustration 53 g00100842

Engine Serial Number _____

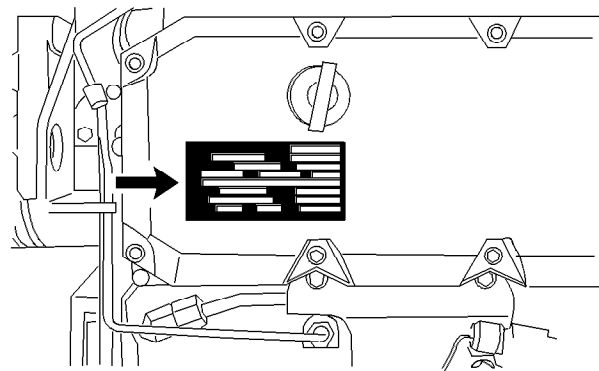


Illustration 54 g00100843

Engine Information Plate

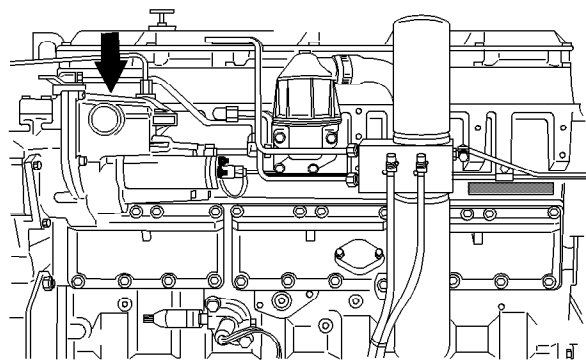


Illustration 55 g00100844

Governor Information Plate

Operation Section

Before Operation

i01963531

Daily Inspection

SMCS Code: 1000; 6319; 6700; 7000

WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

At operating temperature, the engine coolant is hot and under pressure.

Steam can cause personal injury.

Check the coolant level only after the engine has been stopped and the cooling system pressure cap is cool enough to touch with your bare hand.

Remove the cooling system pressure cap slowly to relieve pressure.

Cooling system conditioner contains alkali. Avoid contact with the skin and eyes to prevent personal injury.

NOTICE

Accumulated grease and oil on a machine is a fire hazard. Remove this debris with steam cleaning or high pressure water, at least every 1000 hours or each time any significant quantity of oil is spilled on a machine.

For maximum service life of the machine, perform a thorough daily inspection before you mount the machine and before you start the engine.

First 100 Hours

Daily, perform the procedures that are applicable to your machine:

- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Boom and Stick Linkage - Lubricate”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Boom, Stick and Bucket Linkage - Lubricate”
-

Severe Applications

Daily, perform the procedures that are applicable to your machine:

- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Boom and Stick Linkage - Lubricate”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Boom, Stick and Bucket Linkage - Lubricate”

Daily Basis

Daily, perform the procedures that are applicable to your machine:

- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Cooling System Level - Check”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Engine Oil Level - Check”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Fuel System Water Separator - Drain”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Fuel Tank Water and Sediment - Drain”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Indicators and Gauges - Test”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Seat Belt - Inspect”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Track Adjustment - inspect”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Travel Alarm - Test”
- Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Undercarriage - Check”

Refer to the Maintenance Section for the detailed procedures. Refer to the Maintenance Interval Schedule for a complete list of scheduled maintenance.

Note: Watch closely for leaks. If you observe a leak, find the source of the leak and correct the leak. If you suspect a leak or you observe a leak, check the fluid levels more frequently.

Operation Section
Mounting and Dismounting

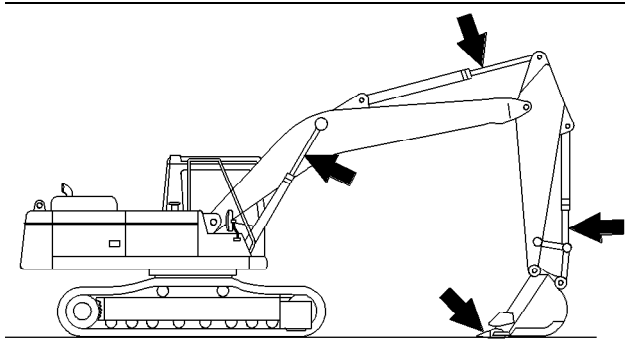


Illustration 56

g00101867

Inspect the attachment control linkage, attachment cylinders, and attachment for damage or excessive wear. Make any necessary repairs.

Inspect the lights for broken bulbs and for broken lenses. Replace any broken bulbs and any broken lenses.

Inspect the engine compartment for any trash buildup. Remove any trash buildup from the engine compartment.

Inspect the cooling system for any leaks, for faulty hoses and for any trash buildup. Correct any leaks. Remove any trash from the radiator.

Inspect all of the belts for the engine attachments. Replace any belts that are worn, frayed, or broken.

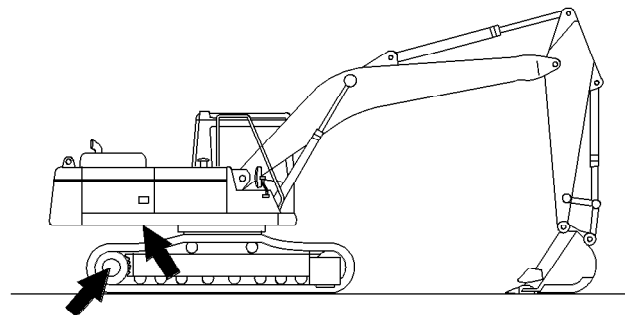


Illustration 57

g00101870

Inspect the hydraulic system for leaks. Inspect the tank, cylinder rod seals, hoses, tubes, plugs, connections, and fittings. Correct any leaks in the hydraulic system.

Inspect the differential and the final drives for leaks. Make any necessary repairs.

Inspect the swing drive for leaks.

Make sure that all covers and guards are securely attached. Inspect the covers and the guards for damage.

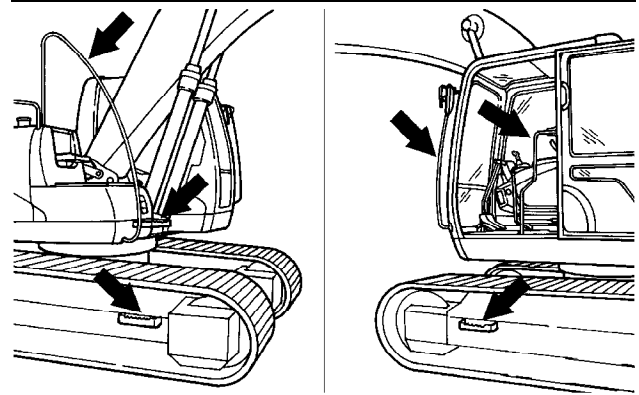


Illustration 58

g00688177

Inspect the steps, the walkways, and the handholds. Clean the steps, the walkways, and the handholds. Make any necessary repairs.

Inspect the operator compartment for trash buildup. Check for trash buildup under the floorplate and on the crankcase guard. Keep these areas clean.

Adjust the mirrors in order to achieve the best visibility.

i04027420

Mounting and Dismounting

SMCS Code: 6700; 7000

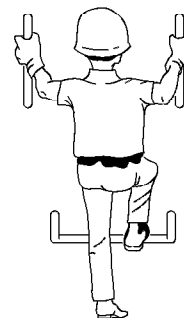


Illustration 59

g00037860

Use steps and handholds whenever you mount the machine. Use steps and handholds whenever you dismount the machine. Before you mount the machine, clean the step and the handholds. Inspect the step and handholds. Make all necessary repairs.

Face the machine whenever you mount the machine and whenever you dismount the machine. Maintain a three-point contact with the step and with handholds.

Note: Three-point contact can be two feet and one hand. Three-point contact can also be one foot and two hands.

Do not mount a moving machine. Do not dismount a moving machine. Never jump off the machine. Do not try to mount the machine when you carry tools or supplies. Do not try to dismount the machine when you are carrying tools or supplies. Use a hand line to pull equipment onto the platform. Do not use any controls as handholds when you enter the operator compartment or when you exit the operator compartment.

Machine Access System Specifications

The machine access system has been designed to meet the intent of the technical requirements in "ISO 2867 Earth-moving Machinery – Access Systems". The access system provides for operator access to the operator station and to conduct the maintenance procedures described in Maintenance section.

Machine Operation

i00529104

Alternate Exit

SMCS Code: 7310

Excavator and Material Handler

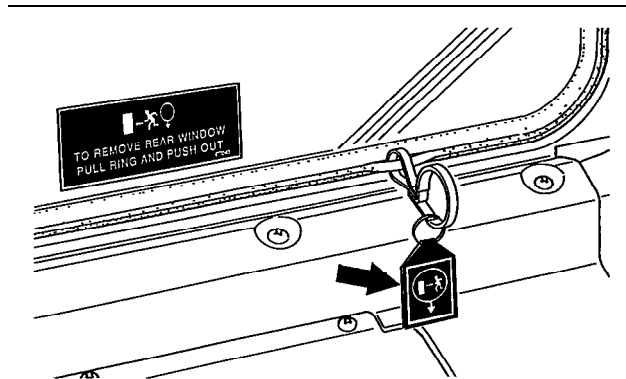


Illustration 60

g00101073

The rear window serves as an alternate exit.

To remove the rear window, pull the ring and push out the glass.

Remove the O-ring seal from the glass support seal. This will provide enough clearance so that the seal can hinge. Now, the glass can pass outward.

Forest Machine

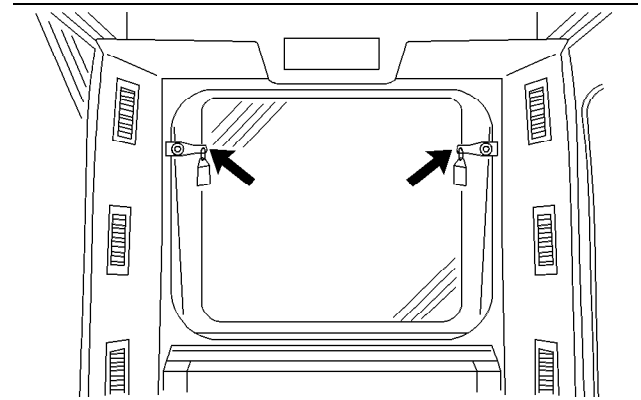


Illustration 61

g00107413

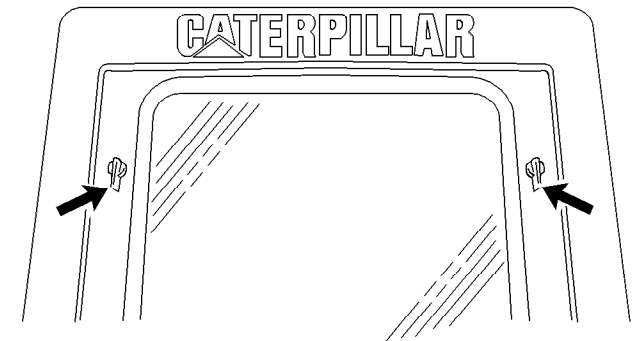


Illustration 62

g00107414

The rear window serves as an alternate exit.

Rotate the levers in order to open the rear window from the inside or from the outside. When the levers have passed by the retainer, push the window or pull the window in order to open the window.

i01953484

Seat

SMCS Code: 5258-025; 7312-025; 7324; 7327

Put the hydraulic lockout control in the LOCKED position. For further details on this procedure, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Hydraulic Lockout Control". Do this procedure before adjusting the seat and adjusting the console. This will prevent any possibility of unexpected movement of machine.

Adjust the seat at the beginning of each work period and adjust the seat when you change operators.

Always use the seat belt when you operate the machine. For further details on this procedure, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Seat Belt".

When the operator is seated on the seat, the seat should be adjusted so that full pedal travel is allowed.

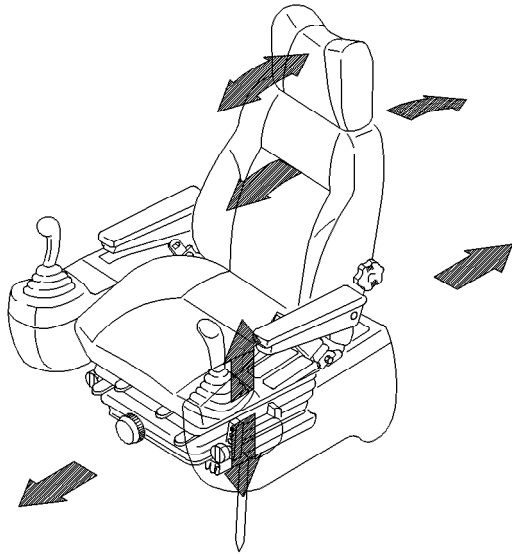


Illustration 63

g00101115

The operator can adjust the seat position forward or backward. The seat position can be adjusted up and down. The operator may also adjust the seat back tilt. Select the desired position in order to allow full pedal travel and full lever travel.

The right console and the left console can be adjusted vertically.

The seat and the consoles can also slide as one unit.

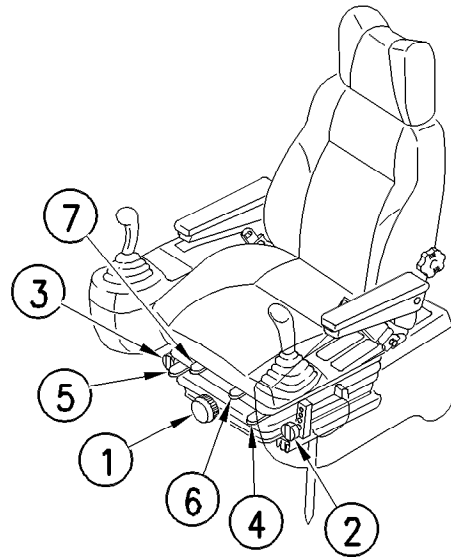


Illustration 64

g00101116

To adjust the seat suspension, turn operator weight adjustment knob (1) (if equipped) until the dial indicator shows the approximate weight of the operator. The adjustment knob has a range of 50 kg to 120 kg (110 lb to 265 lb). Turning the adjustment knob clockwise increases the reading. Turning the adjustment knob counterclockwise decreases the reading.

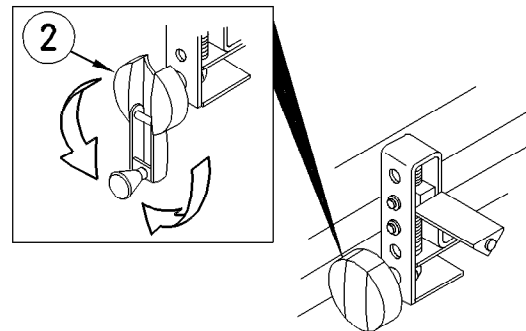


Illustration 65

g00101117

Turn knob (2) (if equipped) in order to tilt the left console to the desired height.

Turn knob (3) (if equipped) in order to tilt the right console to the desired height.

Use the adjustment lever (4) in order to adjust the height of the seat. Pull up lever (4) into the first position. The angle of the seat can now be changed. Only the rear of the seat will tilt. Hold the seat in the desired position. Release the lever. To adjust the height of the seat, pull up lever (4) through the first position and into the second position. The front of the seat and rear of the seat will raise simultaneously. The front of the seat and rear of the seat will lower simultaneously. Hold the seat in the desired position. Release the lever.

To adjust the seat back tilt to the desired position, turn knob (5).

To move the seat, the left console, and the right console forward or backward as one unit, pull up lever (6) and hold the lever. Hold the seat in the desired position. Release the lever in order to lock the seat, the left console, and the right console.

To adjust the seat forward or backward, pull up lever (7) and hold the lever. Move the seat to the desired position. To lock the seat in the selected position, release the lever.

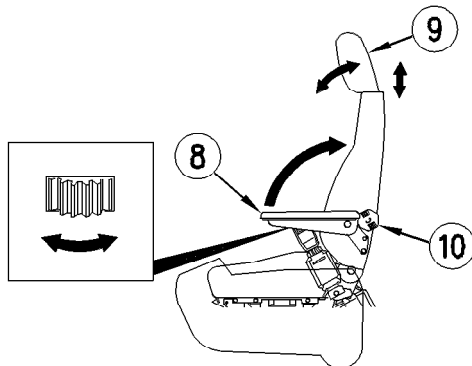


Illustration 66

g00101126

To adjust the angle of the armrest, operate dial (8). A dial is on the bottom of each armrest. Place the armrests in the upright position when you enter the machine or when you exit the machine.

The operator can adjust the height of headrest (9) (if equipped) and the angle of the headrest. To adjust the headrest, hold the headrest with both hands. Move the headrest forward or backward and move the headrest up and down. Release the headrest when the desired position is attained. The headrest will remain in the desired position.

The lumbar support is located in the back of the seat. Turn knob (10) (if equipped) counterclockwise in order to increase the force of the lumbar support. Turn the knob clockwise in order to decrease the force of the lumbar support.

i04200349

Seat Belt

SMCS Code: 7327

Note: This machine was equipped with a seat belt when the machine was shipped from Caterpillar. At the time of installation, the seat belt and the instructions for installation of the seat belt meet the SAE J386 and ISO 6683 standards. Consult your Cat dealer for all replacement parts.

Always check the condition of the seat belt and the condition of the mounting hardware before you operate the machine.

Seat Belt Adjustment for Non-Retractable Seat Belts

Adjust both ends of the seat belt. The seat belt should be snug but comfortable.

Lengthening the Seat Belt

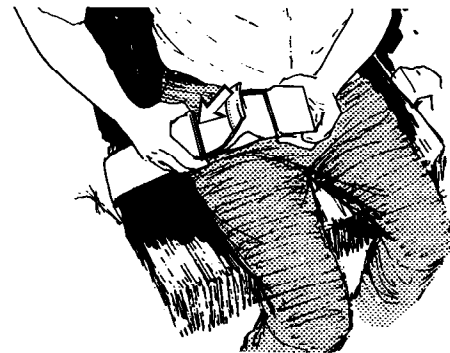


Illustration 67

g00100709

1. Unfasten the seat belt.

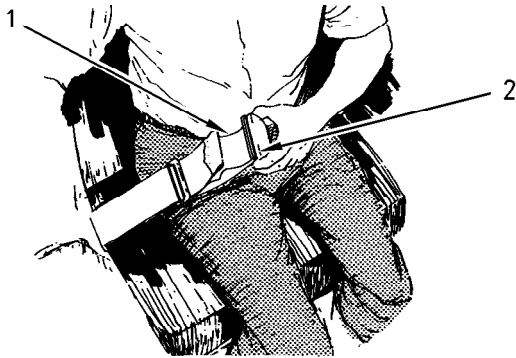


Illustration 68

g00932817

2. To remove the slack in outer loop (1), rotate buckle (2). This will free the lock bar. This permits the seat belt to move through the buckle.
3. Remove the slack from the outer belt loop by pulling on the buckle.
4. Loosen the other half of the seat belt in the same manner. If the seat belt does not fit snugly with the buckle in the center, readjust the seat belt.

Shortening the Seat Belt

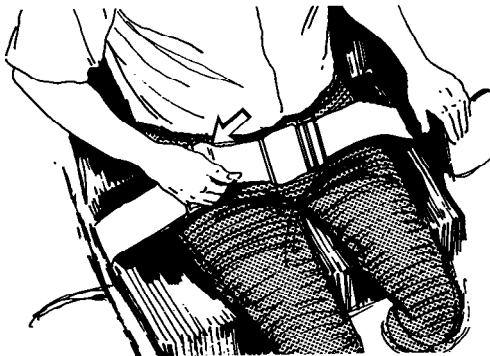


Illustration 69

g00100713

1. Fasten the seat belt. Pull out on the outer belt loop in order to tighten the seat belt.
2. Adjust the other half of the seat belt in the same manner.
3. If the seat belt does not fit snugly with the buckle in the center, readjust the seat belt.

Fastening The Seat Belt

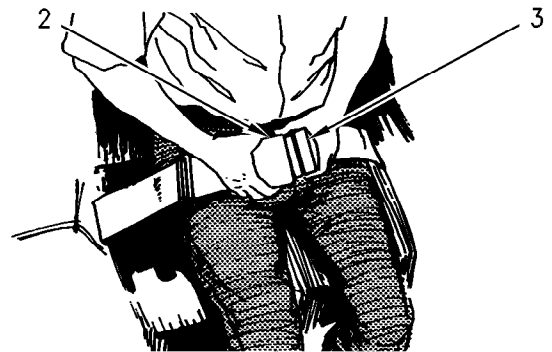


Illustration 70

g00932818

Fasten the seat belt catch (3) into the buckle (2). Make sure that the seat belt is placed low across the lap of the operator.

Releasing The Seat Belt

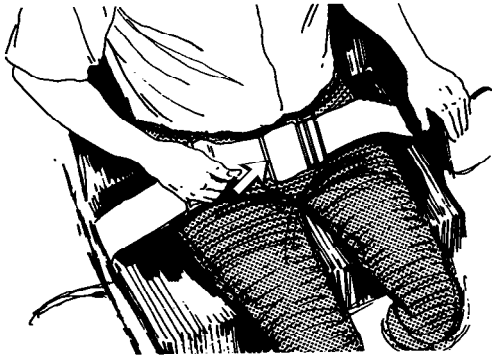


Illustration 71

g00100717

Pull up on the release lever. This will release the seat belt.

Seat Belt Adjustment for Retractable Seat Belts

Fastening The Seat Belt

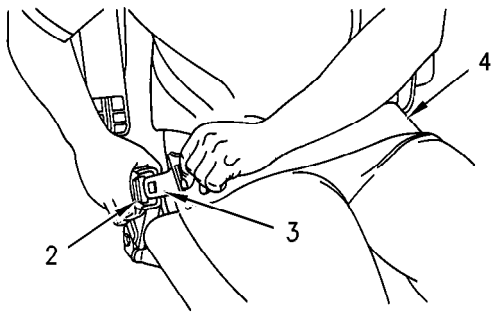


Illustration 72

g00867598

Pull seat belt (4) out of the retractor in a continuous motion.

Fasten seat belt catch (3) into buckle (2). Make sure that the seat belt is placed low across the lap of the operator.

The retractor will adjust the belt length and the retractor will lock in place. The comfort ride sleeve will allow the operator to have limited movement.

Releasing The Seat Belt

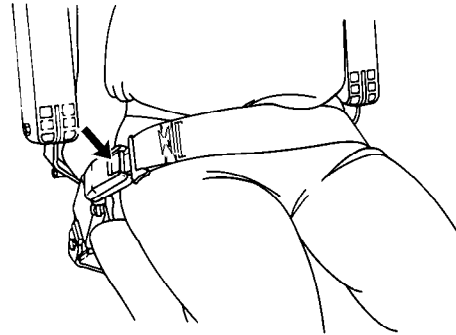


Illustration 73

g00039113

Push the release button on the buckle in order to release the seat belt. The seat belt will automatically retract into the retractor.

Extension of the Seat Belt

⚠ WARNING

When using retractable seat belts, do not use seat belt extensions, or personal injury or death can result.

The retractor system may or may not lock up depending on the length of the extension and the size of the person. If the retractor does not lock up, the seat belt will not retain the person.

Longer, non-retractable seat belts and extensions for the non-retractable seat belts are available.

Caterpillar requires only non-retractable seat belts to be used with a seat belt extension.

Consult your Cat dealer for longer seat belts and for information on extending the seat belts.

i01953488

Operator Controls

SMCS Code: 7300; 7301; 7451

The details of the power mode switch, of the work mode switch, of the Automatic Engine Speed Control switch, and of the travel speed control switch are not described in this section. See the appropriate topics in the Operation and Maintenance Manual for details about these components.

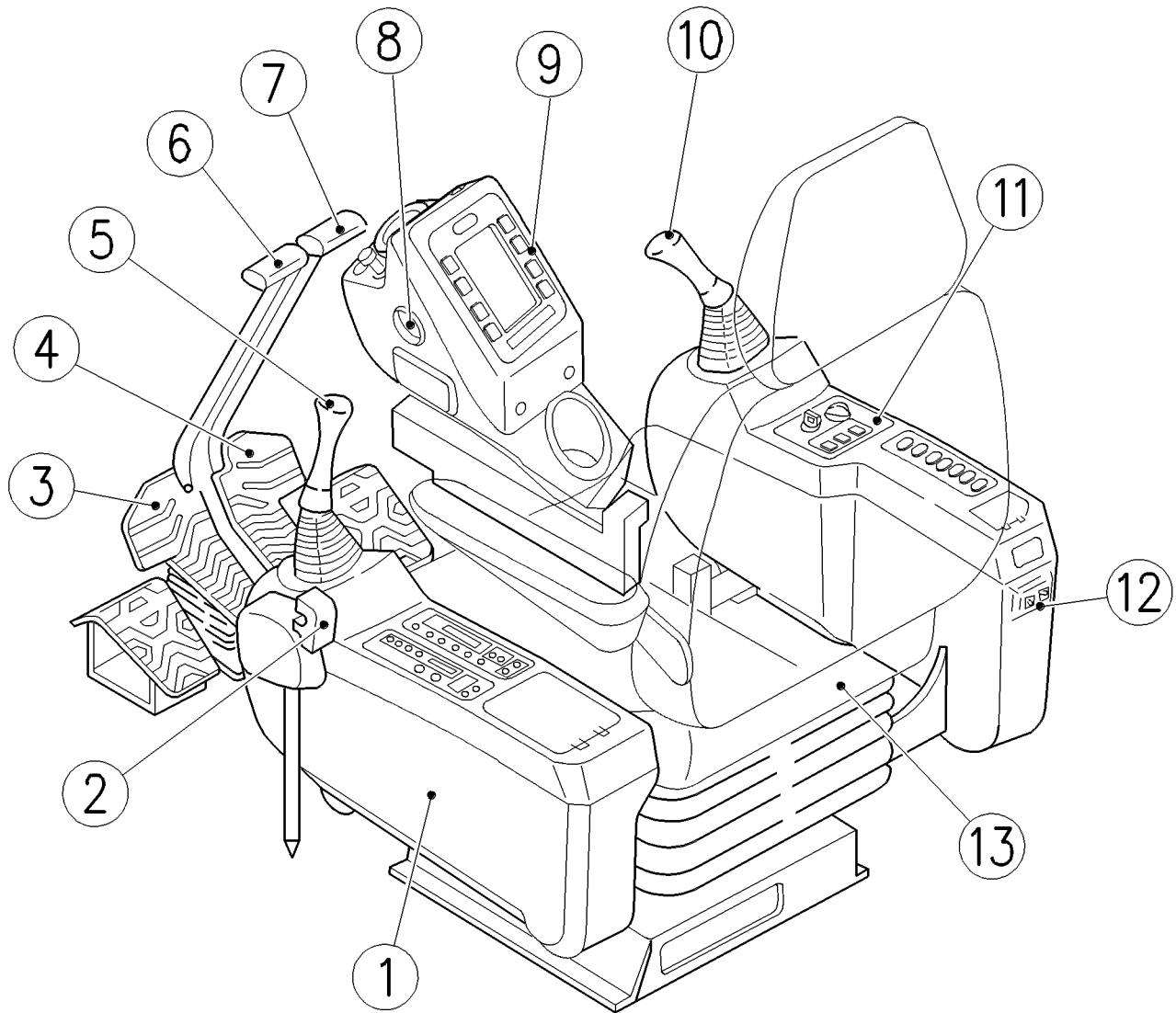


Illustration 74

g00103249

Typical example

- | | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|--|
| (1) Left Console | (6) Left Travel Lever | (11) Right Console |
| (2) Hydraulic Lockout Control | (7) Right Travel Lever | (12) Electronic Controller System Backup |
| (3) Left Travel Pedal | (8) Service Hour Meter | Switches |
| (4) Right Travel Pedal | (9) Electronic Monitor Panel | (13) Operator's Seat |
| (5) Left Implement Control Lever | (10) Right Implement Control Lever | |

i05039774

Battery Disconnect Switch

SMCS Code: 1411-B11

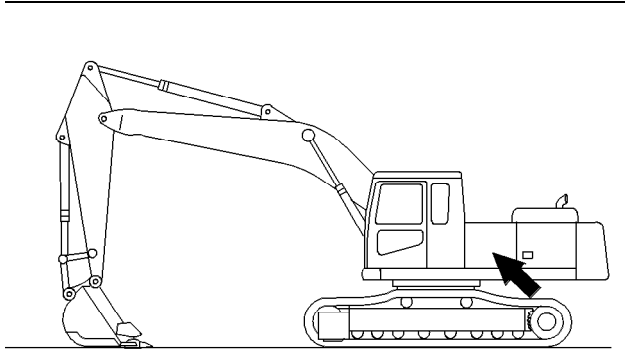


Illustration 75

g00100862

The battery disconnect switch is on the left side of the machine behind the front access door.

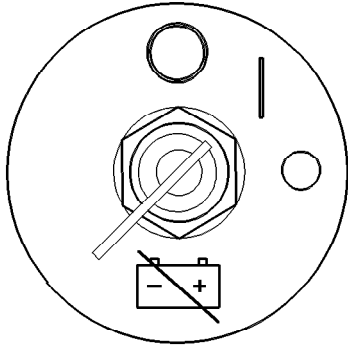


Illustration 76

g00406959

i02018393



ON – To activate the electrical system, insert the disconnect switch key and turn the battery disconnect switch clockwise. The battery disconnect switch must be turned to the ON position before you start the engine.



OFF – To deactivate the electrical system, turn the battery disconnect switch counterclockwise to the OFF position.

The battery disconnect switch operates differently than the engine start switch. When the battery disconnect switch is in the OFF position, the electrical system is disabled. When the engine start switch is turned to the OFF position and the battery disconnect switch is turned to the ON position, the battery remains connected to the entire electrical system.

Turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position and remove the disconnect switch key when you service the electrical system or other components on the machine.

Turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position and remove the disconnect switch key if you do not operate the machine for an extended period of a month or more. This will prevent drainage of the battery.

NOTICE

Never move the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position while the engine is operating. Serious damage to the electrical system could result.

To ensure that no damage to the engine occurs, verify that the engine is fully operational before cranking the engine. Do not crank an engine that is not fully operational.

Perform the following procedure in order to check the battery disconnect switch for proper operation:

1. With the battery disconnect switch in the ON position, verify that electrical components in the operator compartment are functioning. Verify that the hour meter is displaying information. Verify that the engine will crank.
2. Turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position.
3. Verify that the following items are not functioning: electrical components in the operator compartment, hour meter and engine cranking. If any of the items continue to function with the battery disconnect switch in the OFF position, consult your Cat dealer.

Monitoring System

SMCS Code: 7451; 7490

NOTICE

When the monitor provides a warning, immediately check the monitor and perform the required action or maintenance as indicated by the monitor.

The monitor indicator does not guarantee that the machine is in a good condition. Do not use the monitor panel as the only method of inspection. Maintenance and inspection of the machine must be performed on a regular basis. See the Maintenance Section of this Operation and Maintenance Manual.

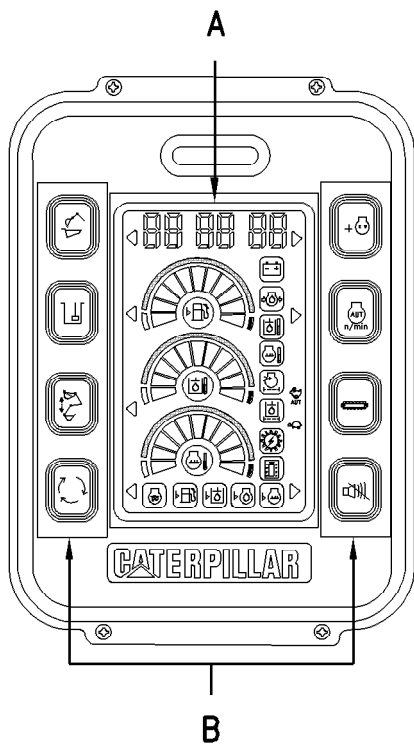


Illustration 77 g00101077
(A) Indicators and gauges
(B) Switches

The electronic monitor panel consists of indicators (A) and switches (B). Indicators and gauges (A) are used to display the status of various machine systems. Switches (B) are used to set the work mode, the power mode, the automatic engine speed control (AEC), the travel speed, and the travel alarm. Refer to the corresponding portion of this manual for more information on these topics.

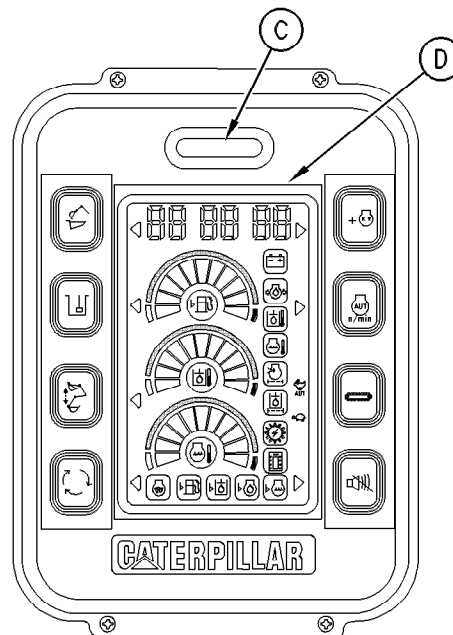


Illustration 78 g00101078
(C) Action light
(D) Monitor panel

The electronic monitor panel consists of an action alarm, action light (C), and monitor panel (D). The monitor panel has individual alert indicators for each machine system that is listed on the monitor panel.

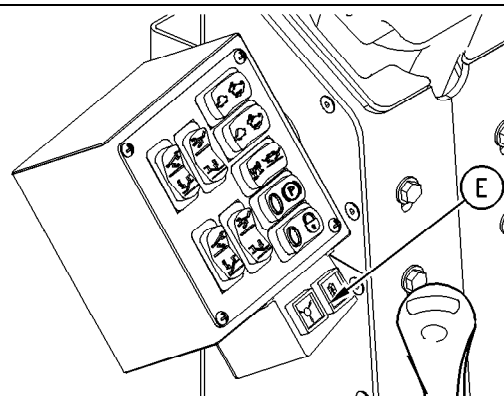


Illustration 79 g00751884

Two individual alert indicators are located at the bottom of the control panel on the left side of the steering column. Individual alert indicators (E) are in addition to the individual alert indicators on the electronic monitor panel.

The monitor panel is designed to alert the operator of an immediate problem or of an impending problem. The problem could be in more than one of the machine systems that are listed.

Prestart Monitoring Function

To activate the prestart monitoring function, the engine start switch must be in the ON position for at least two seconds before the engine is started. After this period of time, the monitoring system checks the fluid levels of the coolant, the engine oil, and the hydraulic oil. The fluid level indicator lights will come on if the corresponding fluid level is too low. These indicator lights will remain on until the engine start switch is turned off.

If the engine start switch is not maintained in the ON position for more than two seconds and the engine is started immediately, the system does not check the fluid levels. In this case, the fluid level indicator lights will flash for five seconds before turning off.

Note: The prestart monitoring function does not monitor the fluid levels after the engine is started. Therefore, the prestart monitoring function is not intended to detect leaks.

Note: The prestart monitoring function only works at the initial start-up or after waiting at least five minutes between engine stop and the engine restart. This is especially applicable to checking the engine oil level. While the engine is running, oil is pumped out of the crankcase and into the engine. After the engine is stopped, several minutes are required for the oil to drain out of the engine and back into the crankcase. If an engine is restarted before the oil drains back to the crankcase, the prestart monitoring function will mistakenly detect a low engine oil level. Therefore, wait at least five minutes before restarting the engine if a fluid level check is desired.

Note: The prestart monitoring function monitors the engine oil pressure continuously while the engine is running. Any warnings concerning the engine oil pressure should be taken seriously. Refer to “Warning Category 3” for more information on the warning for the engine oil pressure.

To ensure proper operation, check the system daily. The prestart monitoring function can be part of the starting procedure for the engine. For details on starting procedures for the engine, see Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Engine Starting”.

Warning Categories

The electronic monitor panel provides three warning categories. The first warning category requires only operator awareness. The second warning category requires an operator response. The third warning category requires immediate shutdown of the machine systems.

Warning Category 1

In this category, only the alert indicator comes on. This category alerts the operator that the machine system needs attention. Failure of these systems will not endanger the operator. Failure of these systems will not cause serious damage to the machine components.

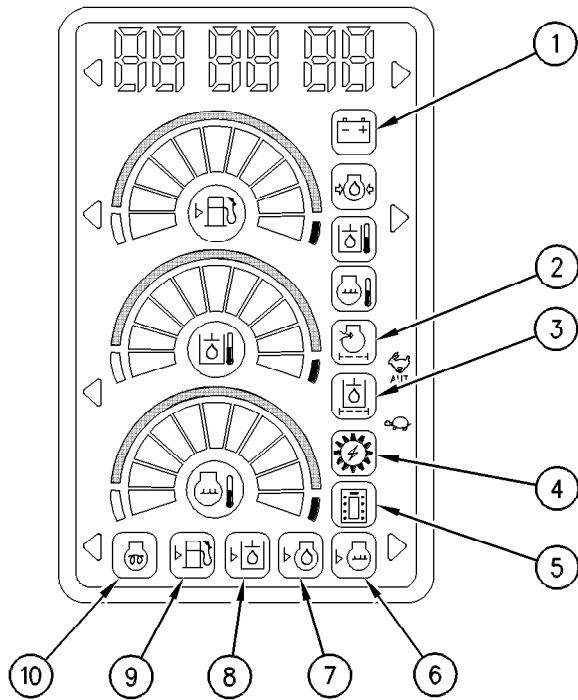


Illustration 80

g00101085

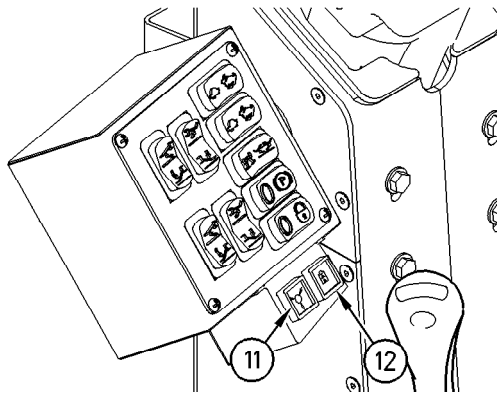






Illustration 81

g00751965

 **Alternator (1) – This alert indicator indicates that the electrical charging system is malfunctioning. The machine can be operated while the alternator indicator light is on. However, if the electrical accessories are used, the batteries will discharge rapidly. Perform any necessary repairs.**

 **Restricted Air Filter (2) – This indicator indicates that the air filter is restricted. If the air filter is restricted, then engine output will be decreased. Immediately inspect the air filter. Clean the air filter. Inspect the condition of the air filter. Replace the air filter, if necessary. Perform any necessary repairs. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Engine Air Filter Primary Element - Clean/Replace”.**


 **Restricted Hydraulic Return Filter (3) – This indicator indicates that the hydraulic return filter (capsule filter) is restricted. A restricted hydraulic return filter will cause hydraulic components to malfunction. Immediately replace the return filter cartridge. Examine the condition of the restricted hydraulic filter. Perform additional repairs, if necessary. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Hydraulic System Oil Filter (Return) - Replace”.**

 **Electronic Controller (4) – When an electronic problem occurs, this indicator light will be activated. The problem may not exist in the electronic controller.**

Stop the engine and restart the engine after a few minutes. If the indicator light does not come on, this indicates that a problem does not exist. If the indicator light comes on again, there is a problem in the electrical system. Consult your Caterpillar dealer for any necessary repairs.

Make necessary repairs as soon as possible. If you cannot make immediate repairs, you can operate the machine by placing the backup switch in the MANUAL position. When the backup switch is in the MANUAL position, the power to the electronic monitor panel will be switched off. The monitor panel will not function. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Backup Controls”.

The backup switch is only a temporary procedure. Perform any necessary repairs as soon as possible.

 **Monitor Panel (5) – If the indicator light comes on, a problem may exist in the monitor panel. The problem might also exist in the data communication lines. Consult your Caterpillar dealer for the necessary repairs.**

The machine can be operated, but the electronic monitor panel will not function. Perform any necessary repairs as soon as possible.

Note: If electronic controller (4) and monitor panel (5) come on at the same time, there is a malfunction. This malfunction is in the communication between the electronic controller and the monitor panel. In this case, consult your Caterpillar dealer for any necessary repairs.



Coolant Level (6) – If this indicator is activated, the coolant level is below the specified level. Add coolant. Refer to **Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Cooling System Coolant Level - Check”**.

Note: When the prestart monitoring function is activated, the coolant level is checked. Refer to “Prestart Monitoring Function” for further information on the prestart monitoring function.



Engine Oil Level (7) – If this indicator is activated, the engine oil level is below the specified level. Add engine oil. Refer to **Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Engine Oil Level - Check”**.

Note: When the prestart monitoring function is activated, the engine oil level is checked. Refer to “Prestart Monitoring Function” for further information on the prestart monitoring function.



Hydraulic Oil Level (8) – If this indicator is activated, the hydraulic oil level is below the specified level. Add hydraulic oil. Refer to **Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check”**.

Note: When the prestart monitoring function is activated, the hydraulic oil level is checked. Refer to “Prestart Monitoring Function” for further information on the prestart monitoring function.

Note: In order to check levels (6), (7) and (8), park on a level surface, and check the levels at least 30 minutes after the engine has been stopped.



Fuel Level (9) – If the fuel in the tank is below the specified level, this indicator will come on. Add fuel.



Air Inlet Heater (10) (If Equipped) – If the engine coolant temperature is too low, the air inlet heater will be activated. The indicator will come on when the engine starter is turned on. The engine can be started after the indicator goes off. Refer to **Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Air Inlet Heater Starting Aid”** for more information on the operation of the air inlet heater.



Low Transmission Pressure (11) – This alert indicator will come on when low transmission pressure is detected. The parking brake is applied automatically. Stop the machine immediately. Investigate the cause. Do not operate the machine until the cause has been corrected.



Transmission Problem (12) – This alert indicator will come on if the transmission filter is restricted. This alert indicator will come on if the command pressure for the transmission is low. This alert indicator will come on if the oil sump temperature of the transmission is high. Examine the condition of each component. Perform additional repairs, if necessary.

Warning Category 2

In this category, the alert indicator and the action light come on. This category requires a change in machine operation in order to reduce excessive temperature in one of the machine systems or more.

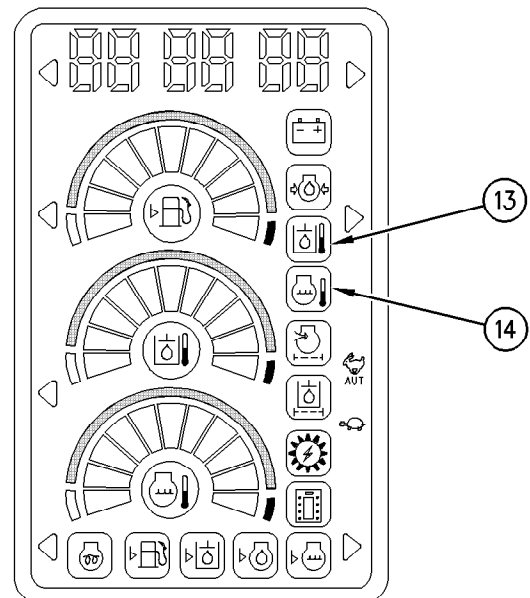


Illustration 82

g00751987



Hydraulic Oil Temperature (13) – This alert indicator indicates excessive hydraulic oil temperature. If this alert indicator comes on, reduce the operating speed of the machine. Keep the engine at low idle until the hydraulic oil temperature decreases to the correct level. If the indicator stays on after restarting machine operation, stop the engine. Check the hydraulic oil level. Perform any necessary repairs as soon as possible.



Coolant Temperature (14) – This alert indicator indicates excessive coolant temperature. If this alert indicator comes on, reduce the operating speed of the machine. Keep the engine at low idle until the engine is cooled down. If the indicator stays on after running the engine at low idle, stop the engine. Check the coolant level. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Cooling System Coolant Level - Check”. Check the fan drive belts for the water pump and fan blade. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Belts - Inspect/Adjust/Replace”. Make any necessary repairs.

Warning Category 3

In this category, the alert indicator and the action light will come on and the action alarm sounds. This category requires immediate shutdown of the machine in order to prevent injury to the operator and/or severe damage to the machine.

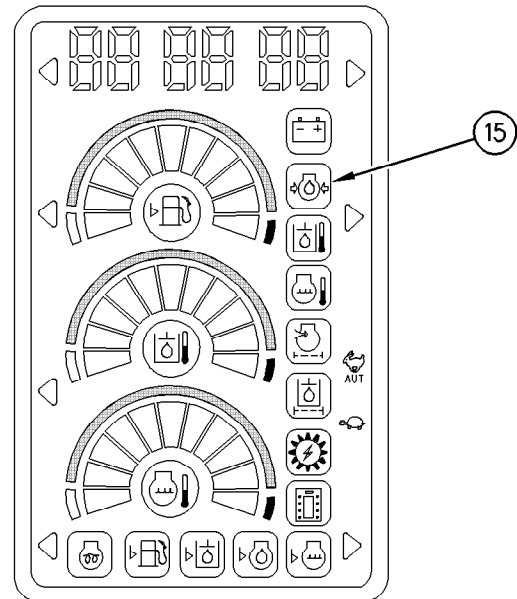


Illustration 83

g00751991



Engine Oil Pressure (15) – This alert indicator indicates low engine oil pressure. If this alert indicator comes on, stop the machine immediately. Stop the engine and investigate the cause of the problem. Do not operate the machine until the cause of the problem has been corrected.

i01496570

Gauges

SMCS Code: 7450; 7451; 7490

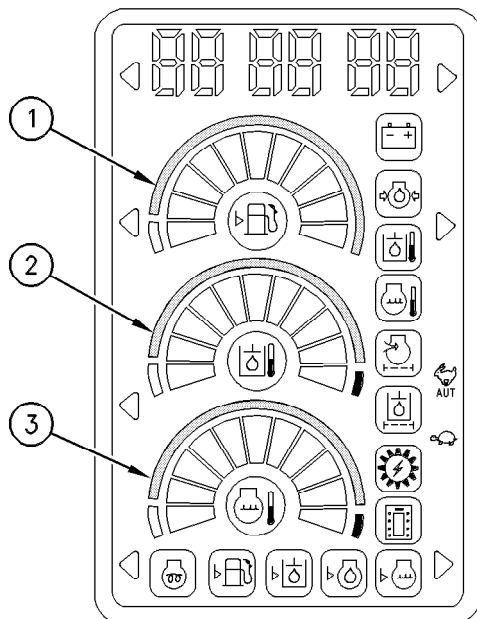


Illustration 84

g00304463

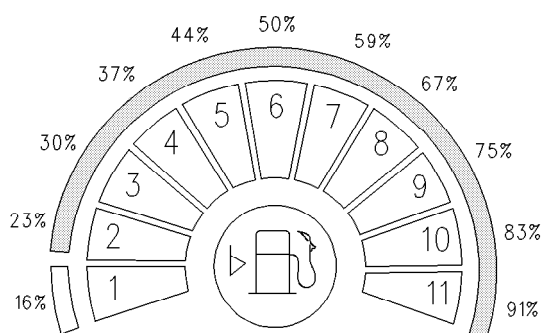



Illustration 85

g00304126

 **Fuel Level (1)** – This gauge indicates fuel tank levels. By using this gauge, an operator can determine the amount of fuel that is in the tank. Use illustration 85 as a reference in order to determine the amount of fuel that is in the fuel tank. Each section of the fuel gauge will illuminate or each section will turn off when the specified percentage that is shown

in illustration 85 is reached. Each section of the fuel gauge represents an approximate 8 percent change in the fuel level. When the fuel gauge indicates that the fuel level is in the white range, add fuel immediately.



Hydraulic Oil Temperature (2) – This gauge indicates the temperature of the hydraulic oil. The normal operating range is the green range. If the gauge reaches the red range, reduce the load on the system. If the gauge stays in the red range, stop the machine and investigate the cause of the problem.



Engine Coolant Temperature (3) – This gauge indicates the temperature of the engine coolant. The green range is the normal operating temperature. The red range indicates overheating.

i01432973

Clock Adjustment

SMCS Code: 7603

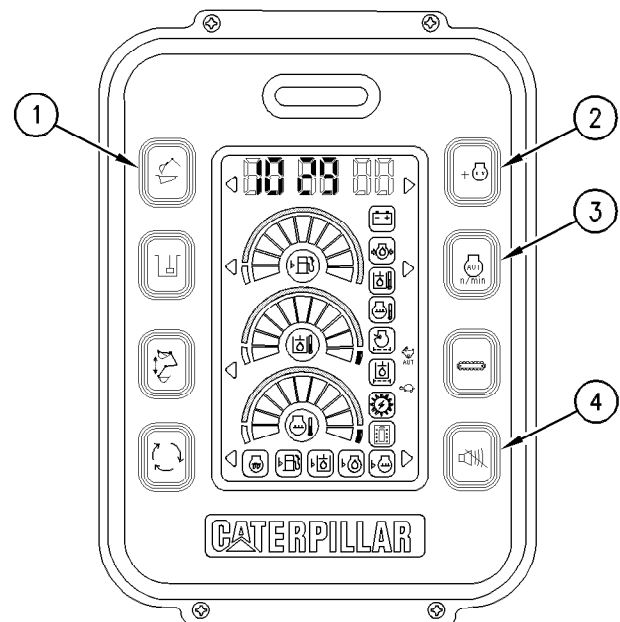


Illustration 86

g00304481

The display shows a time of "10:29".

Turn the disconnect switch to the OFF position or remove the batteries in order to reset the clock to "1:00". The following two methods can be used in order to adjust the clock.

- In order to change the setting for the hour, simultaneously press switch (1) for the boom priority mode and alarm cancel switch (4). In order to change the minutes, simultaneously press power mode switch (2) and alarm cancel switch (4). When you push the switches, the unit of time advances by one increment. Hold down the switches in order to continuously change settings.
- When you hold down alarm cancel switch (4), press AEC switch (3). This sets the clock to "00" minutes. If the time that is displayed is 30 minutes or less, the clock will display the preceding hour. If the time that is displayed is more than 30 minutes, the clock will display the succeeding hour.

i01162607

Magnet Controller and Monitor Panel

SMCS Code: 7490

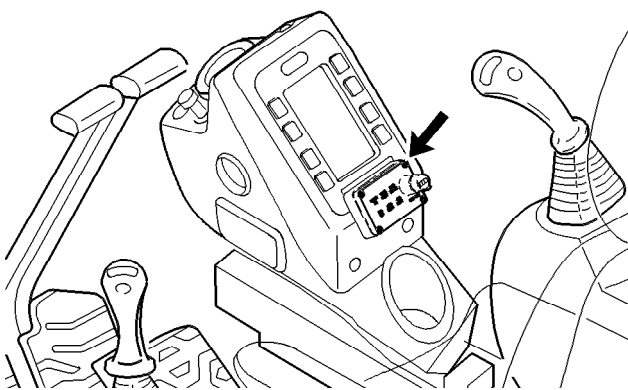


Illustration 87

g00274430

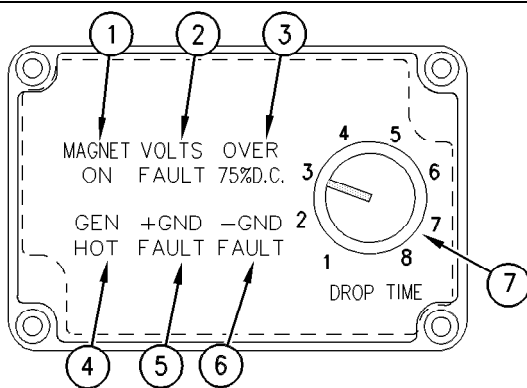


Illustration 88

g00620114

"MAGNET ON" (1) – If this indicator comes on, the magnet is energized.

"VOLTS FAULT" (2) – If this indicator comes on, the voltage is too high or the voltage is too low in order to properly operate the magnet. One or more of the following items could remedy the problem:

- Check the electrical connections.
- Inspect the generator field resistor.
- Check that the generator is operating at the correct speed (1750 RPM).
- Check the generator.

"OVER 75% D.C." (Duty Cycle) (3) – If this indicator comes on, the magnet is being operated more than 75 percent of the time.

"GEN HOT" (4) – If this indicator comes on, the generator is overheating. One or more of the following items could be the reason that the generator is overheating:

- The magnet is too large.
- There is a short or a ground in the system.
- The duty cycle is too high.
- The voltage is too high.
- There is insufficient airflow through the generator.
- The generator is faulty.

" + GND FAULT" (5) – If this indicator comes on, the resistance to ground in the positive line has dropped below 50,000 ohms.

" - GND FAULT" (6) – If this indicator comes on, the resistance to ground in the negative line has dropped below 50,000 ohms.

"DROP TIME" (7) – The drop time is controlled by a control dial and a range switch. The settings of both controls will vary depending on the size of the magnet. To achieve the best drop time for a given magnet, you should use the procedure below.

Use the following procedure to set the "DROP TIME"

1. Determine the size of magnet that is installed on the machine. Locate the settings for the magnet in Table 16 .
2. Set control dial (7) to the lower value that is given in Table 16 . Set the range switch to the position that is shown in Table 16 . The range switch is located on the lower right exterior of the "PLC" enclosure.

Table 16

Initial Settings			
Size of Magnet (kW)	Magnet Cold Rating (amperes)	Position of Control Dial	Position of Range Switch
0 to 7	0 to 30	1 TO 4	OFF
7 to 10	30 to 45	1 TO 6	OFF
11 to 15	45 to 70	1 TO 7	OFF
16 to 25	70 to 110	2 TO 8	OFF
		1 TO 6	ON
26 to 45	110 to 220	3 TO 8	ON

- Lift the load and drop the load at consecutively higher settings until a clean drop is achieved.
- Record the settings and the size of the magnet that is being used. When the same magnet is installed, set the control dial and the range switch to the recorded settings.

Note: The initial settings are only suggestions. The actual settings may vary depending on the manufacturer of the magnet. The type of magnet and the material type and consistency will affect the setting. The dial setting will usually be higher for larger magnets. The range switch should be in the OFF position for magnets that are rated at 110 amperes or less. The range switch should only be in the ON position when a clean drop cannot be achieved at any dial setting in the OFF position. The ON position should only be necessary with magnets that are rated 111 Amperes and up.

i00060040

Auxiliary Fuel Tank Switch

SMCS Code: 1273-AX; 1408-ZS

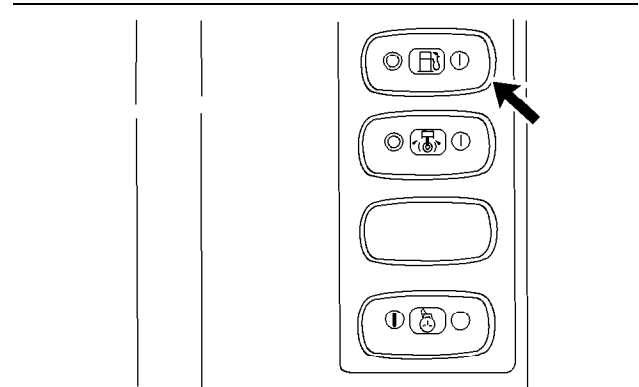


Illustration 89

g00102319

The switch for the auxiliary fuel tank is located on the right console.



Auxiliary Fuel Tank Switch – Push down the right side of the switch in order to use the auxiliary fuel tank. When the auxiliary fuel tank is used, the fuel gauge registers the amount of fuel in the tank.

Push down the left side of the switch in order to use the standard fuel tank. When the standard fuel tank is used, the fuel gauge registers the amount of fuel in the tank.

i00116845

i00062552

Service Hour Meter

SMCS Code: 7480

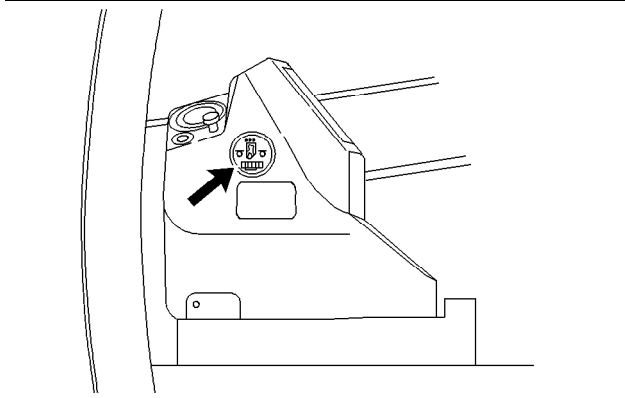


Illustration 90

g00107389



Service Hour Meter – This display indicates the total operating hours of the engine. Use the display to determine the service hour maintenance intervals.

Light Switches

SMCS Code: 1429-ZS

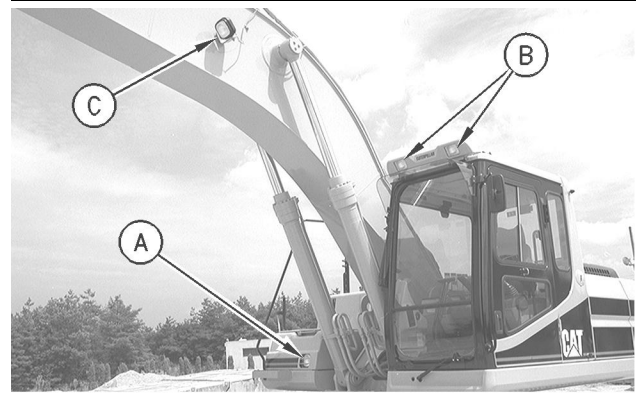


Illustration 91

g00100936

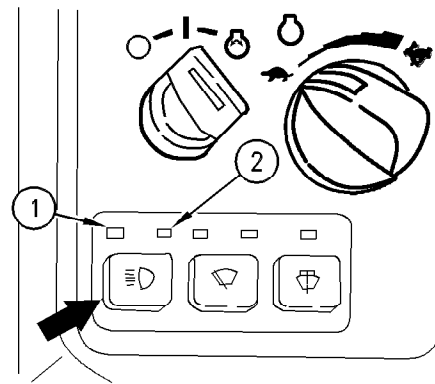


Illustration 92

g00103189



Light Switch – Push the switch in order to turn on the work lights.

Whenever you push the switch, you change the pattern of the work lights that are turned on. The indicator lights that are in the cab indicate the pattern of the work lights that are turned on. When indicator light (1) is on, the following work lights are turned on: work light (A) that is mounted on the chassis, work light (B) that is mounted on the cab and the lights for the monitoring panel.

When indicator light (1) and indicator light (2) are on, the following work lights are turned on: work light (A) that is mounted on the chassis, work light (B) that is mounted on the cab, work light (C) that is mounted on the boom and the lights for the monitoring panel. When both of the indicator lights are off, all of the work lights are off.

i00762969

Travel Alarm (If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 7429

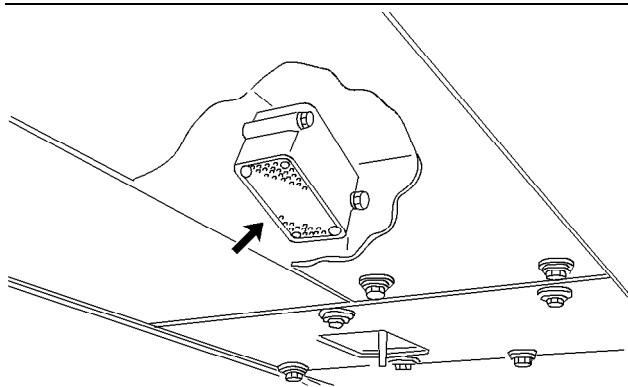


Illustration 93

g00102243

The travel alarm is located under the engine. The travel alarm will sound when the travel lever or the travel pedal is activated.

Travel Alarm Cancel Switch

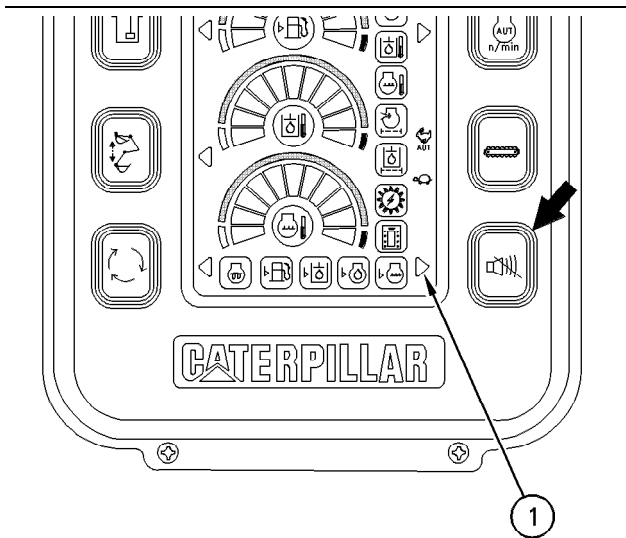


Illustration 94

g00100931

(1) Indicator lamp



Travel Alarm Cancel Switch – This switch is used to stop the travel alarm from sounding. Press the switch in order to stop the alarm. Indicator lamp (1) comes on.

i00659894

Storage Box

SMCS Code: 7268

Interior Storage Box

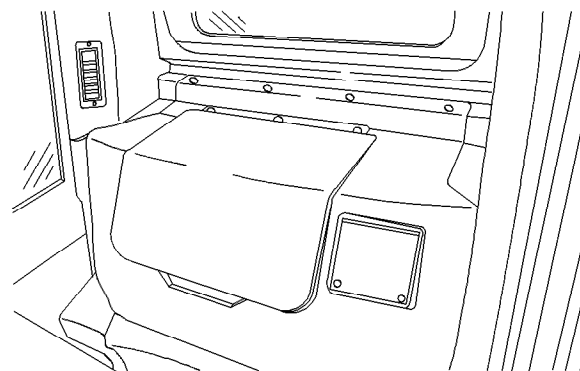


Illustration 95

g00107780

The storage box is used to store miscellaneous items such as a first aid kit or a lunch box.

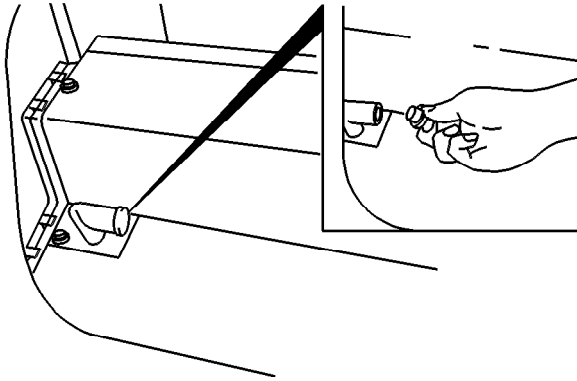


Illustration 96

g00107781

Note: There is a plugged hole inside the storage box. Install the plug that is supplied with the machine into the hole in order to block the air that is coming from the air conditioner or from the heater.

Exterior Storage Box



Illustration 97

g00104582



Pull – Pull the handle in order to open the storage box. The storage box is used to store the refueling pump. The storage box is also used to store miscellaneous tools.

i01953512

Air Conditioning and Heating Control

SMCS Code: 7304; 7320; 7337

The automatic temperature control unit adjusts the temperature inside the cab automatically.

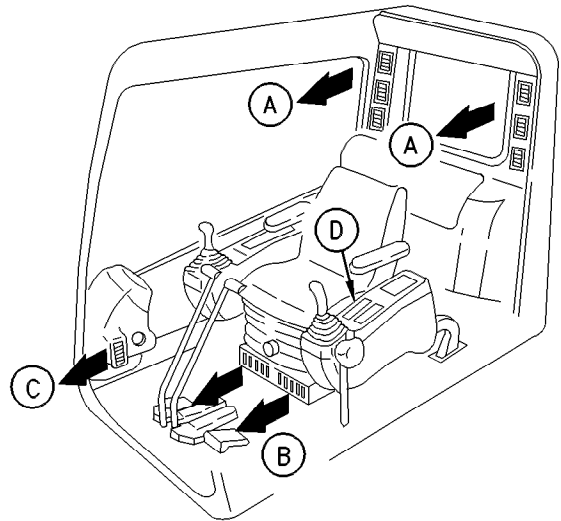


Illustration 98

g00101001

(A) Head louver. (B) Leg louver. (C) Defrost louver. (D) Control panel.

The automatic temperature control unit is located behind the operator seat.

Redirect louvers (A) and (C) by hand to the desired direction. Louver (B) cannot be redirected because these louvers are fixed in place.

The heating and air conditioning controls are on control panel (D). When the switches are pushed the operating mode will change.

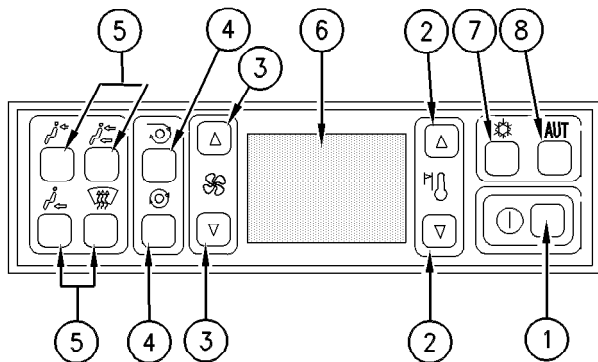


Illustration 99

g00274770

On/Off Switch (1) – If the heating and air conditioning system is off, pushing the switch will turn on the heating and air conditioning system. If the heating and air conditioning system is on, pushing the switch will turn off the heating and air conditioning system.

Note: If the heating and air conditioning system and the engine start switch key are in the OFF position, power will be supplied to the heater and air conditioner as the engine start switch key is turned to the ON position. The control panel will illuminate and a self-diagnostic procedure will be performed for approximately five seconds. The control panel will then show a blank display.

Temperature Switches (2) – These switches set the desired temperature inside the cab. The set temperature in the cab is shown in display (6). If the heating and air conditioning system is in the “AUT” mode, pushing these switches changes the temperature setpoint. The selectable range is from 15.5°C to 32°C (60°F to 90°F).

Blower Fan Switches (3) – These switches directly control the blower fan speed if only the fan is operating. If the heating and air conditioning system is in the “AUT” mode, pushing this switch overrides the automatically selected fan speed.

Note: If the fan speed is overridden, the “AUT” switch must be pushed twice in order to make the fan speed automatic again.

Note: If the heating and air conditioning system is set for operation of the fan only, pressing the temperature switch returns the heating and air conditioning system to the “AUT” mode and the set temperature will change.

Switches (4) for Air Inlet – These switches select the position for the fresh air inlet.



CLOSED – When this position is selected, the fresh air inlet is closed. The air will recirculate inside the cab.



OPEN – When this position is selected, the fresh air inlet is open. Fresh air will be drawn into the cab.

Note: If the heating and air conditioning system is in the “AUT” mode at engine start-up and the temperature inside the cab is too warm or too cool, the door for fresh air ventilation may automatically close for a few minutes. This will help to bring the air temperature to the setpoint more quickly.

Switches (5) for Air Outlets – This switch selects the position of each air outlet. Each switch controls a different air outlet.



Louver (A) – Selecting this switch will open the air outlet for louver (A).



Louver (B) – Selecting this switch will open the air outlet for louver (B).



Louvers (A) and (B) – Selecting this switch will open the air outlet for louver (A) and the air outlet for louver (B).



Louvers (A) and (C) – Selecting this switch will open the air outlet for louver (C). This switch will also provide partial airflow for louver (A).

Display (6) for Temperature Setpoint – This display shows the set temperature.

When the heating and air conditioning system is on, pushing temperature switches (2) and On/Off switch (1) simultaneously will change the display from °C to °F, or vice versa.



Air Conditioning Switch (7) – If the heating and air conditioning system is in the “AUT” mode, pushing this switch causes the compressor to run continuously. The compressor may be operated intermittently during heater operation in order to remove excess humidity from the cab. If the heating and air conditioning system is set for operation of the fan only, this switch has no function.

i01962160



Automatic Switch (8) – If the heating and air conditioning system is set for operation of the fan only, pressing this switch causes the heating and air conditioning system to automatically adjust the temperature and the blower fan speed. If the heating and air conditioning system is in the “AUT” mode, pushing this switch sets the heating and air conditioning system for operation of the fan only.

Note: This switch can activate the compressor, but this switch cannot turn off the compressor.



Illustration 100

g00102108

To fully take advantage of the automatic function of the heating and air conditioning system, always keep the sunlight sensor clean. Do not put objects that will affect the sensor function near the sunlight sensor.

In cool weather, operate the compressor weekly in order to prevent leakage of the refrigerant gas. This will also help to maintain the compressor in optimum working order.

Consult your Caterpillar dealer for periodic maintenance of the heating and air conditioning system.

Air Conditioning and Heating Control (If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 7304; 7320; 7337

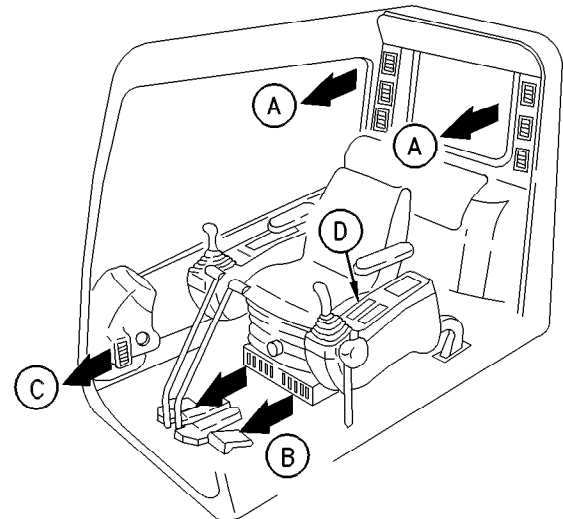


Illustration 101

g00101001

- (A) Vent for upper body
- (B) Floor vent
- (C) Defroster vent
- (D) Control panel

Note: For the most efficient operation of the system, use the “AUT” mode and do not close any of the louvers completely.

Automatic Climate Control

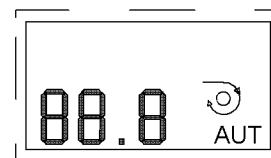


Illustration 102

g01011401

Full “AUT” Display

Operation Section If Equipped

Press the “AUT” button. The “AUT” symbol, the temperature setpoint and the symbol for recirculation appear in display (1). The operator may select either the open position or the closed position for the fresh air control. The system is in the full automatic mode only when these three items are shown on the display. If there is more than the three symbols shown on the display, the system is in the “AUT” override mode or in the manual control mode. Full automatic mode controls the output air temperature, fan speed, and the air outlets. The ambient temperature determines the air outlets that are used.

If the “AUT” is not showing in display (1), the system is in the full manual control mode.

Note: If the cab temperature is below the selected temperature setpoint, the fan speed will not ramp to full speed until the temperature of the air outlet reaches a preset temperature.

Control Panel

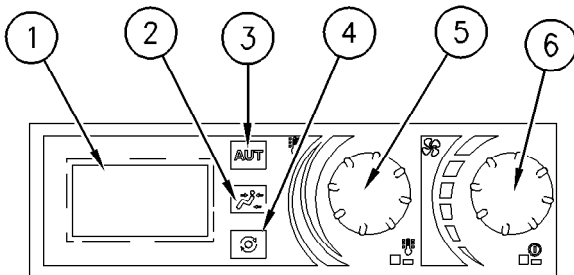


Illustration 103

g00997486

- (1) Display
- (2) Air Outlet Selection Switch
- (3) Automatic Temperature Control Switch
- (4) Fresh Air Control
- (5) Temperature Control Knob
- (6) Power On/Off and Fan Speed Knob



Power ON/OFF (6) – Push the fan speed knob to power on the system or push the fan speed knob to power off the system.

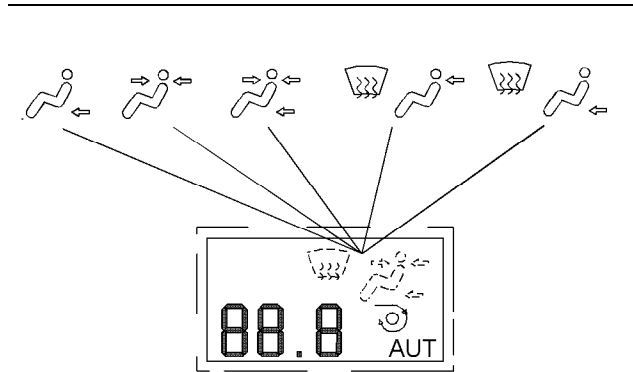


Illustration 104

g01011397

Manual Override of the Automatic Selection of the Air Outlets



Air Outlet Selection Switch (2) – Press the air outlet selection switch in order to cycle through the different positions.

The symbol in the display will show the selected position. The air outlets are selected automatically when the graphics for the air outlets are not shown in display (1).



Automatic Temperature Control Switch (3) – Press the “AUT” button for fully automatic operation of the climate control system. Full automatic mode may be enabled at any time. For more information on the operation of the automatic temperature control, refer to “Control Panel”.



Fresh Air Control CLOSED position – Push fresh air switch (4) in order to change the position of the door of the fresh air inlet. The symbol in the display will show the selected position. When this position is selected, the fresh air inlet is closed. The air will recirculate inside the cab.



OPEN Position – When this position is selected, the door to the fresh air inlet is open. Fresh air will be drawn into the cab.

Note: The door for fresh air may close for a few minutes when the machine is started and the system is in automatic mode. This will help to bring the air temperature to the setpoint more quickly.



Temperature Control Knob (5) – If the climate control system is in the automatic mode, rotate the temperature control knob in order to change the temperature setpoint. The desired cab temperature appears on display (1).

Note: The automatic climate control system may take about 3 minutes in order to respond to large temperature changes. Wait at least 3 minutes between temperature changes.

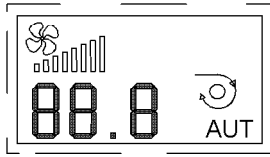



Illustration 105

g01011402

 **Fan Control Knob (6) – The fan speed is automatically controlled in the automatic mode. Rotate the fan control knob in order to override the automatically selected fan speed. The symbol for the fan with the bar graph for speed control will be added to display (1).**

Maximum Heating and Cooling Mode

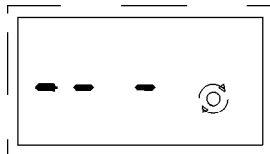


Illustration 106

g00788476

Display for Maximum Heating

Press “AUT” button (3). Rotate temperature control knob (5) clockwise until the setting for maximum heat is shown on the display as illustration 106. Rotate the temperature control knob (5) counterclockwise in order to cancel maximum heating.

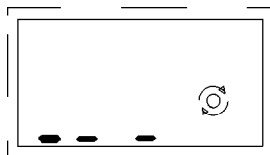


Illustration 107

g00788477

Display for Maximum Cooling

Press “AUT” button (3). Rotate the temperature control knob (5) counterclockwise until the setting for maximum cooling is shown on the display as illustration 107. Rotate the temperature control knob (5) clockwise in order to cancel maximum cooling.

Both maximum functions are automatic modes.

Rotate the temperature control knob (5) to the desired cab temperature. The climate control system must be in the full “AUT” mode in order to maintain the temperature. If the display does not match illustration 102, the air conditioning system may not activate for cooling.

Manual Operation

The operator has full control of the system and can set the fan speed (6), air outlet (2), and the amount of heat (5).

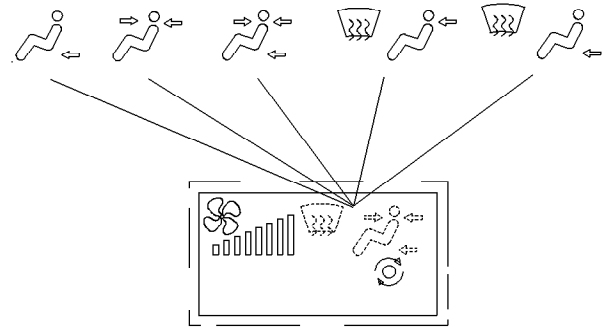


Illustration 108

g00997527

Manual Override of Automatic Temperature Control for Heat

Push temperature control knob (5) in order to control the temperature manually. The temperature setpoint and “AUT” is cleared in display (1). The symbol of the fan with the bar graph for speed and the air outlet will be shown on display (1). Rotate the temperature control knob (5) clockwise in order to increase the temperature. The temperature range is between one and fifteen. **The air conditioner will not run in this mode except when either of the defrost modes are selected.**

Defrost or Dehumidify Operation

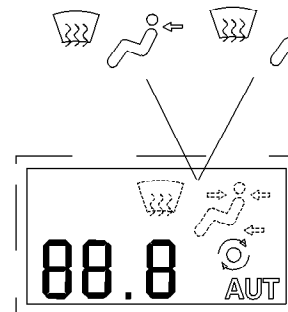


Illustration 109

g00997497

Defrost or Dehumidify Operation

Operation Section Window (Front)

Push the air outlet selection switch (2) until one of the symbols in illustration 109 is shown in display (1). The air is dehumidified while the compressor is operating. Operating the compressor will also defog the windows. The compressor will operate in automatic "AUT" mode or in the manual mode when the symbols for the defrost in illustration 109 are displayed. The compressor is protected from operation when the ambient air temperature sensor is below 4 °C (39 °F).

English Versus Metric Toggle

Turn the system to the ON position. Multiple keys must be pressed simultaneously. Press and hold the automatic temperature control switch (3). At the same time press and hold the temperature control knob (5). This will toggle the display between Degrees Celsius and Degrees Fahrenheit.

i01954635

Window (Front)

SMCS Code: 7310-FR

To provide full ventilation inside the cab, the upper windshield and the lower windshield can be fully opened.

WARNING

When opening or closing the windshields, be extra careful to prevent any personal injury. Also, the hydraulic activation control lever must be in the LOCKED position to prevent any possibility of sudden movement of machine due to inadvertent contact with the hydraulic control(s).

Do not change the position of the windshield until the following items have been done:

- Park the machine on a level surface.
- Lower the implement to the ground.
- Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.
- Stop the engine.

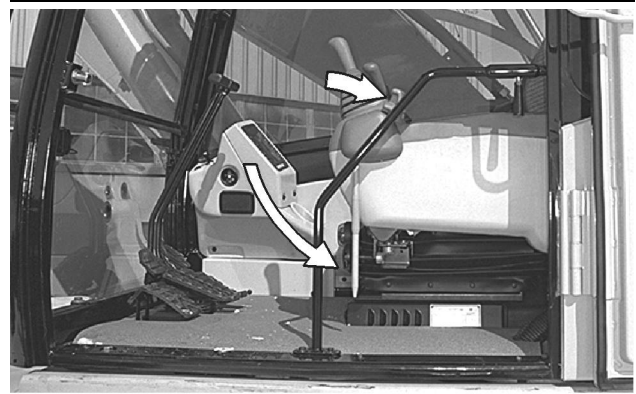


Illustration 110

g00103209

The hydraulic lockout control is shown in the LOCKED position. For further details on this procedure, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Hydraulic Lockout Control".

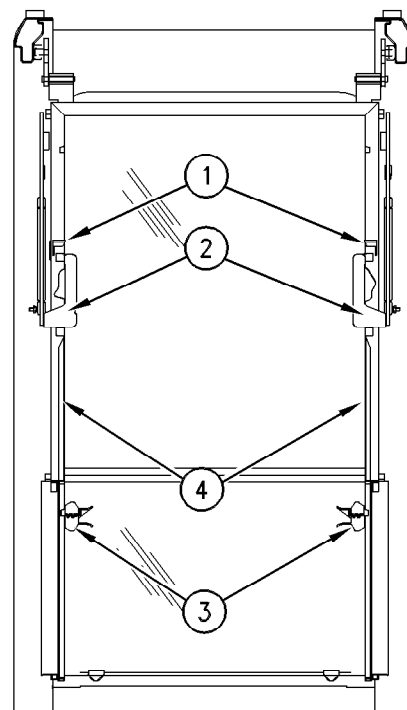


Illustration 111

g00100974

This is a typical example of a front windshield.

Upper Windshield

Perform the following procedure in order to open the upper windshield and close the upper windshield.

1. Hold both grips (2), and push both latches (1) in order to release the upper windshield. Lift the windshield upward until the windshield is securely latched in the overhead storage position.
2. Release latches (1) in order to lower the windshield from the overhead storage position.

Lower Windshield

Perform the following procedure in order to open the lower windshield and close the lower windshield. The upper windshield is already open:

1. Squeeze latches (3) in order to release the lower windshield.
2. Raise the lower windshield out of the window frame.
3. Store the lower windshield in brackets (4) that are provided. The brackets are built into the upper window.
4. To close the lower windshield, reverse the procedure that is used for opening the lower windshield.

Note: The lower windshield will only fit in the brackets by one way.

Note: The upper windshield cannot be raised or lowered with the lower windshield in the storage brackets.

Perform the following procedure in order to open the lower windshield and close the lower windshield. The upper windshield is closed:

1. Squeeze latches (3) in order to release the lower windshield.
2. Raise the lower windshield out of the window frame. The lower windshield will slide directly into the upper windshield.
3. To close the lower windshield, reverse the procedure that is used for opening the lower windshield.

Note: The upper windshield cannot be raised or lowered with the lower windshield in the storage brackets.

i01137810

Window Wiper and Washer Control

SMCS Code: 7305; 7306

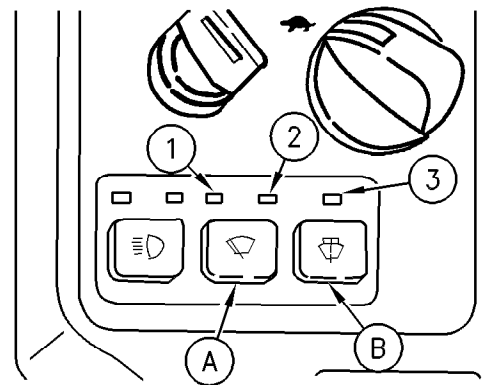


Illustration 112

g00100945



Window Wiper (A) – Push the switch in order to activate the window wiper. Whenever the switch is depressed, the mode of the window wiper will change according to the indicator light that is illuminated.

When indicator light (1) is on, the window wiper operates intermittently at every five second intervals. When indicator light (2) is on, the window wiper operates continuously.

NOTICE

If the wiper does not operate with the switch in the ON position, turn the switch off immediately. Check the cause. If the switch remains on, motor failure can result.



Window Washer (B) – Push the switch in order to activate the window washer. While the switch is depressed, indicator light (3) will come on and washer fluid will spray from the nozzle. The window wiper will also operate while the switch is depressed. After the switch is released for approximately three seconds, the window wiper will stop .

NOTICE

If the washer is used continuously for more than 20 seconds or used when no washer solution comes out, motor failure can result.

i01447292

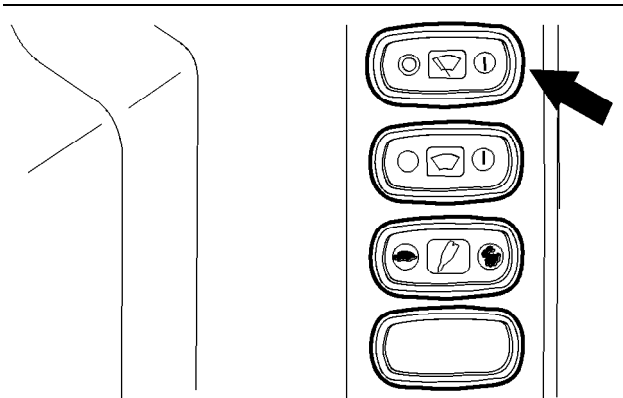



Illustration 113

g00100949

 **Lower Window Wiper (If Equipped) –**
Push down the right half of the switch in order to turn on the lower window wiper. Push down the left half of the switch in order to turn off the lower window wiper.

NOTICE

If the wiper does not operate with the switch in the ON position, turn the switch off immediately. Check the cause. If the switch remains on, motor failure can result.

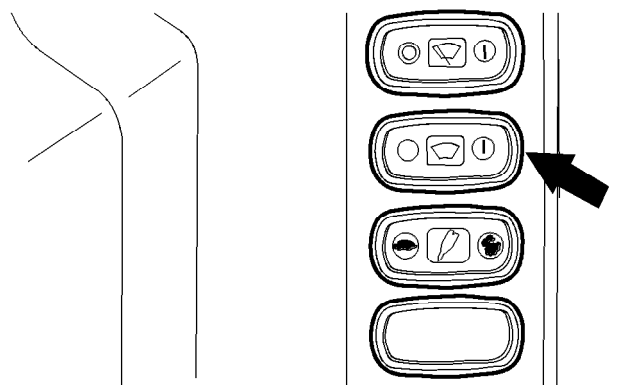



Illustration 114

g00100952

 **Lower Window Washer (If Equipped) –**
Push down the right half of the switch and keep the switch depressed in order to activate the lower window washer. While the switch is depressed, the washer fluid will spray from the nozzle. The window wiper will also function. When you release the switch, the window washer will stop. The window wiper will continue to function.

NOTICE

If the washer is used continuously for more than 20 seconds or used when no washer solution comes out, motor failure can result.

Travel Control (Straight Travel Pedal (If Equipped))

SMCS Code: 5462

WARNING

With certain attachment combinations, the third pedal can have different functions. Always check for third pedal function before using the third pedal. Improper operation of the third pedal could result in serious injury or death.

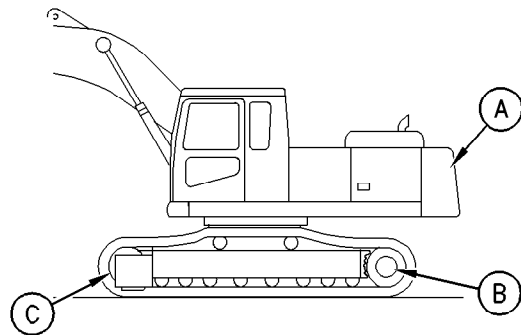


Illustration 115

g00753277

Position for normal travel

- (A) Rear of machine
- (B) Final drive
- (C) Idler

When you travel, make sure that final drive sprockets (B) are under the rear of the machine.

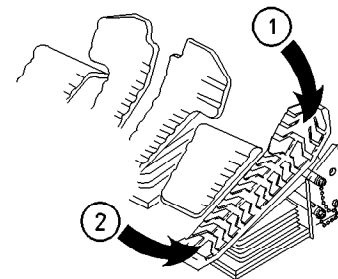


Illustration 116

g00757775

- (1) Forward Travel
- (2) Reverse Travel

The third pedal is to the right of the right travel pedal. The third pedal controls the forward and backward movement of the machine.

Note: If the third pedal is depressed and a travel pedal or a travel lever is operated, the machine will turn accordingly.

i02171505

Travel Control

SMCS Code: 5462

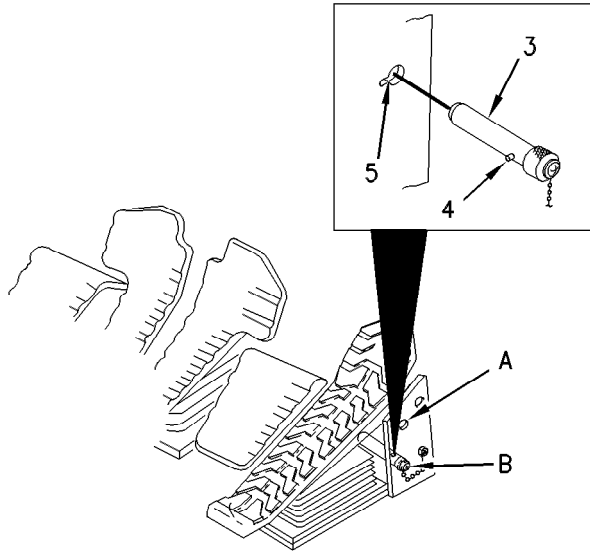


Illustration 117

g00555934

- (3) Lock pin
- (4) Pin
- (5) Notch
- (A) LOCKED position
- (B) UNLOCKED position (STORAGE position)

When the machine is not operated with the third pedal, install lock pin (3) at the LOCKED position in order to prevent accidental operation.

Note: To prevent lock pin (3) from being pulled out, insert pin (4) through notch (5) and turn lock pin (3) counterclockwise by 1/4 turn.

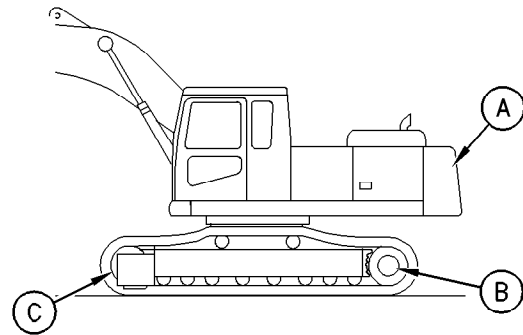


Illustration 118

g00753277

Position for normal travel

- (A) Rear of machine
- (B) Final drive
- (C) Idler

When you travel, make sure that final drive sprockets (B) are under the rear of the machine.

Directional changes at full engine speed are possible. However, decelerating and/or braking is recommended for operator comfort. Decelerating and/or braking will also help to achieve the maximum service life of the transmission components.

If the travel alarm (if equipped) does not sound, consult your Caterpillar dealer.

Stop – Release the travel levers/pedals in order to stop the machine. When you release the travel levers/pedals from any position, the travel levers/pedals will return to the CENTER position. This applies the travel brakes.

Move both of the travel levers or both of the travel pedals equally in the same direction in order to travel straight.

Operation Section
Travel Control

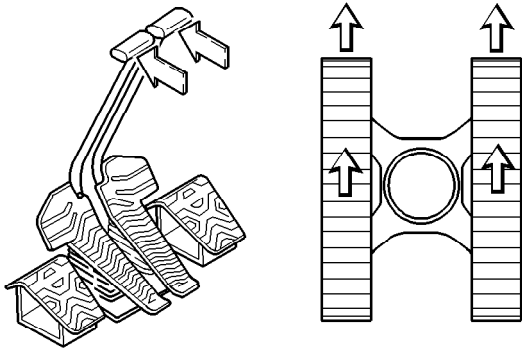


Illustration 119

g00731542

Forward Travel

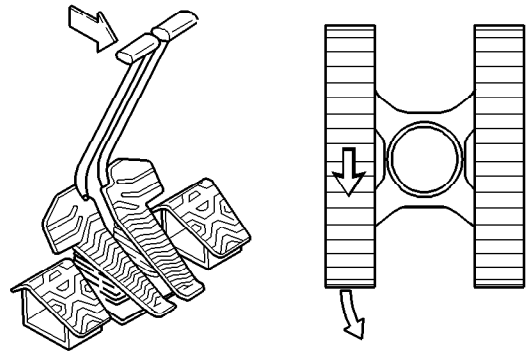


Illustration 122

g00731478

Pivot Left Turn (Reverse)

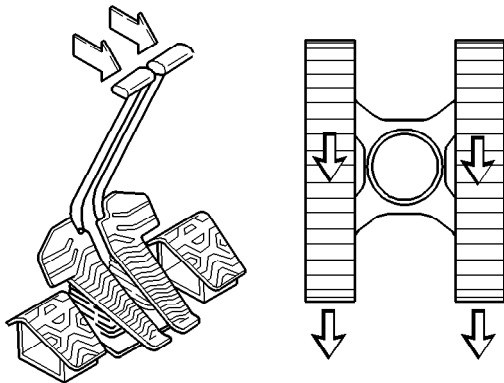


Illustration 120

g00731543

Reverse Travel

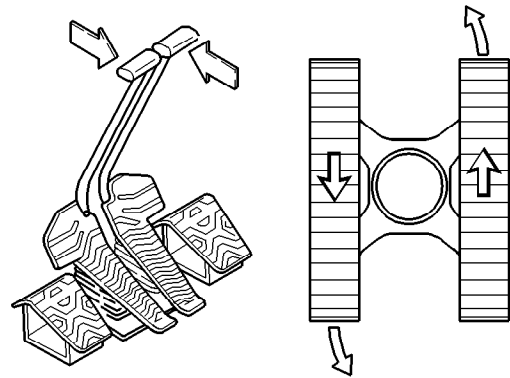


Illustration 123

g00731476

Counterrotate Turn (Left)

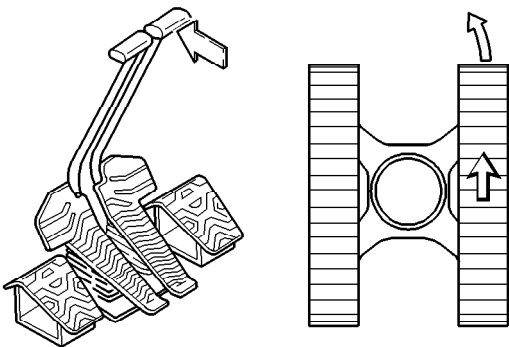


Illustration 121

g00731472

Pivot Left Turn (Forward)

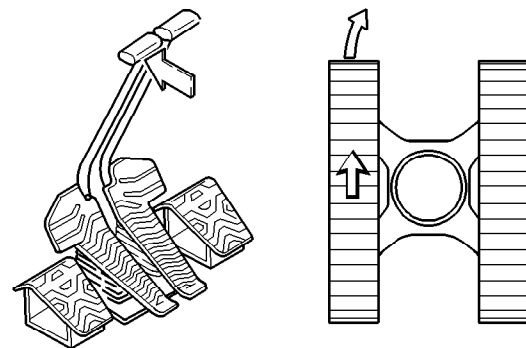


Illustration 124

g00731471

Pivot Right Turn (Forward)

i00702258

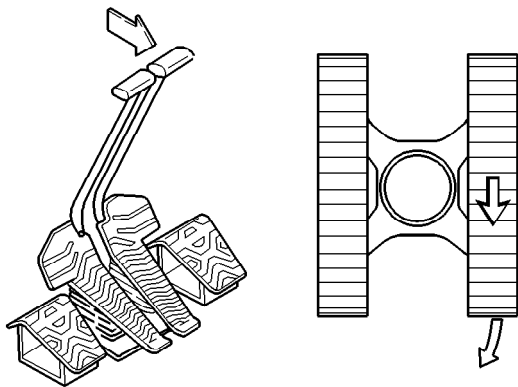


Illustration 125
Pivot Right Turn (Reverse)

g00731479

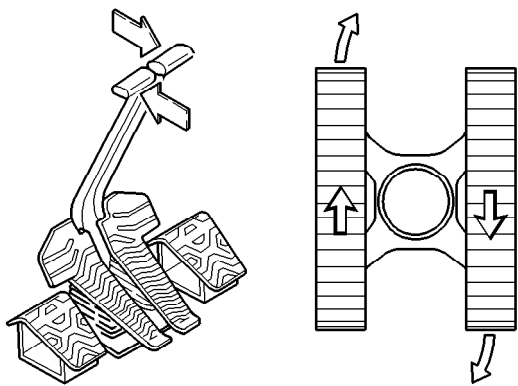


Illustration 126
Counterrotate Turn (Right)

g00731477

Engine Speed Control

SMCS Code: 1915

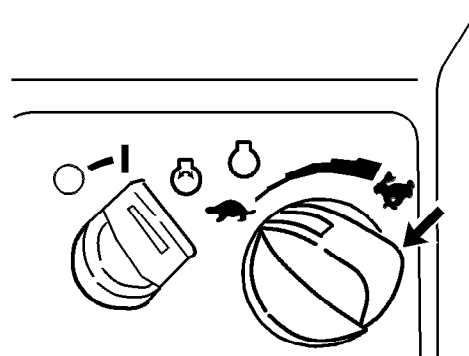





Illustration 127

g00101553

- 
Engine Speed – Turn the engine speed dial in order to control the engine speed (engine rpm). Select the desired position from the ten available positions. The selected position of the engine speed dial is indicated on the seven segment display on the electronic monitor panel.
- 
Decrease – Turn the engine speed dial counterclockwise in order to decrease the engine speed (engine rpm).
- 
Increase – Turn the engine speed dial clockwise in order to increase the engine speed (engine rpm).

Backup Method for Controlling Engine Speed

If the control system does not work due to a malfunction and the engine speed cannot be adjusted by the engine speed dial, the following method will allow you to adjust the engine speed temporarily. Make repairs as soon as possible.

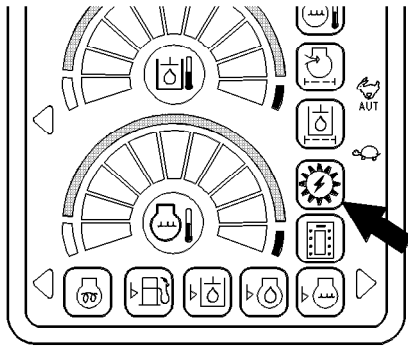


Illustration 128

g00101670

Check the indicator for the electronic controller. If the indicator light is on, there is a problem in the electronic controller. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Electronic Controller System Backup Switches".

If the engine speed cannot be adjusted by the engine speed dial and the indicator for the electronic controller does not come on, see Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Electronic Controller System Backup Switches".

If you cannot adjust the engine speed, the motor for the governor is probably malfunctioning. Use the following backup method to adjust the engine speed.

Note: Even if you cannot control the engine speed, you can turn the engine on and off with the engine start switch.

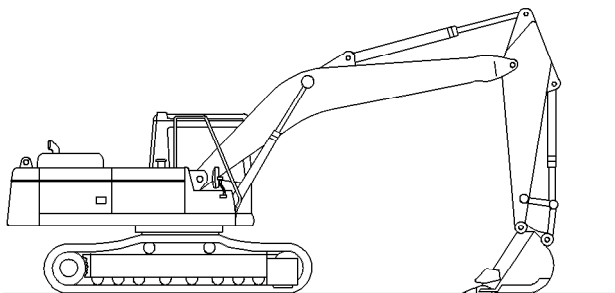


Illustration 129

g00101671

1. Stop the engine after you place the machine in the servicing position, as shown.
2. Open the engine hood.

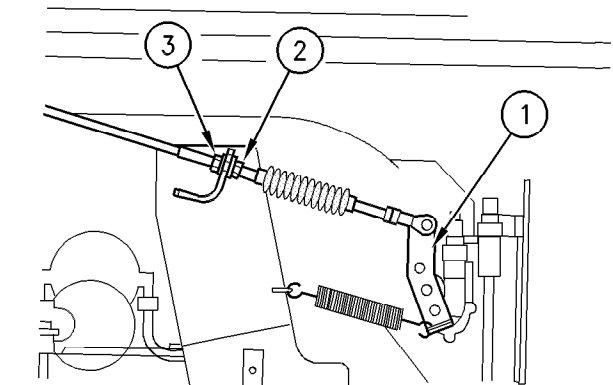


Illustration 130

g00101672

3. To increase the engine speed, loosen locknut (2) of the accelerator cable completely to the end of the threads. Use a 14 mm spanner wrench.
4. Tighten adjusting nut (3) clockwise so that lever (1) contacts the stopper. This is the maximum speed position of the lever.
5. Secure the lever at the maximum speed position by tightening locknut (2).

Note: The engine speed will rapidly reach high idle or a similar speed when you start the engine.

To decrease the engine speed, repeat the procedure above, but turn adjusting nut (3) counterclockwise in order to set the lever at a lower speed position.

i00582700

Travel Speed Control

SMCS Code: 7490

WARNING

Do not change the setting of the travel speed control switch while you travel. Machine stability may be adversely affected.

Personal injury can result from sudden changes in machine stability.

i01588941

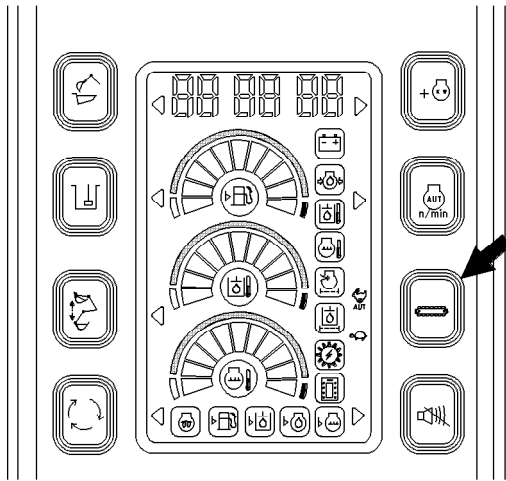


Illustration 131

g00101215



Travel Speed Control Switch – Press the travel speed control switch in order to select **HIGH** travel speed or **LOW** travel speed. When the engine start switch is on, the travel speed control switch is always set at the **LOW** speed position. Whenever the travel speed control switch is pressed, the travel speed changes.



LOW SPEED – If you travel on rough surfaces or on soft surfaces or if you require a great drawbar pull, select the **LOW SPEED** position. Also select the **LOW SPEED** position if you are loading a machine onto a trailer or you are unloading a machine from a trailer. When the **LOW SPEED** position is selected, the maximum speed is 3.0 km (1.9 mph).



HIGH SPEED – If you travel on a hard, level surface select the **HIGH SPEED** position. When the **HIGH SPEED** position is selected, the maximum speed is 5.0 km/h (3.1 mph).

During machine travel at **HIGH SPEED**, the machine will automatically reduce the travel speed when the pump discharge pressure increases to a specific level.

Continuous driving at high speed should be limited to two hours. If you need to continue driving at high speed for more than two hours, stop the machine for ten minutes. This will cool down the travel drives before you resume driving.

Power Mode Control

SMCS Code: 7490

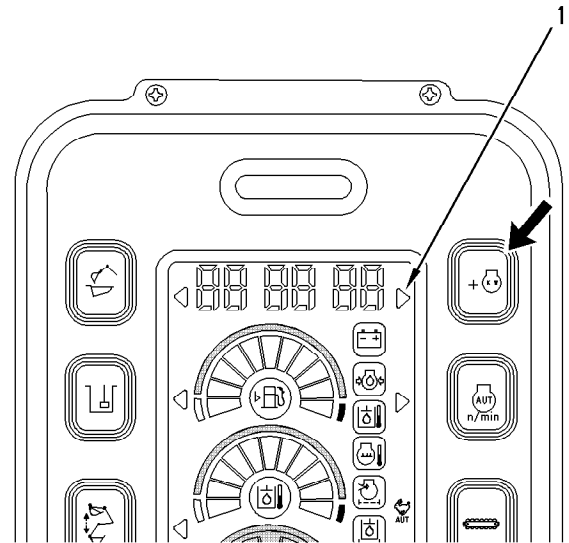


Illustration 132

g00823940



Power Mode Switch – Push this switch in order to change the power mode to **ON** or to **OFF**. Select a power mode that is suitable for the working conditions.

When you turn the engine start switch to the **OFF** position, the previous switch setting is maintained. The power mode is preset to the previous setting when the engine start switch is turned to the **ON** position again.

Power Mode ON – When the power mode switch is pushed to the **ON** position, indicator lamp (1) comes on. This power mode is suitable for heavy-duty work that requires a high operating speed. Changing the switch to this position provides maximum power to the machine.

Power Mode OFF – When the power mode switch is pushed to the **OFF** position, indicator lamp (1) turns off. This power mode is suitable for ordinary work. This power mode provides sufficient power in most applications. This power mode will minimize noise and fuel consumption.

i00796141

Work Mode Control

SMCS Code: 7490

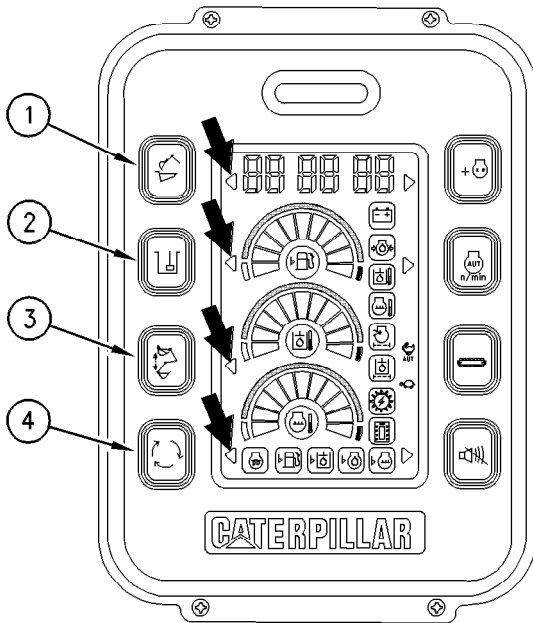


Illustration 133

g00101234

- (1) Boom priority mode
- (2) Swing priority mode
- (3) Fine control mode
- (4) User mode

There are four work mode switches on the left side of the monitor panel. Each work mode switch is set for different attachment speeds or for different swing speeds.

Only one work mode can be selected at a time. If a new work mode is selected, the previous work mode is deactivated automatically.

When you turn the engine start switch to the ON position, the previous switch setting is maintained. Select a suitable work mode for the type of work that will be performed. The selected work mode is identified by an indicator lamp to the right of each work mode switch.



Boom Priority Mode (1) – This work mode provides oil flow priority to the boom circuit. This will raise the boom quickly in applications such as loading a truck and deep trenching. In these applications, the raising of the boom is a major portion of the total cycle time. This work mode is the preferred work mode in most applications that involve digging.



Swing Priority Mode (2) – This work mode provides oil flow priority to the swing circuit. Because the hydraulic flow from one of the two main pumps is guaranteed to the swing circuit, swing movement will be easy and consistent regardless of the other hydraulic functions that are being used. This work mode is preferred for applications that require a smooth trench or a smooth trench wall. This work mode is also used when the angle of the swing position is at least 180 degrees.



Fine Control Mode (3) – This work mode limits the oil flow to the circuit that moves the stick inward. Normally, the oil flow to the circuit that moves the stick inward is available from both pumps. This moves the stick quickly. When the fine control mode is used, the oil flow is limited to one pump. This will slow the stick movement, which allows more control. This work mode is used most often when you finish a slope. This work mode is also used for lifting applications or for fine grading.



User Mode (4) – To select the sub-mode, press this switch repeatedly until the desired sub-mode is displayed in the right two positions of the liquid crystal display. This work mode has the following three sub-modes:

- Tamping mode “U1” is suitable for simple forming of surfaces, for compacting, or for similar operations that use the bottom of the bucket. When this mode is selected, the boom raises smoothly and the boom lowers smoothly in order to avoid bumping of the boom and lifting of the machine.
- Mode “U2” provides optional hydraulic power for special attachments. The “U2” mode is set by your Caterpillar dealer only for use in special circumstances.
- Customer mode “U3” allows the operator to choose the preferred modes with a single switch. The operator can set the work mode, the power mode, the pump flow, and the Automatic Engine Speed Control (AEC) according to preset settings. This mode offers the advantage of customizing these settings in order to meet the operator's specific needs.

For example, the customer mode is useful during lifting applications. The fine control mode is the most appropriate conventional mode for lifting applications, but the engine speed and the stick cylinder speed decrease when the machine is not loaded. If the customer mode is used, the engine speed can be set at 100 percent and the pump flow can be set at 70 percent. With the presetting in the customer mode, the machine would achieve the same precise operation as the fine control mode during lifting applications, but the stick cylinder speed would be faster during no-load conditions.

The function of the customer mode cannot be fully utilized unless the parameters are set. The settings of the parameters must be memorized. Consult your Caterpillar dealer if you encounter difficulty in setting the parameters.

For further details, see Operation and Maintenance Manual, "User Mode Control".

i01954656

User Mode Control

SMCS Code: 7490

The customer mode cannot be fully utilized unless the parameters are set. Operational parameters for the customer mode are set by using the six-digit liquid crystal display (LCD) and the switches on the electronic monitor panel.

Activating Memory

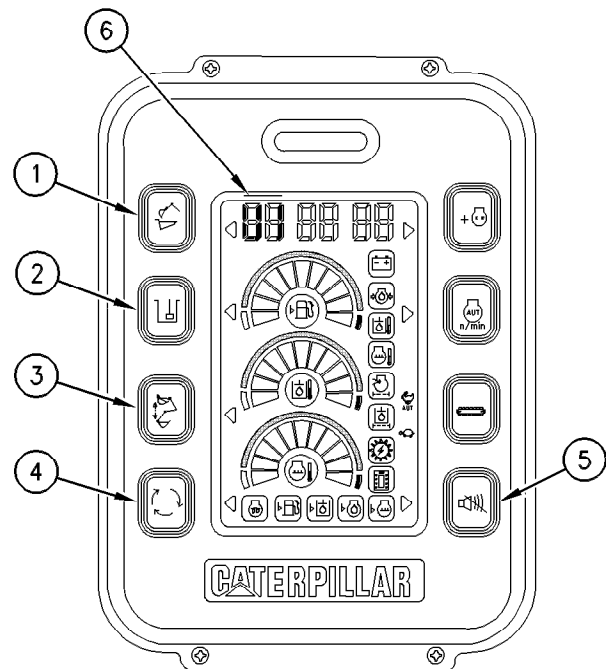


Illustration 134

g00103165

Press alarm cancel switch (5) and switch (4) for user mode simultaneously for more than two seconds. When display (6) flashes, the hammer mode and the customer mode can be set by using the following switches.

Switch (1) for Boom Priority Mode – Press the switch in order to increase the flashing data in the LCD.

Switch (2) for Swing Priority Mode – Press the switch in order to decrease the flashing data in the LCD.

Switch (3) for Fine Control Mode – Press the switch in order to move the selected flashing position to the right one position on the LCD.

Switch (4) for User Mode – Press the switch in order to move the selected flashing position to the left one position on the LCD.

Values can be entered only in the position that is flashing on the LCD. Use switch (3) and switch (4) to move the flashing position to the right or to the left.

To return to the normal operating mode, push alarm cancel switch (5) and switch (4) for mode simultaneously for more than two seconds. Display (6) will show the time of day and the position of the engine speed dial.

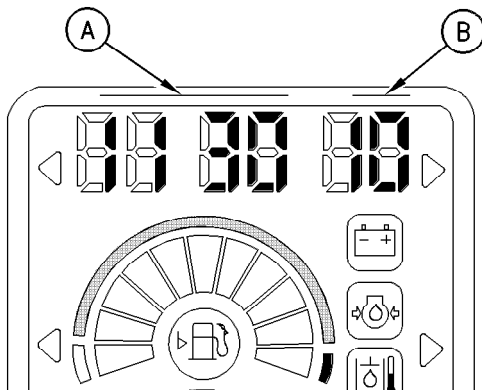


Illustration 135

g00103167

Illustration 135 indicates that time of day (A) is 11:30 and the position of the engine speed dial is “10” .

Selecting a Submode

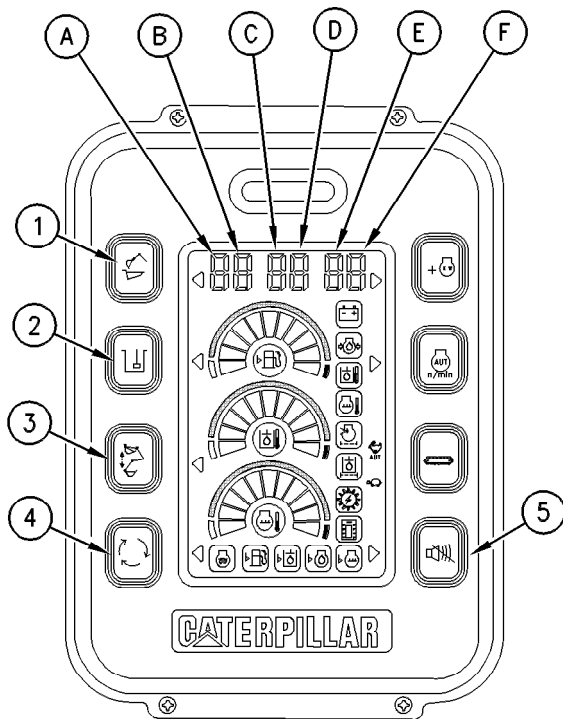


Illustration 136

g00103168

Position (A) and position (B) indicate the submode.

- “U1” indicates the tamping mode. No setting is required for the tamping mode.
- “U2” indicates the mode for the auxiliary circuit. Consult your Caterpillar dealer in order to set the parameters for this mode.

- “U3” indicates the customer mode. The settings for the customer mode can now be set.

If the appropriate submode is not displayed on the LCD, use switch (3) or switch (4) to move the flashing character to position (B). Use switch (1) or switch (2) to change the designation of the submode.

Setting the Customer Mode

To set the customer mode, the character in position (B) must be a “3” .

Position (C) is used to select one of the four parameters. Positions (D), (E), and (F) are used to set the function of the parameter.

Refer to the following table in order to determine the values of the positions that will achieve the desired function of the hydraulic excavator while you are operating the machine in the customer mode.

Table 17

Positions (A) and (B)	Position (C)		Positions (D), (E), and (F)	
	Setting	Function	Setting	Function
"U3" Customer Mode	"1"	Select work mode.	"-1"	Select boom priority mode.
			"-2"	Select swing priority mode.
			"-3"	Select fine control mode.
	"2"	Select power mode.	"-1"	Power mode is off.
			"-2"	Power mode is on.
	"3"	Select the stage of AEC.	"-1"	Select the first stage of AEC.
			"-2"	Select the second stage of AEC.
	"5"	Set the time delay for the AEC.	"—"	The increment is 0.1 second and the range is 0.1 second to 20 seconds. The initial factory setting for the delay time is 3 seconds. The LCD shows "U3:5-30" .
"6"	Set engine speed in the second stage of AEC.	"—"	The increment is 10 rpm and the range is 800 rpm to 2200 rpm. The initial factory setting is 1300 rpm. If the LCD shows "US:6-95" , engine speed in the second stage of AEC is set to 950 rpm.	
"7"	Limit the maximum engine speed dial.	"—"	The upper limit of engine speed dial can be set from 1 to 10. The initial factory setting is 10. The LCD shows "US:7-10" .	
"8"	Set hydraulic horsepower at position 10 on the engine speed dial.	"—"	When the engine speed dial is set to position 10 the hydraulic horsepower can be set as a percent of the maximum hydraulic power. The increment is 1 percent and the range is 0 to 100 percent. The initial factory setting is 70 percent. The LCD shows "U3:8-70" .	

i00117027

Automatic Engine Speed Control (AEC)

SMCS Code: 7490

The Automatic Engine Speed Control (AEC) automatically reduces engine speed when there is no hydraulic demand or when the hydraulic demand is very small. The AEC system is designed to reduce fuel consumption and noise.

The AEC system will be inoperable while the backup switch of the electronic controller system is in the MAN (MANUAL BACKUP) position. If the hydraulic oil is not at a normal operating temperature, the AEC may respond slowly.

The AEC system operates in the following three modes. Operation depends on the position of the AEC switch and of the switch for manual low idle. The engine rpm will recover automatically to the setting of the engine speed dial when any hydraulic function is activated.

Mode I

- The AEC switch is in the OFF position.

- The switch for manual low idle is not activated.
- The setting of the engine speed dial is between 5 and 10.

The electronic controller automatically reduces engine speed by 100 rpm after there has been no hydraulic demand for approximately three seconds.

Mode II

- The AEC switch is in the ON position.
- The switch for manual low idle is not activated.
- The setting of the engine speed dial is between 5 and 10.

The AEC system in the electronic controller will automatically reduce the engine rpm to approximately 1300 rpm after there has been no hydraulic demand for approximately three seconds.

Mode III

- The AEC switch is in the ON or OFF position.
- The switch for manual low idle is activated.

Operation Section Backup Controls

- The setting of the engine speed dial is between 3 and 10.

The switch for manual low idle is on the right control lever. Whenever the switch for manual low idle is activated, the engine speed is reduced to approximately 950 rpm. Pressing the switch again will allow the engine speed to return to the setting of the engine speed dial. The setting of the engine speed dial is approximately 1300 rpm (Mode II) if the AEC switch is in the ON position and there is no hydraulic demand.

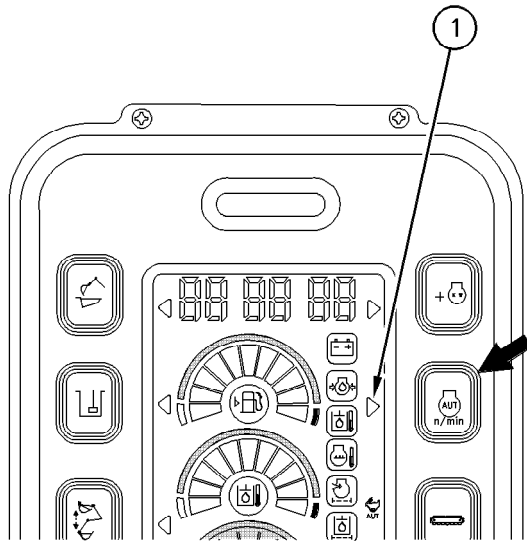


Illustration 137

g00101262



Automatic Engine Speed Control Switch (AEC Switch) – The Automatic Engine Speed Control switch and indicator (1)

are activated when the engine start switch is turned to the ON position. When you press the AEC switch, the function of the AEC switch changes from ON to OFF, and vice versa.

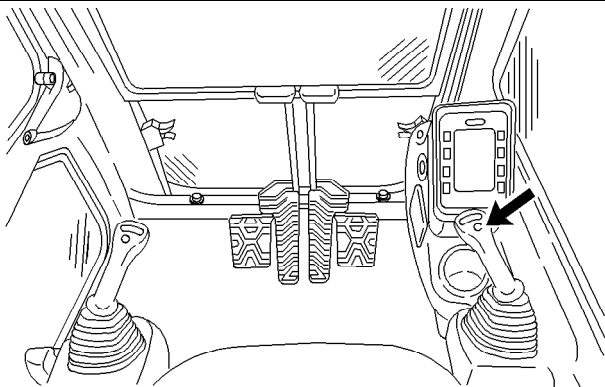


Illustration 138

g00107439

Switch for Manual Low Idle – This switch reduces the engine speed to approximately 950 rpm. This

reduction occurs regardless of the setting of the engine speed dial. This reduction also occurs from a setting of 1300 rpm (Mode II) on the AEC. If the switch for manual low idle is pressed again, the engine speed will return to the setting of the engine speed dial or to the setting of 1300 rpm (Mode II) on the AEC. Hydraulic demand is a determining factor for the setting.

i01584900

Backup Controls

SMCS Code: 7000

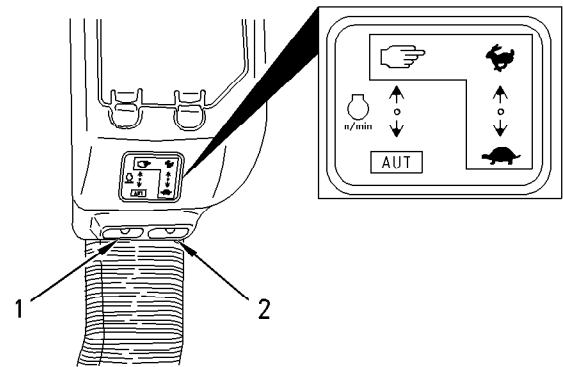


Illustration 139

g00822272

The backup switches are located on the back of the right console.



Engine Speed Control – By utilizing these switches, the engine speed can be controlled manually by the operator or the engine speed can be controlled automatically by the electronic controller.



Automatic – When the electronic control system is functioning properly, backup switch (1) should be in the AUTOMATIC position.



Manual – If a problem occurs in the electronic control system, move backup switch (1) to the MANUAL position in order to disconnect the controller circuit of the electronic controller system. In this condition, the machine can be operated at a reduced ratio of pump output on a temporary basis. At the same time, the power supply to the monitor is cut off and all displays on the monitor panel turn off.



Fast Engine Speed – Move backup switch (2) to this position in order to increase the engine speed. This backup switch will not operate if backup switch (1) is not in the **MANUAL** position. When the switch is released the switch returns to the **NEUTRAL** position and the machine will maintain the engine speed. This switch overrides the function of the engine speed dial.



Slow Engine Speed – Move backup switch (2) to this position in order to decrease the engine speed. This backup switch will not operate if backup switch (1) is not in the **MANUAL** position. When the switch is released the switch returns to the **NEUTRAL** position and the machine will maintain the engine speed. This switch overrides the function of the engine speed dial.

i00134187

Fine Swing Control

SMCS Code: 5258; 5700

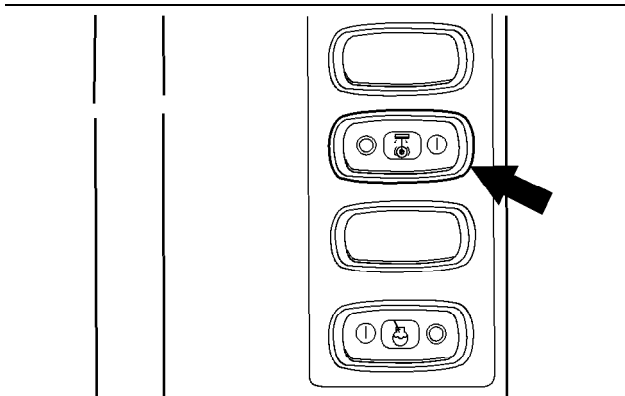


Illustration 140

g00118190

The switch for fine swing control is on the right console.



Switch for Fine Swing Control – Push down on the right side of the switch in order to activate the fine swing control. This improves swing control during deceleration of a swing.

Push down on the left side of the switch in order to turn off the fine swing control. Operate the machine with the switch in the **OFF** position when great swing forces are required. For example, digging on a sidewall requires great swing force. Operate the machine with the switch in the **OFF** position in order to control the motion with the swing brake.

i02287957

Hydraulic Lockout Control

SMCS Code: 5258-LK

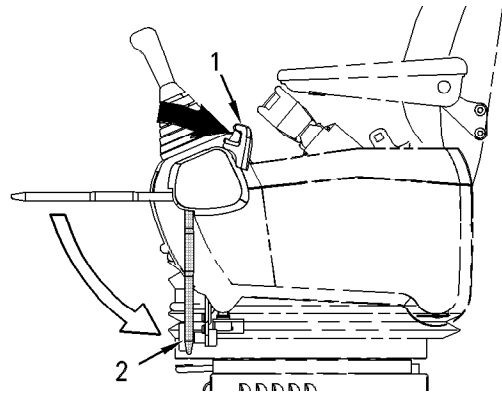


Illustration 141

g00536416

The lever for the hydraulic lockout control is located on the left console.



Locked – Move the travel levers and move the work tool control lever to the center **HOLD** position. Move the lever for the hydraulic lockout control (1) backward to the **LOCKED** position. Crossbar (2) will move down. This makes all of the factory installed hydraulic controls inoperable.

Note: Make sure that the lever for the hydraulic lockout control is in the **LOCKED** position before attempting to start the engine. If the lever is in the **UNLOCKED** position, the engine start switch will not function.

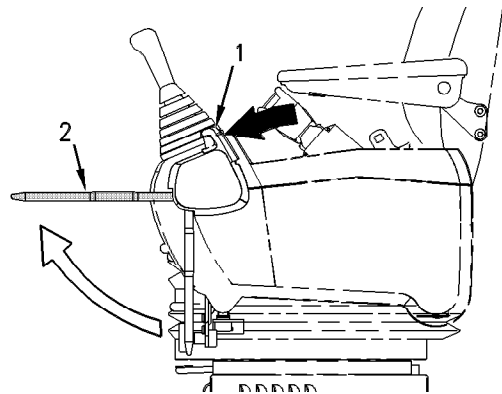


Illustration 142

g00536457



Unlocked – Move the lever for the hydraulic lockout control (1) forward to the **UNLOCKED** position. Crossbar (2) will move up. This makes all of the factory installed hydraulic controls operable.

i01956567

Joystick Controls

SMCS Code: 5705

Excavator

Bucket Controls

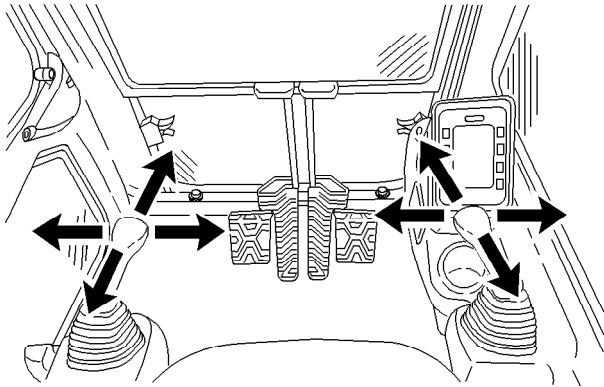


Illustration 143

g00274481

The joystick control pattern can be changed. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Joystick Controls Alternate Patterns". Consult your Caterpillar dealer for more information.

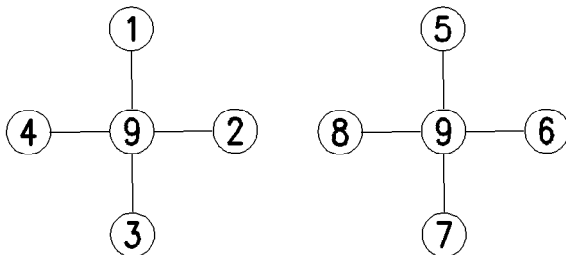


Illustration 144

g00101278

The machine control pattern is initially set at the factory to the SAE system, as shown. The pattern on the left pertains to the left control lever and the pattern on the right pertains to the right control lever.



Stick Out (1) – Move the control lever to this position in order to move the stick outward.



SWING RIGHT (2) – Move the control lever to this position in order to swing the upper structure to the right.



STICK IN (3) – Move the control lever to this position in order to move the stick inward.



SWING LEFT (4) – Move the control lever to this position in order to swing the upper structure to the left.



BOOM LOWER (5) – Move the control lever to this position in order to lower the boom.



BUCKET DUMP (6) – Move the control lever to this position in order to dump the bucket.



BOOM RAISE (7) – Move the control lever to this position in order to raise the boom.



BUCKET CLOSE (8) – Move the control lever to this position in order to close the bucket.

HOLD (9) – When you release the control levers from any position, the control levers will return to the HOLD position. Movement of the upper structure will stop.

Two functions may be performed at the same time by moving a control lever diagonally.

If the machine is equipped with a hydraulic hammer, the function of positions (6) and (8) are different.

HYDRAULIC HAMMER RAISE (6) – Move the control lever to this position in order to raise the hydraulic hammer.

HYDRAULIC HAMMER LOWER (8) – Move the control lever to this position in order to lower the hydraulic hammer.

Forest Machine

Rotating Grapple Control Levers

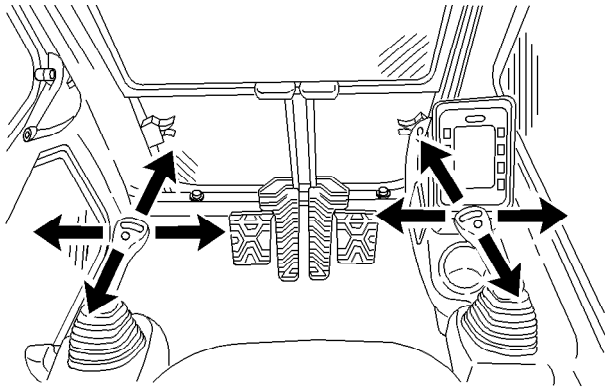


Illustration 145

g00107449

The joystick control pattern can be changed. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Joystick Controls Alternate Patterns". Consult your Caterpillar dealer for more information.

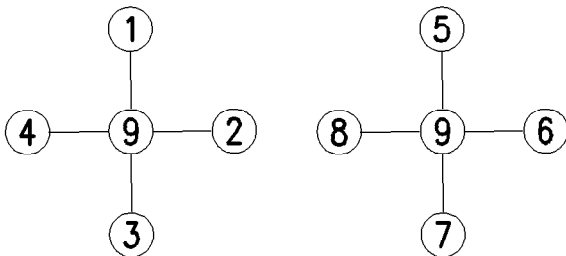


Illustration 146

g00101278

The machine control pattern is initially set at the factory to the SAE system, as shown. The pattern on the left pertains to the left control lever and the pattern on the right pertains to the right control lever.



Stick Out (1) – Move the control lever to this position in order to move the stick outward.



SWING RIGHT (2) – Move the control lever to this position in order to swing the upper structure to the right.



STICK IN (3) – Move the control lever to this position in order to move the stick inward.



SWING LEFT (4) – Move the control lever to this position in order to swing the upper structure to the left.



BOOM LOWER (5) – Move the control lever to this position in order to lower the boom.



HEEL BOOM UP (6) – Move the control lever to this position in order to move the heel boom upward.



BOOM RAISE (7) – Move the control lever to this position in order to raise the boom.



HEEL BOOM DOWN (8) – Move the control lever to this position in order to move the heel boom downward.

HOLD (9) – When you release the control levers from any position, the control levers will return to the HOLD position. Movement of the upper structure will stop.

Two functions may be performed at the same time by moving a control lever diagonally.

Left Implement Control Lever

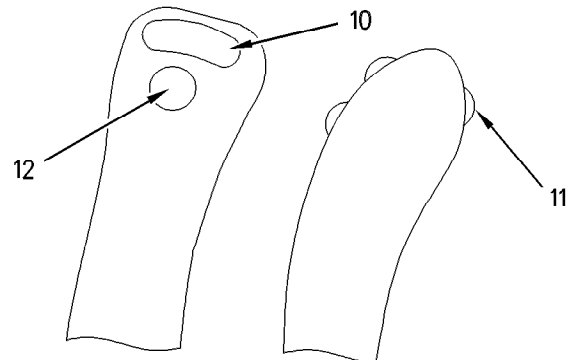


Illustration 147

g00102181



Grapple Rotate Clockwise (10) – Press the right side of the top rocker switch in order to rotate the grapple clockwise.



Grapple Open (11) – Press the switch on the front of the left control lever in order to open the grapple.



Horn (12) – Press the lower switch on the top of the left control lever in order to activate the horn.

Right Implement Control Lever

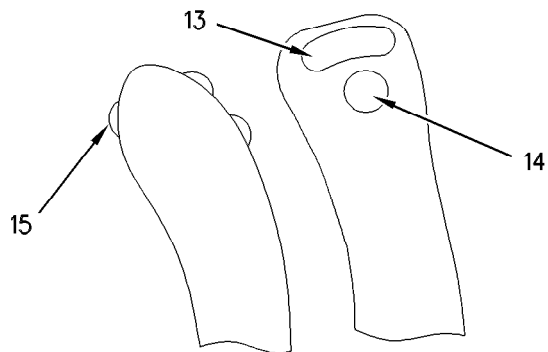


Illustration 148

g00102183



Grapple Rotate Counterclockwise (13) – Press the left side of the top rocker switch in order to rotate the grapple counterclockwise.



AEC Switch (14) – Press the lower switch on the top of the right control lever in order to activate low engine speed. Press the switch again in order to activate high engine speed.



Grapple Close (15) – Press the switch on the front of the right control lever in order to close the grapple.

Material Handler

In order to activate the generator, perform the following procedure:

NOTICE

Turn the Grapple/Magnet Switch to **MAGNET** position **only** when the engine speed dial is set to dial speed one. Failure to do so could result in damage to the generator system.

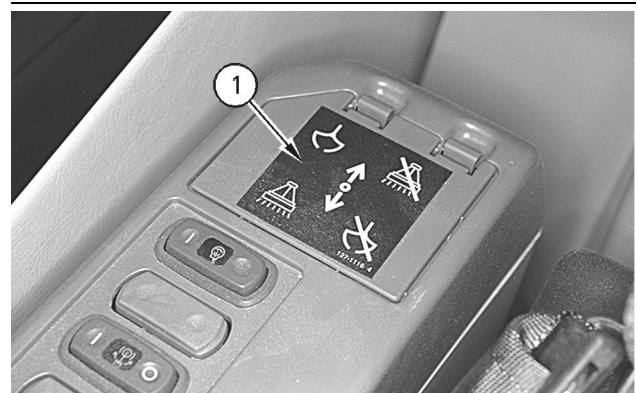


Illustration 149

g00275805

1. Remove cover (1).

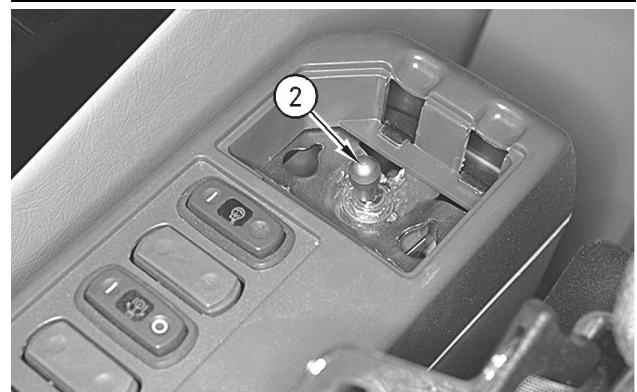


Illustration 150

g00275804

2. To operate the grapple, use Step 2a:
 - a. Move switch (2) to the GRAPPLE ON/MAGNET OFF position.
3. To operate the magnet, use Step 3a:
 - a. Move switch (2) to the GRAPPLE OFF/MAGNET ON position.

Rotating Grapple Control Levers

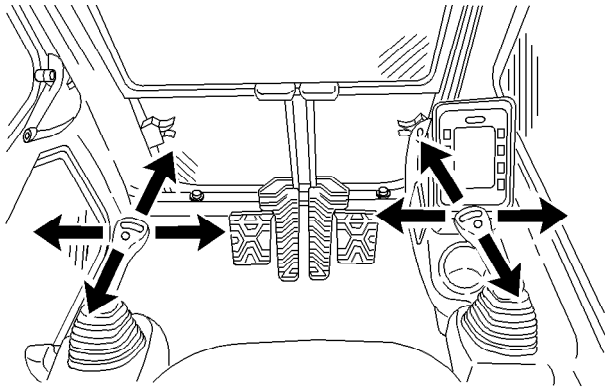


Illustration 151

g00107449

The joystick control pattern can be changed. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Joystick Controls Alternate Patterns". Consult your Caterpillar dealer for more information.

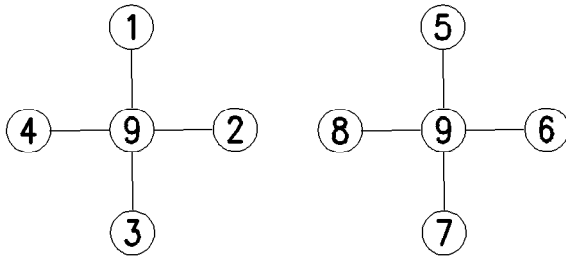


Illustration 152

g00101278

The machine control pattern is initially set at the factory to the SAE system, as shown. The pattern on the left pertains to the left control lever and the pattern on the right pertains to the right control lever.



Stick Out (1) – Move the control lever to this position in order to move the stick outward.



SWING RIGHT (2) – Move the control lever to this position in order to swing the upper structure to the right.



STICK IN (3) – Move the control lever to this position in order to move the stick inward.



SWING LEFT (4) – Move the control lever to this position in order to swing the upper structure to the left.



BOOM LOWER (5) – Move the control lever to this position in order to lower the boom.



BOOM RAISE (7) – Move the control lever to this position in order to raise the boom.

HOLD (9) – When you release the control levers from any position, the control levers will return to the HOLD position. Movement of the upper structure will stop.

Two functions may be performed at the same time by moving a control lever diagonally.

Left Implement Control Lever

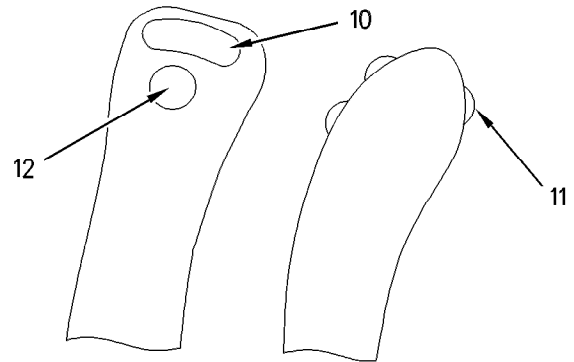


Illustration 153

g00102181



Grapple Rotate Counterclockwise (10) – Press the right side of the top rocker switch in order to rotate the grapple clockwise.



Grapple Open (11) – Press the switch on the front of the left control lever in order to open the grapple.



Horn (12) – Press the lower switch on the top of the left control lever in order to activate the horn.

Right Implement Control Lever

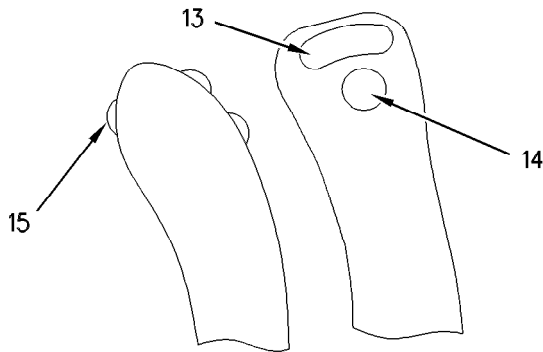





Illustration 154

g00102183

-  **Grapple Rotate Clockwise (13) – Press the left side of the top rocker switch in order to rotate the grapple counterclockwise.**
-  **AEC Switch (14) – Press the lower switch on the top of the right control lever in order to activate low engine speed. Press the switch again in order to activate high engine speed.**
-  **Grapple Close (15) – Press the switch on the front of the right control lever in order to close the grapple.**

Magnet Control Levers

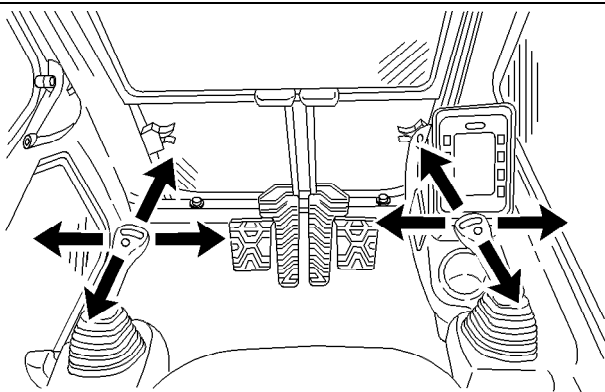


Illustration 155

g00107449

The joystick control pattern can be changed. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Joystick Controls Alternate Patterns”. Consult your Caterpillar dealer for more information.

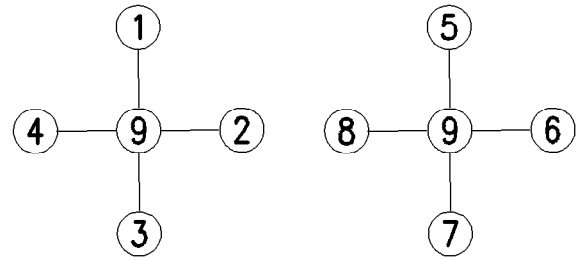








Illustration 156

g00101278

The machine control pattern is initially set at the factory to the SAE system, as shown. The pattern on the left pertains to the left control lever and the pattern on the right pertains to the right control lever.

-  **Stick Out (1) – Move the control lever to this position in order to move the stick outward.**
-  **SWING RIGHT (2) – Move the control lever to this position in order to swing the upper structure to the right.**
-  **STICK IN (3) – Move the control lever to this position in order to move the stick inward.**
-  **SWING LEFT (4) – Move the control lever to this position in order to swing the upper structure to the left.**
-  **BOOM LOWER (5) – Move the control lever to this position in order to lower the boom.**
-  **BOOM RAISE (7) – Move the control lever to this position in order to raise the boom.**

HOLD (9) – When you release the control levers from any position, the control levers will return to the HOLD position. Movement of the upper structure will stop.

Two functions may be performed at the same time by moving a control lever diagonally.

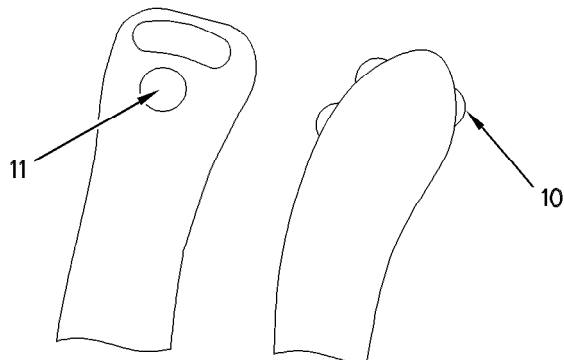
Left Implement Control Lever

Illustration 157

g00274485



Magnet OFF (10) – Press the right side of the top rocker switch in order to turn off the magnet.



Horn (11) – Press the lower switch on the top of the left control lever in order to activate the horn.

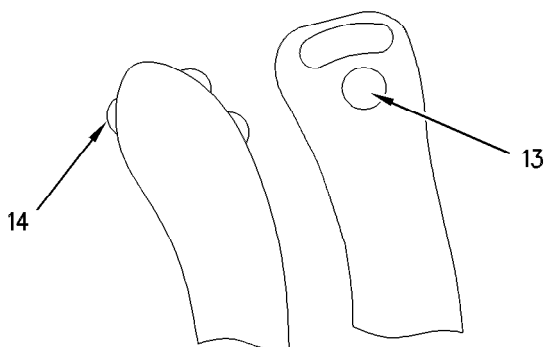
Right Implement Control Lever

Illustration 158

g00274484



AEC Switch (14) – Press the lower switch on the top of the right control lever in order to activate low engine speed. Press the switch again in order to activate high engine speed.



Magnet ON (15) – Press the right side of the top rocker switch in order to turn the magnet to the ON position.

i01956578

Hammer Control

SMCS Code: 5705-WTL

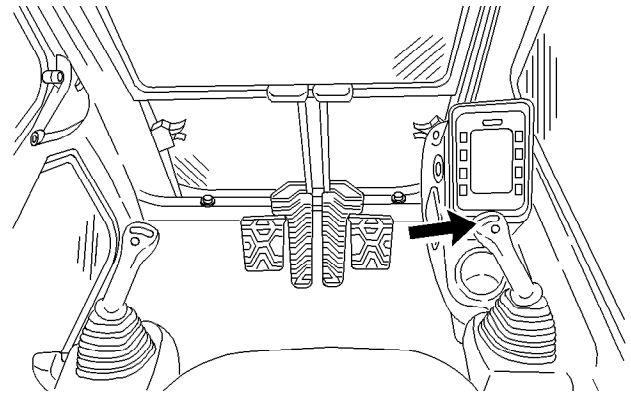


Illustration 159

g00110396

The hydraulic hammer control is located on the right joystick.

Hydraulic Hammer ON – Push down the top left button on the right joystick in order to activate the hydraulic hammer.

Hydraulic Hammer OFF – Release the top left button on the right joystick in order to deactivate the hydraulic hammer.

i00370422

Grapple Float Control

SMCS Code: 5568; 5570

Note: The grapple float switch is only equipped on machines that have the Butt-N-Top Grapple configuration.

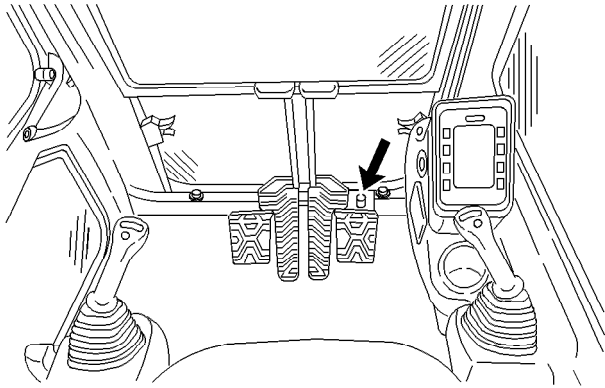


Illustration 160

g00270362

ON – Depress the grapple float switch and release the grapple float switch in order to activate the float feature. Activating the float feature will cause the grapple tilt cylinders to move freely allowing the grapple to swing freely under load.

OFF – Depress the grapple float switch and release the grapple float switch in order to deactivate the float feature. Deactivating the float feature will cause the grapple tilt cylinders to remain fixed unless the tilt control lever is operated.

Note: The tilt control lever will only be operational when the float feature is not active.

i01521986

Joystick Controls Alternate Patterns (If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 5059; 5137

WARNING

Whenever a change is made to the machine control pattern, also exchange the pattern card in the cab to match the new pattern.

Check the machine control pattern for conformance to the pattern on the card in the cab. If the pattern does not match, change the card to match the machine control pattern before you operate the machine. Failure to do so could result in personal injury.

The machine control pattern can easily be changed to the SAE system or to the standard backhoe loader hydraulic system (BHL) by changing the position of the two-way valve (if equipped). Use the following procedure to change the position of the two-way valve.

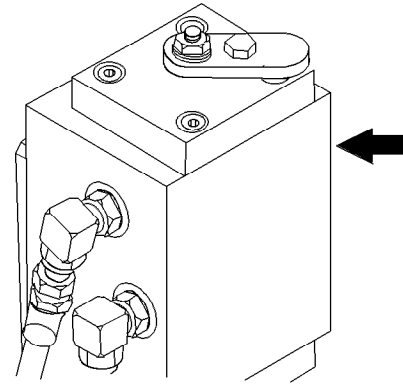


Illustration 161

g00101286

The two-way valve is located at the front left of the swing drives.

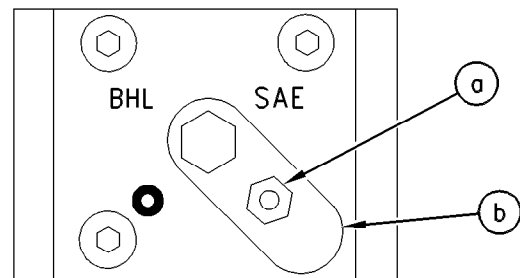


Illustration 162

g00104103

(a) Bolt
(b) Lever

1. Loosen bolt (a) and move lever (b) to the SAE position or to the BHL position.

Note: Illustration 162 shows that the two-way valve is in the SAE position.

2. After you set the machine control pattern, tighten bolt (a) in order to secure lever (b).

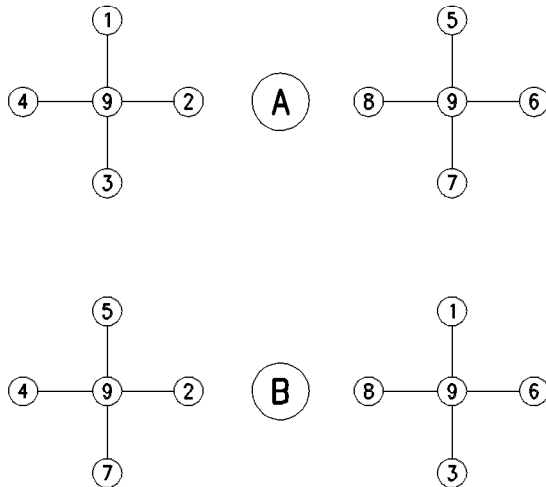


Illustration 163

g00101291

(A) SAE machine control pattern

(B) Machine control pattern for standard backhoe

The patterns on the left side of Illustration 163 show the possible configurations for the left control lever. The patterns on the right side of the illustration show the possible configurations for the right control lever.



STICK OUT (1) – Move the control lever to this position in order to move the stick outward.



SWING RIGHT (2) – Move the control lever to this position in order to swing the upper structure to the right.



STICK IN (3) – Move the control lever to this position in order to move the stick inward.



SWING LEFT (4) – Move the control lever to this position in order to swing the upper structure to the left.



BOOM LOWER (5) – Move the control lever to this position in order to lower the boom.



BUCKET DUMP (6) – Move the control lever to this position in order to dump the bucket.



BOOM RAISE (7) – Move the control lever to this position in order to raise the boom.



BUCKET CLOSE (8) – Move the control lever to this position in order to close the bucket.

HOLD (9) – When the control lever is released from any position, the control lever will return to the HOLD position. Movement of the upper structure will stop.

Two functions may be performed at the same time by moving a control lever diagonally.

If the machine is equipped with a hydraulic hammer, the functions of positions (6) and (8) are different.

HYDRAULIC HAMMER RAISE (6) – Move the control lever to this position in order to raise the hydraulic hammer.

HYDRAULIC HAMMER LOWER (8) – Move the control lever to this position in order to lower the hydraulic hammer.

i01956588

Work Tool Flow Mode Control (If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 7490

The combined hydraulic attachment circuit is capable of providing single action or double action. An electronic controller, an electronic switch, and a manual ball valve are provided in the main circuit and in the pilot circuit of the double action hydraulic attachment circuit. The position of the ball valve selects the single action hydraulic attachment circuit or the double action hydraulic attachment circuit. The electronic switch is used to select the flow modes for each of the hydraulic attachment circuits.

When the machine is equipped with a double action hydraulic attachment circuit, the operator can choose from four flow modes: two for the single action hydraulic attachment circuit and two for the double action hydraulic attachment circuit. The flow modes limit the maximum engine speed and pump flow. The flow modes are set by selecting a position for the ball valve and for the electronic switch. The dealer programs the electronic controller for the following reasons:

- Provide the proper flow rates for the attachment.
- Provide the proper engine speeds for the attachment.

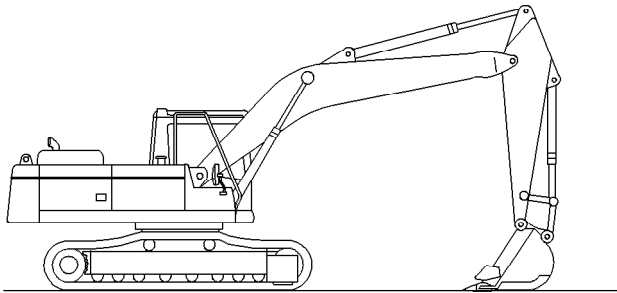


Illustration 164

g00101347

Before you change the flow mode of the hydraulic attachment circuit, place the machine in the servicing position, as shown. Stop the engine.

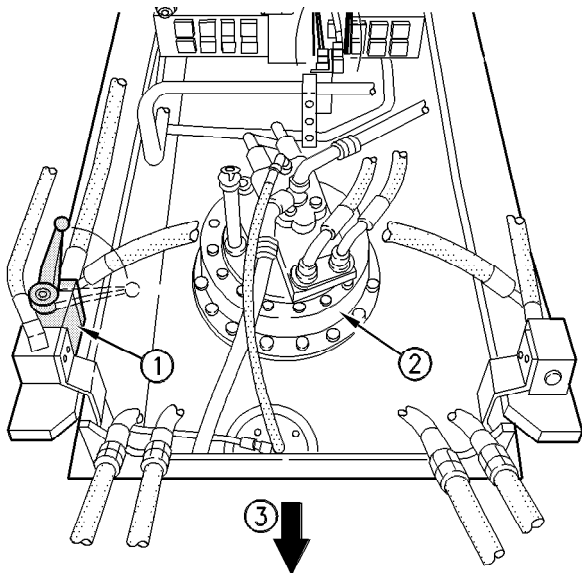


Illustration 165

g00104483

- (1) Ball valve
- (2) Swing drive
- (3) Front of the machine

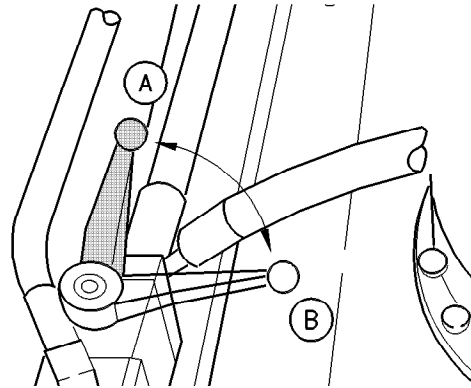


Illustration 166

g00104484

Ball Valve

- (A) One-way flow
- (B) Two-way flow

Use the manual lever to turn the ball valve. Make sure that you fully turn the ball valve until the ball valve stops.

For one-way flow (operation of the hydraulic hammer), position the manual lever parallel to the hydraulic line.

For two-way flow (operation of the clamshell or of the shear), position the manual lever so that the lever is perpendicular to the hydraulic line.

Never use the manual lever as a step when the manual lever is attached to the ball valve. Remove the manual lever from the ball valve after adjusting the ball valve.

i01546267

Work Tool Electronic Controller

SMCS Code: 6700-EK2

The Hydraulic Attachment Electronic Controller is equipped only on certain machines.

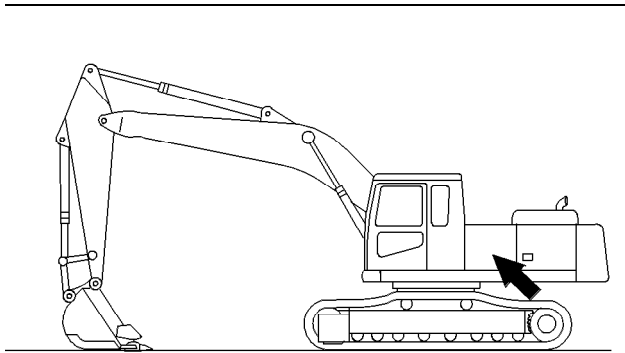


Illustration 167

g00101365

The electronic controller is located inside the front access door on the left side of the machine.

If a machine or a tool malfunctions, the operator may need to report the information that is stored in the electronic controller.

Turn the engine start switch to the ON position in order to activate the electronic controller.

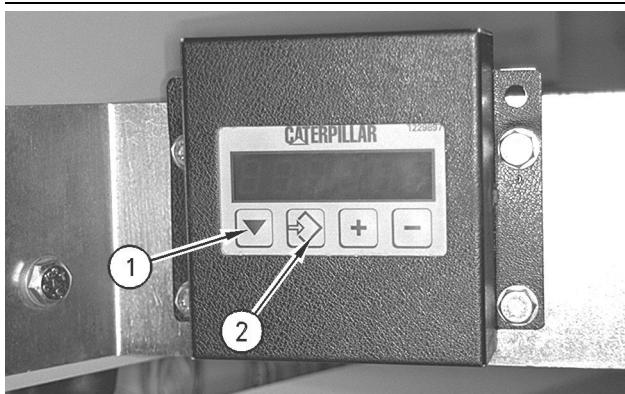


Illustration 168

g00101367

The illustration shows an electronic controller (typical example).

When you activate the electronic controller, read the digital display from left to right. The second digit and the third digit display the version of software. The fourth digit and the fifth digit indicate the number of programmed changes that have been saved for the active mode. (The active mode is determined by the position of the ball valve and of the switch for the hydraulic attachment.)

The electronic controller can display the number of hours that have elapsed in each of the four flow modes. Likewise, the electronic controller can display the settings for the engine speed of the four flow modes and for the hydraulic oil flow of the four flow modes.

Push switch (1) in order to scroll through the digital readouts that pertain to the different flow modes. The first number that is displayed indicates the amount of hours that have elapsed in the active flow mode. The first digit of this number indicates the number that is assigned to the flow mode. The second digit displays an "h". The "h" means hours. The last four digits indicate the number of hours of machine operation.

Push switch (1) again in order to display the engine speed setting. The first digit that is displayed indicates the number that is assigned to the flow mode. The second digit displays an "E". The "E" means engine speed. The third digit and the fourth digit indicate the engine speed setting. The engine speed setting determines the speed of the engine. The engine speed will be equal to one of the ten positions of the engine speed dial. This occurs when the hydraulic attachment circuit is activated. If the setting of the electronic controller for the active mode is at "5", the engine will run at a speed that is equal to the setting at the fifth position of the engine speed dial.

Note: There are two speeds that are set by the electronic controller and by the engine speed dial. During operation of the hydraulic attachment circuit, the engine will operate at the lower speed. The operator should always set the engine speed dial to at least the engine speed setting that is indicated on the electronic controller for the active mode.

The fifth digit shows either an "H" (high flow) or an "L" (low flow). If the "rabbit" side of the switch for the hydraulic attachment is depressed, an "H" is displayed. If the "tortoise" side of the switch for the hydraulic attachment is depressed, an "L" is displayed.

The sixth digit shows a "1" (one-way flow) or a "2" (two-way flow). If the ball valve is positioned parallel to the hydraulic line, a "1" is displayed. If the ball valve is positioned perpendicular to the hydraulic line, a "2" is displayed.

Push switch (1) again in order to display the setting for the hydraulic oil flow. The first digit of this display indicates the number that is assigned to the flow mode. The second digit displays an "F". The "F" means flow. The third digit and the fourth digit indicate the setting for the flow.

The fifth digit and the sixth digit display the same reading that is described for the display for the engine speed.

Continue to push switch (1) in order to scroll through the remaining flow modes for the following displays: hours of machine operation, the setting for the engine speed and the hydraulic oil flow.

Operation Section
Fuel Tank Shutoff and Drain Control

Note: If the machine is equipped with a single action hydraulic attachment circuit, there are only two available flow modes that can be programmed into the electronic controller. If the machine is equipped with a double action hydraulic attachment circuit, there is a total of four flow modes that are programmed into the electronic controller.

Push switch (1) and then push switch (2). The total number of programmed changes that have been saved for all flow modes will be displayed.

Push switch (1) for the display again in order to continue scrolling through the settings for the flow modes.

When the necessary information is retrieved from the electronic controller, close the access door. Turn the engine start switch to the OFF position.

i01959006

Fuel Tank Shutoff and Drain Control

SMCS Code: 1273

Excavator and Material Handler

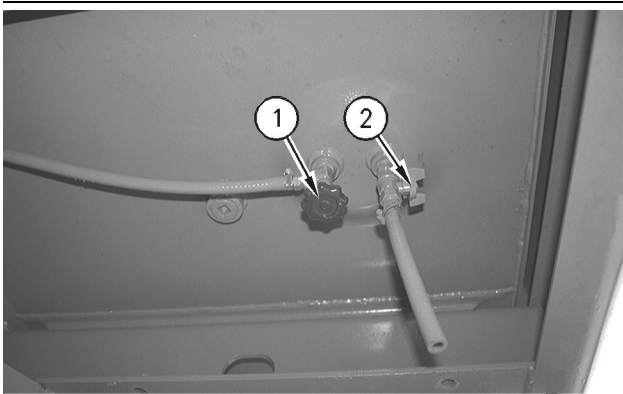


Illustration 169

g00274925

The Fuel Shutoff and the Fuel Tank Drain Valves are located underneath the fuel tank.

Fuel Shutoff Valve (1) – To shut off the fuel supply, turn fuel shutoff valve (1) clockwise. To turn on the fuel supply, turn fuel shutoff valve (1) counterclockwise.

Fuel Tank Drain Valve (2) – To drain the water and sediment from the fuel tank, turn fuel drain valve (2) counterclockwise. To close fuel tank drain valve (2), turn the drain valve clockwise.

Note: For more detailed information that pertains to draining the water and sediment from the fuel tank, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Fuel Tank Water and Sediment - Drain”.

Forest Machine

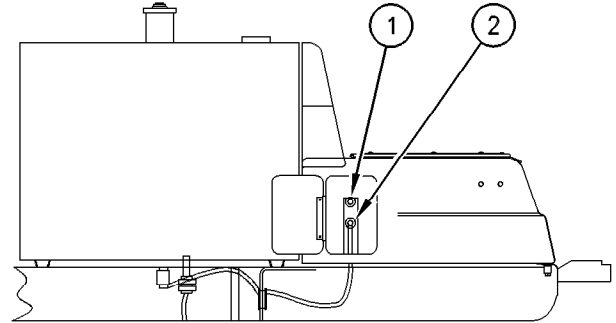


Illustration 170

g00104621

Open the access panel on the right side of the storage box in order to access the controls for the Fuel Tank Drain Valve and the Fuel Shutoff Valve.



Fuel Tank Drain Valve OPEN – To drain the water and sediment from the fuel tank,

pull handle (1).



Fuel Tank Drain Valve CLOSED – To shut off the fuel drain valve, push in handle (1).

Note: For more detailed information that pertains to draining the water and sediment from the fuel tank, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Fuel Tank Water and Sediment - Drain”.



Fuel Shutoff Valve CLOSED – To shut off the fuel supply, pull handle (2).



Fuel Shutoff Valve OPEN – To turn on the fuel supply, push in handle (2).

i01289886

Hydraulic Tank Shutoff Valve (If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 1329

The hydraulic tank shutoff valve shuts off the hydraulic oil supply between the hydraulic tank and the pumps. This allows the pumps to be worked on without draining the hydraulic tank.

Note: The engine will not start if the hydraulic tank shutoff valve is closed.

OPEN (1) – Move shutoff valve (1) upward in order to allow hydraulic oil to flow to the pumps. The engine will be able to be started now.

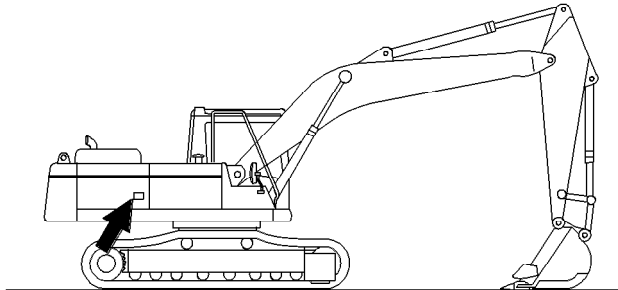


Illustration 171

g00101449

To access the hydraulic tank shutoff valves, open the access door that is located on the right side of the machine. The hydraulic tank shutoff valves are on the right side of the compartment near the bottom of the hydraulic tank.

The machine may be equipped with either 1 or 2 valves. If either of the valves is in the CLOSED position, the engine will not start. The engine will not start in order to ensure that the hydraulic pump has a sufficient supply of hydraulic oil for operation.

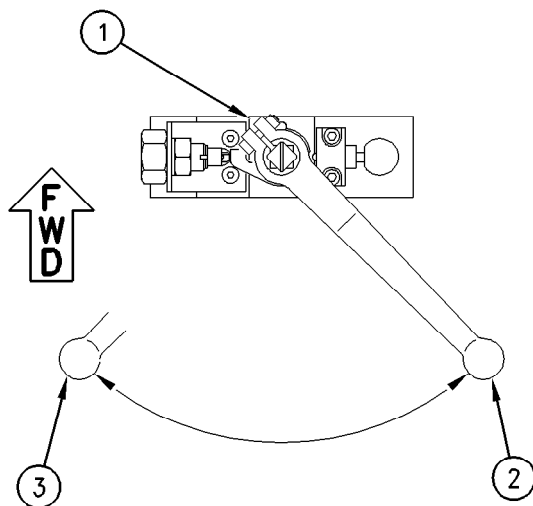


Illustration 172

g00683644

Typical valve

- (1) Hydraulic tank shutoff valve
- (2) OPEN position
- (3) CLOSED position

CLOSED (2) – Move shutoff valve (1) downward in order to shut off the flow of hydraulic oil to the pumps.

Engine Starting

i01955404

Engine Starting

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

NOTICE

Key must be in run position with engine running to maintain electrical and hydraulic functions and prevent serious machine damage.

If the engine does not start, return the key to OFF before returning it to START.

Do not crank the engine for more than 30 seconds. Allow the starter to cool for two minutes before cranking again.

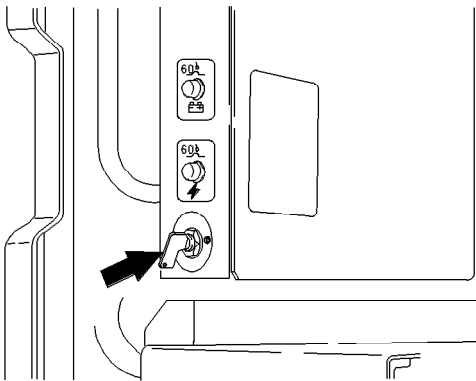


Illustration 173

g00101399

1. Insert the disconnect switch key into the battery disconnect switch. Turn the battery disconnect switch to the ON position.

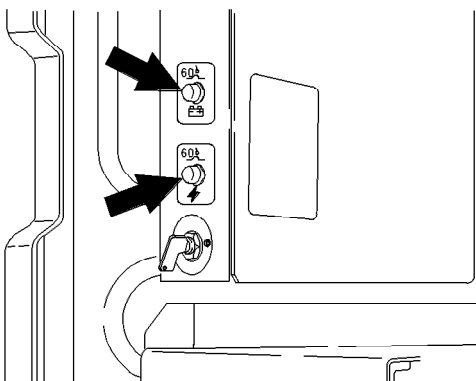


Illustration 174

g00101400

2. Make sure that the reset button for the circuit breaker remains depressed.

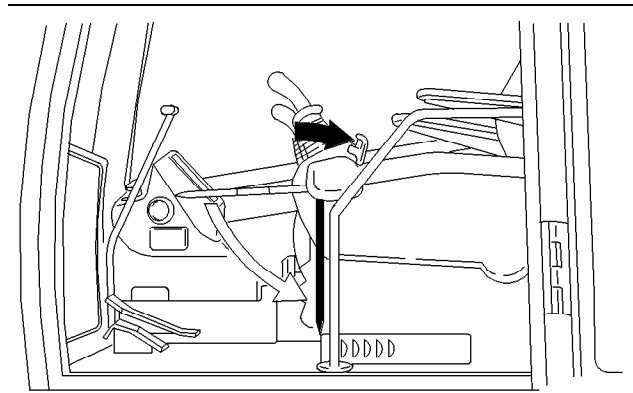


Illustration 175

g00107416

3. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.

This machine is equipped with an engine neutral start system. The system only allows the engine to start when the hydraulic lockout control is in the LOCKED position.

4. Move the implement control levers to the HOLD position.

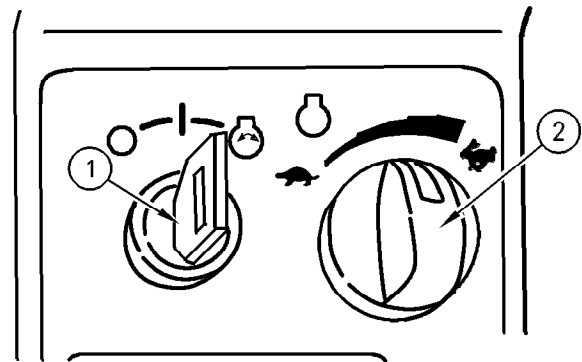


Illustration 176

g00103355

- (1) Engine Start Switch. (2) Engine Speed Dial.

5. Turn engine start switch (1) to the ON position.

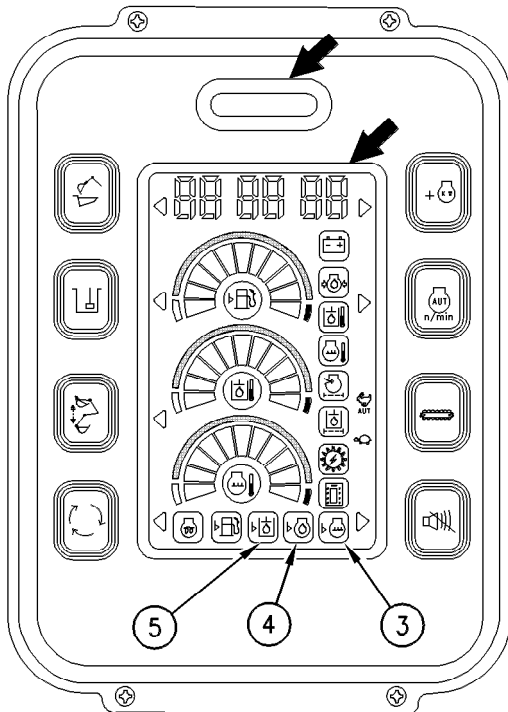


Illustration 177

g00101408

(3) Coolant Level. (4) Engine Oil Level. (5) Hydraulic Oil Level.

6. All of the indicators on the monitor panel should be activated for approximately 1.5 seconds and the action alarm should sound for one second. If any of the indicators are not activated or if the action alarm does not sound, check the electrical system. Make any necessary repairs before you start the engine.

If the starter switch is held in the ON position for 2 seconds or more, the prestart monitoring function will be activated. If the fluid level of the engine coolant, the engine oil, or the hydraulic oil is below the specified level, indicator (3), (4), or (5) will come on.

If the fluid level is too low, add the corresponding fluid to the specified level. Add the fluid before you start the engine.

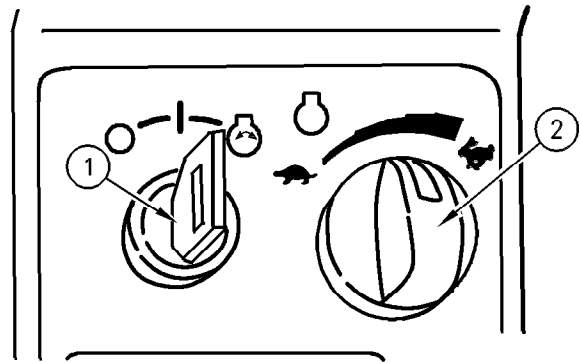


Illustration 178

g00103355

(1) Engine Start Switch. (2) Engine Speed Dial.

7. Turn engine speed dial (2) to medium speed position "5" or medium speed position "6" .
8. Turn engine start switch (1) to the START position.
9. Release the engine start switch key after the engine starts.

For temperatures above 0°C (32°F), the engine of this machine is designed to start without starting aids. For temperatures below 0°C (32°F), starting aids are available.

i01955416

Engine Starting with Ether Starting Aid (If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 1456

The machine can start the engine in areas with temperatures as low as -32°C (-25.6°F) if the machine is equipped with the ether starting aid.

NOTICE

Inject starting aid (ether), only while cranking the engine.

Use sparingly, excessive ether without cranking can cause piston and ring damage.

Wait approximately two seconds before injecting again.

Use ether for cold starting purposes only.

After every 30 seconds of engine cranking, allow two minutes for starting motor to cool before cranking again.

Operation Section
If Equipped

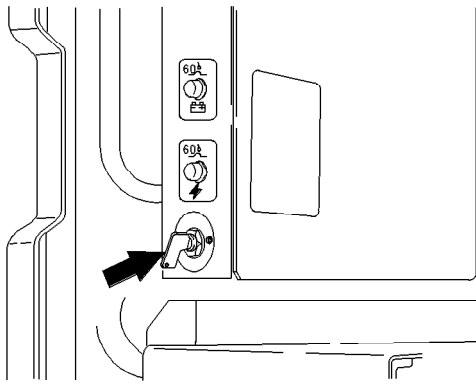


Illustration 179

g00101399

1. Insert the disconnect switch key into the battery disconnect switch. Turn the battery disconnect switch to the ON position.

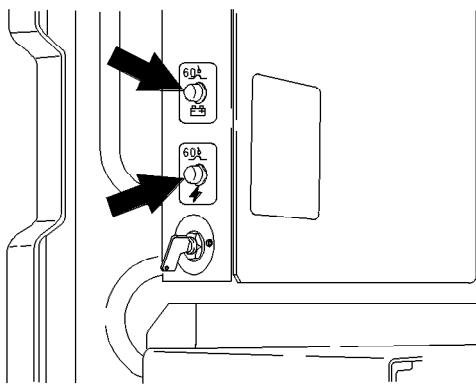


Illustration 180

g00101400

2. Make sure that the reset button for the circuit breaker remains depressed.

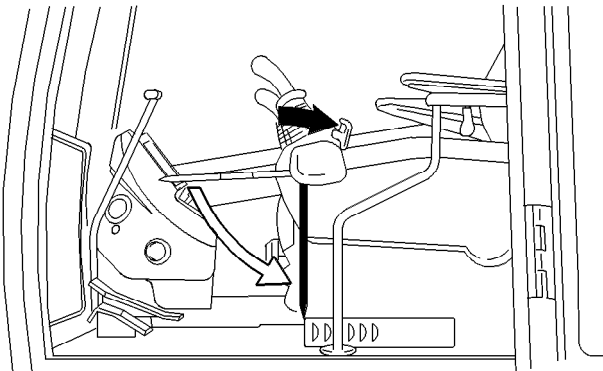


Illustration 181

g00292499

3. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.

This machine is equipped with an engine neutral start system. The system only allows the engine to start when the hydraulic lockout control is in the LOCKED position.

4. Move the implement control levers to the HOLD position.

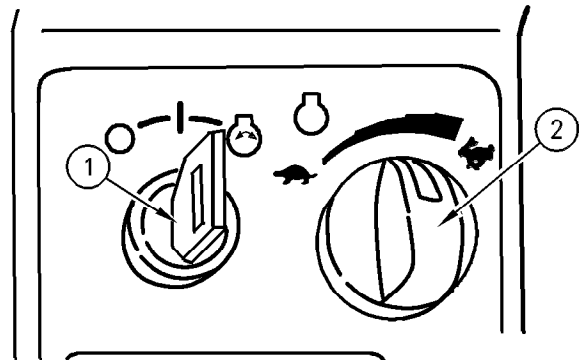


Illustration 182

g00103355

5. Turn engine start switch (1) to the ON position.

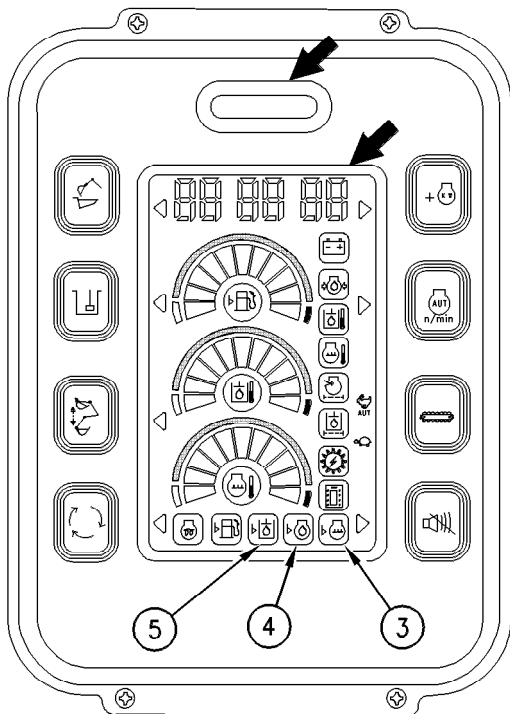


Illustration 183

g00101408

6. All of the indicators on the monitor panel should be activated for approximately 1.5 seconds and the action alarm should sound for one second. If any of the indicators are not activated or if the action alarm does not sound, check the electrical system. Make any necessary repairs before you start the engine.

If the starter switch is held in the ON position for 2 seconds or more, the prestart monitoring function will be activated. The indicators for engine oil level (3), coolant level (4), or hydraulic oil level (5) will come on if the corresponding fluid level is too low.

If the fluid level is too low, add the corresponding fluid to the specified level. Add the fluid before you start the engine.

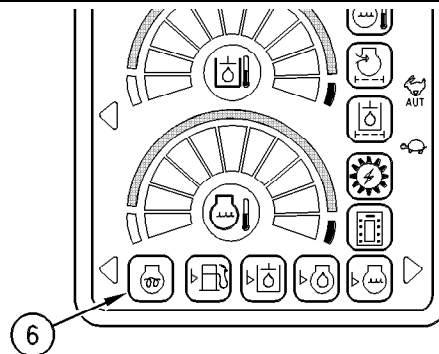


Illustration 184

g00101409

7. Indicator (6) should not come on. If the indicator comes on, this shows that the temperature of the engine coolant is too low, and the engine cannot start smoothly.

Note: If the temperature of the engine coolant is low, the indicator will come on. Activate the air inlet heater in order to start the engine easily. To activate the air inlet heater, the starter switch must be in the ON position. Start the engine after the indicator goes off.

8. Turn engine speed dial (2) to position "1" .

9. Turn engine start switch (1) to the START position.

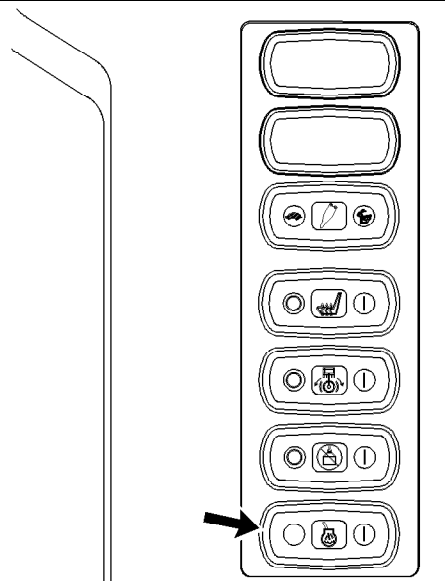


Illustration 185

g00298878

10. Push the right side of the ether starting aid switch and release the switch.

Operation Section
Engine and Machine Warm-Up

11. Operate the ether starting aid switch at intervals of two seconds while you crank the engine. Continue this procedure until the engine starts and the engine is running smoothly.
12. Release the engine start switch key when the engine starts.

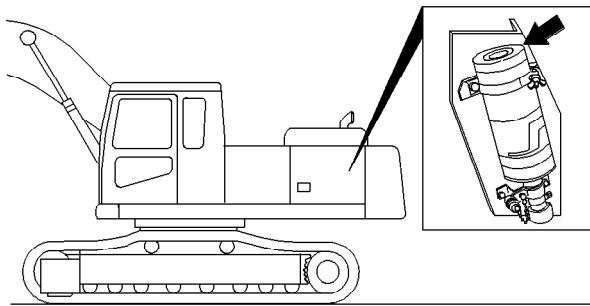


Illustration 186

g00101442

The ether starting aid cylinder or the container is in the radiator compartment. For more information, see Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Ether Starting Aid Cylinder - Replace".

If you are starting the engine in temperatures below -18°C (0°F), the use of optional cold weather starting aids is recommended. A coolant heater, a fuel heater, a jacket water heater, or extra battery capacity may be required.

If you are starting the engine in temperatures below -23°C (-10°F), consult your Caterpillar dealer. Also see Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Cold Weather Recommendations", which is available from your Caterpillar dealer.

i01955424

Engine and Machine Warm-Up

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

NOTICE

Keep the engine speed slow until the indicator light for the engine oil pressure goes out.

If the light does not go out within ten seconds, stop the engine and investigate the cause before starting the engine again. Failure to correct the problem can cause engine damage.

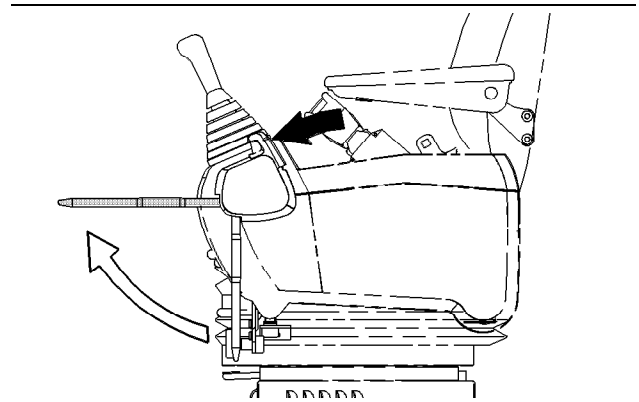


Illustration 187

g00536688

Note: The hydraulic lockout control must be in the UNLOCKED position before the hydraulic controls will function.

1. Allow the engine to warm up at low idle for at least five minutes. Engage the implement controls and disengage the implement controls. This will speed up the warm-up of the hydraulic components.

When you idle the machine for warm-up, observe the following recommendations:

- If the temperature is greater than 0°C (32°F), warm up the engine for approximately 15 minutes.
- If the temperature is less than 0°C (32°F), warm up the engine for approximately 30 minutes.
- If the temperature is less than -18°C (0°F) or if hydraulic functions are sluggish, additional time may be required.

2. To warm up the hydraulic oil, turn the engine speed dial to the medium engine speed. Run the engine for approximately five minutes and move the joystick intermittently from the BUCKET DUMP position to the HOLD position.
3. Turn the engine speed dial to the maximum engine speed and repeat Step 2.

This allows the oil to attain relief pressure, which causes the oil to warm up more rapidly.
4. Cycle all controls in order to circulate warm oil through all hydraulic cylinders and through all hydraulic lines.
5. Observe the gauges and the indicators frequently during the operation.

Operation

i01954582

Operation Information

SMCS Code: 7000

Note: Operating Temperature Range for the Machine The machine must function satisfactorily in the anticipated ambient temperature limits that are encountered during operation. The standard machine configuration is intended for use within an ambient temperature range of $-18\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ ($0\text{ }^{\circ}\text{F}$) to $43\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ ($109\text{ }^{\circ}\text{F}$). Special configurations for different ambient temperatures may be available. Consult your Caterpillar dealer for additional information on special configurations of your machine.

Make sure that no personnel are on the machine or near the machine in order to prevent any personal injury. Keep the machine under control at all times in order to prevent injury.

Reduce the engine speed when you maneuver the machine in tight quarters and when you drive over an incline.

Select the necessary travel speed range before you drive downgrade. Do not change the travel speed range while you drive downhill.

Use the same travel speed on a downgrade and on an upgrade.

When you travel for any distance, keep the stick inward and carry the boom in a low position.

When you drive up a steep grade, keep the boom as close to the ground as possible.

When you travel uphill or you travel downhill, keep the boom on the uphill side of the machine.

1. Adjust the operator seat.
2. Fasten the seat belt.

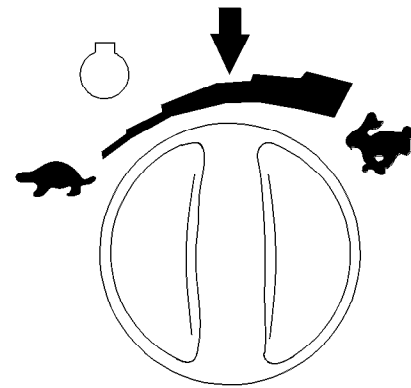


Illustration 188

g00103398

3. Turn the engine speed dial to the operating range.
4. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the UNLOCKED position.

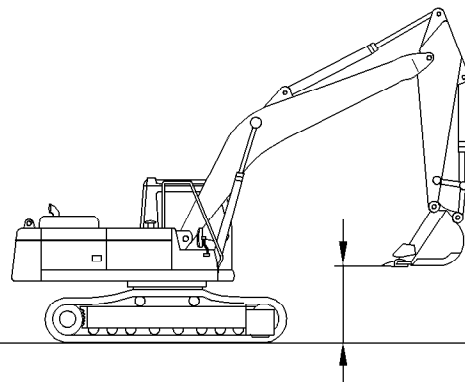


Illustration 189

g00101463

5. Raise the boom enough in order to provide sufficient ground clearance.

i00117458

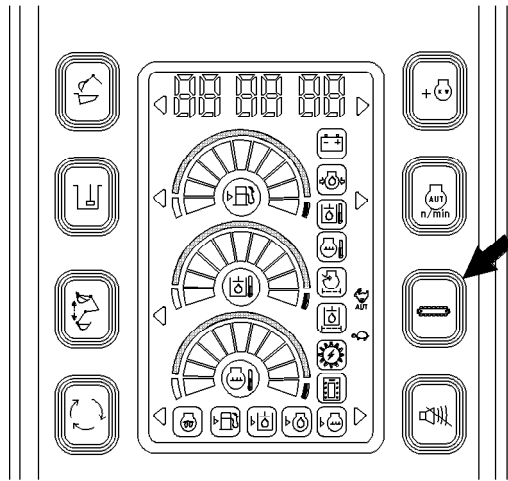


Illustration 190

g00101464

6. Select the desired travel speed by operating the travel speed control switch.
7. Make sure that the position of the upper structure and of the undercarriage is known before you move the machine. The drive sprockets should be at the rear of the machine.

Note: The directional steering controls will operate normally if the drive sprockets are at the rear of the machine and the idlers are at the front of the machine and under the cab. When the sprockets are under the cab, the travel controls will operate backward.

8. Turn the engine speed dial in order to increase the engine speed (rpm) to the desired speed.
9. Push both travel levers forward at the same time in order to travel forward. If both travel levers are pushed farther, the travel speed at the selected engine speed (rpm) will be faster.

Note: If the machine does not operate or if the machine does not travel in a straight line, consult your Caterpillar dealer.

10. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Travel Control" for information about spot turning and about pivot turns.
11. When you make turns in soft material, travel in a forward direction occasionally in order to clear the tracks.
12. Slowly move both of the travel levers or both of the travel pedals to the CENTER position in order to stop the machine.

Changing Direction and Speed

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Directional changes at full engine speed are possible. However, decelerating is recommended for operator comfort. Decelerating will also help to achieve the maximum service life of the machine components.

If the travel alarm does not sound, consult your Caterpillar dealer.

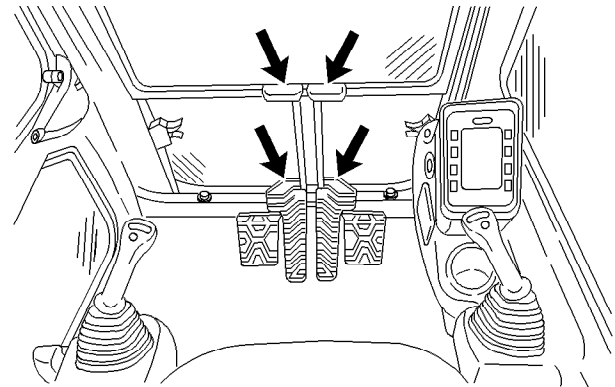


Illustration 191

g00107517

1. Slowly move both of the travel levers or both of the travel pedals toward the rear until the STOP position is reached and the machine stops.
2. Then, move both of the travel levers or both of the travel pedals rearward from the STOP position. If you move the travel levers or the travel pedals farther toward the rear, the travel speed at the selected engine speed will be faster.
3. Slowly move both of the travel levers or both of the travel pedals to the STOP position in order to stop the machine.

i00059294

Frozen Ground Conditions

SMCS Code: 7000

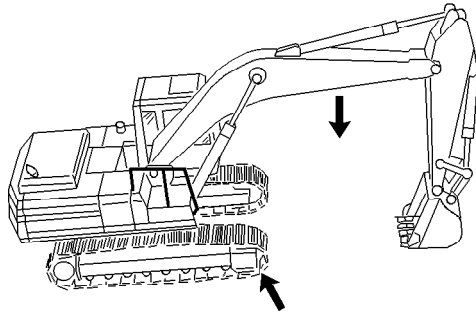


Illustration 192

g00101468

To free the tracks from frozen ground, swing the boom to the front of the machine. Use boom down pressure to free the idler end of the machine.

Swing the boom to the rear of the machine. Use boom down pressure to free the sprocket end of the machine.

i02018465

Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped

SMCS Code: 7000

To lower the boom, turn the engine start switch to the ON position and place the hydraulic lockout control in the UNLOCKED position. Move the joystick to the BOOM LOWER position. If the accumulator is still charged, the boom will lower.

If the boom does not lower, the accumulator is empty. Use one of the following methods to lower the boom.

Machine without a Boom Lowering Control Valve

WARNING

Be sure no one is under or near the implements before manually lowering the boom. Keep all personnel away from the boom drop area when lowering the boom with the engine stopped in order to avoid possible personal injury

When you must manually lower the boom due to engine shutdown, use the following procedure.

Note: Keep all personnel away from the boom when you are lowering the boom.

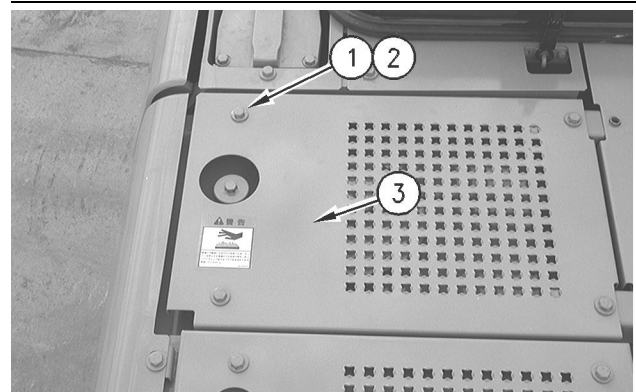


Illustration 193

g00101544

1. Remove four bolts (1), four washers (2), and the cover (3) from the top of the hydraulic tank.

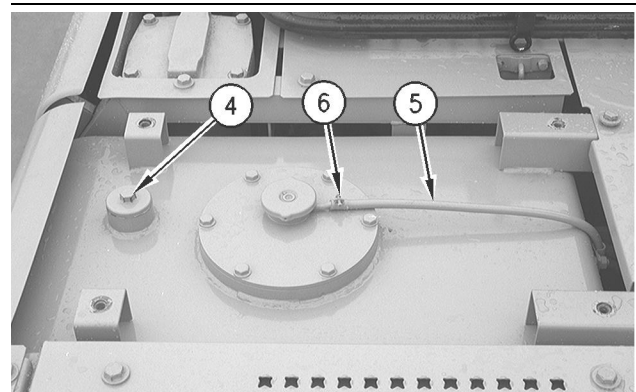


Illustration 194

g00101546

2. Slowly loosen fill/vent plug (4) on the top of the hydraulic tank until internal pressure in the hydraulic tank has been completely relieved. Remove fill/vent plug (4).
3. Loosen clamp (6) and disconnect hose (5) from the side of the hydraulic tank.

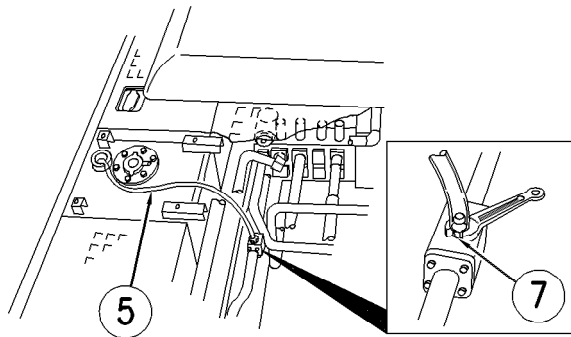


Illustration 195

g00101548

4. Connect an end of hose (5) to screw (7). Put the other end of hose (5) into the filler plug opening.
5. Slowly loosen screw (7) by a maximum of 1/2 turn. This allows the hydraulic oil in the boom circuit to drain into the hydraulic tank. The boom will now start to lower.
6. Make sure that the work tool has lowered all the way to the ground. Tighten screw (7) to a torque of $13 \pm 2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$ ($9 \pm 1 \text{ lb ft}$).
7. Disconnect hose (5) from screw (7). Do not allow the oil that is contained in hose (5) to spill.
8. Connect hose (5) to the original position on the hydraulic tank and install fill/vent plug (4) securely.

After completion of the manual boom lowering, make necessary repairs before you operate the machine again.

Machine with a Boom Lowering Control Valve

WARNING

Boom load may cause cylinder oil pressure to reach relief pressure of the boom lowering control device when the boom is supported by one cylinder. Boom can lower suddenly.

Be sure no one is under or near the implements before manually lowering the boom.

Keep all personnel away from the boom drop area when lowering the boom with the engine stopped.

If the engine is shut down or the hydraulic system is disabled, the operator can still lower the boom. Use the following procedure if the machine is equipped with a boom lowering control valve.

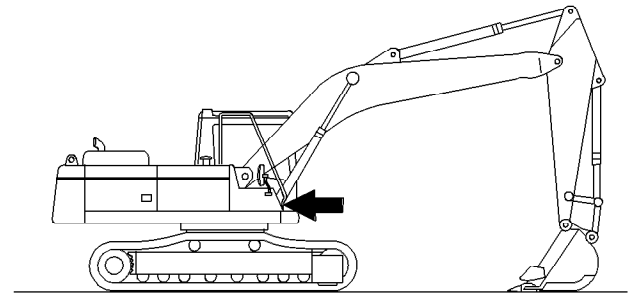


Illustration 196

g00101574

The boom lowering control valve is at the back of the base of the boom. The boom lowering control valve allows the operator to manually lower the boom if the engine is stopped. The boom lowering control valve also ensures that the boom does not fall suddenly if there is an oil leak in the hydraulic line of the boom.

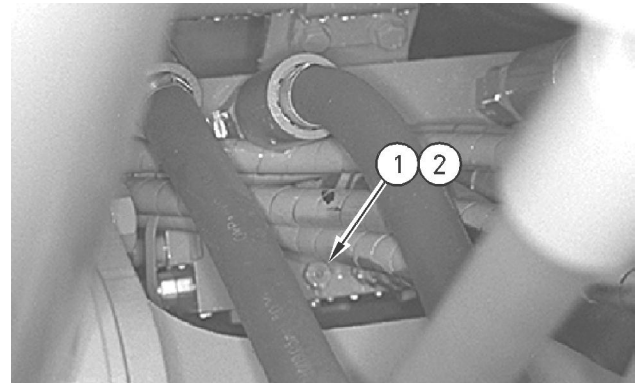


Illustration 197

g00101604

1. Loosen locknut (1).
2. Slowly turn check valve (2) counterclockwise until the check valve stops. The boom will lower to the ground.
3. Make sure that the work tool has been completely lowered onto the ground. Turn check valve (2) to the CLOSED position.
4. Tighten locknut (1) to a torque of $55 \pm 10 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$ ($41 \pm 7 \text{ lb ft}$).
5. Before you begin operating the machine, make any necessary repairs.

For additional information, consult your Caterpillar dealer.

Operating Techniques

i05125989

Operating Technique Information

SMCS Code: 7000

WARNING

Know the maximum height and the maximum reach of your machine. Serious injury or death by electrocution can occur if the machine or the work tools are not kept a safe distance from electrical power lines. Keep a distance of at least 3000 mm (118 inch) plus an additional 10 mm (0.4 inch) for each 1000 volts over 50000 volts.

For safety, one of the following may require a greater distance:

- Local codes
- State codes
- Requirements of the job site

NOTICE

When swinging into a ditch, do not use the ditch to stop the swinging motion. Inspect the machine for damage if the boom is swung into a bank or an object.

Repeated stopping by an object can cause structural damage if the boom is swung into a bank or an object.

With certain boom-stick-bucket combinations, the bucket or worktool can hit the cab and/or the front structure of the machine. Always check for interference when first operating a new bucket or a new work tool. Keep the bucket or work tool away from the cab and away from the front structure during operation.

Whenever the tracks of the machine raise off the ground while digging, lower the machine back to the ground smoothly. **DO NOT DROP OR CATCH IT WITH THE HYDRAULICS.** Damage to the machine can result.

With certain combinations of work tools, the third pedal can have different functions. Always check the function of the third pedal before you use the third pedal.

Know the location of any buried cables. Mark the locations clearly before you dig.

Consult your Caterpillar dealer for special work tool tips that are available for use in severe applications.

Move the machine whenever the position for operating the machine is not efficient. The machine can be moved forward or backward during the operating cycle.

When you operate the machine in close places, utilize the bucket or the other work tool in order to perform the following functions:

- Pushing the machine
- Pulling the machine
- Lifting the tracks

Use a comfortable travel speed while you operate the machine.

Operating efficiency can be increased by using more than one machine control to perform a task.

Never swing a load over a truck cab or workers.

Position the truck so that material can be loaded from the rear of the truck or from the side of the truck. Load the truck evenly so that the rear axles are not overloaded.

An oversize bucket or a bucket that is equipped with side cutters should not be used in rocky material. These types of buckets slow down the cycle. Damage to the bucket and to other machine components could result.

Restricted Operation

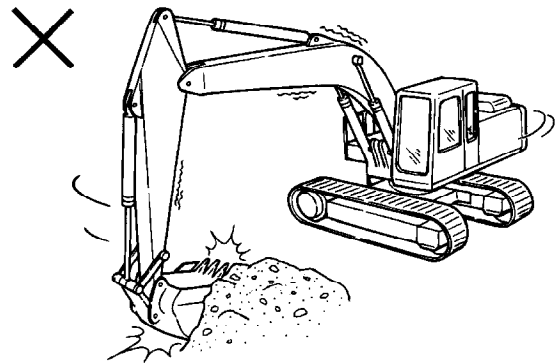


Illustration 198

g00529436

Do not use the swing force to perform the following operations:

- Soil compaction
- Ground breaking
- Demolition

Do not swing the machine while the bucket tips are in the soil.

Operation Section
Operating Technique Information

These operations will damage the boom, the stick, and the work tool and the operations will reduce the life of the equipment.

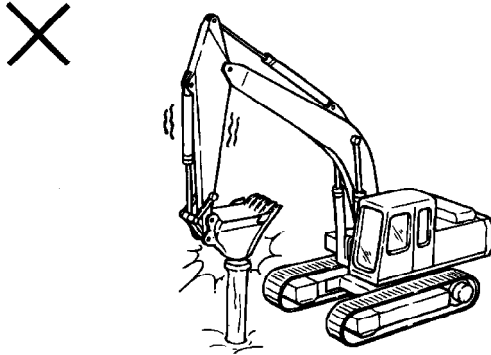


Illustration 199

g00529457

Do not use the dropping force of the bucket or work tool as a hammer. This will bring excessive force on the rear of the machine. Possible damage to the machine could result.

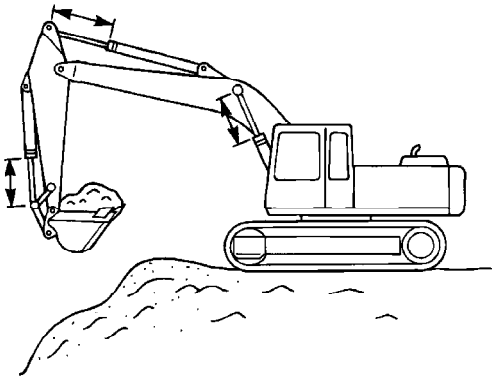


Illustration 200

g00529458

If the cylinder is operated at the end of the stroke during operations, excessive force will occur on the stopper on the inside of the cylinder. This will reduce the life of the cylinder and structures. To avoid this problem, always leave a small margin of play when the cylinder is operated.

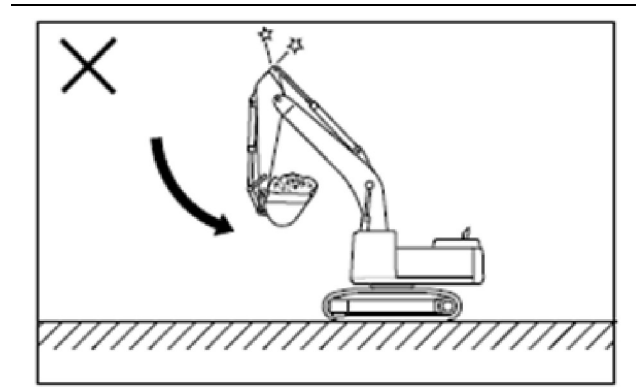


Illustration 201

g03286378

If the stick IN function is operated at full speed with a fully loaded bucket or heavy work tool attachment to the end of the cylinder stroke, excessive force will occur inside the stick cylinder. This action will reduce the life of the stick cylinder. To avoid this problem, always operate a stick IN function with moderate speed towards the end of cylinder stroke.

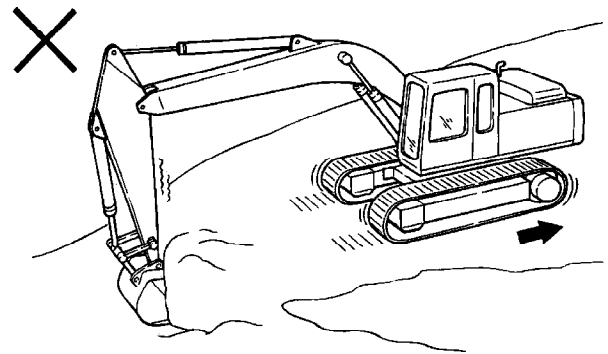


Illustration 202

g00529459

While the bucket is in the ground, do not use the travel force for any excavation. This operation will cause excessive force on the rear of the machine.

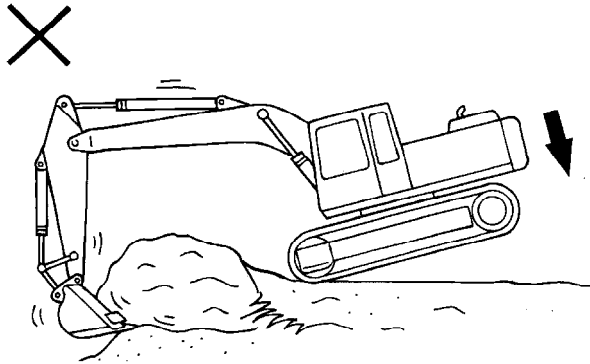


Illustration 203

g00529460

Do not use the dropping force of the rear of the machine for excavation. This operation will damage the machine.

Operating Precaution

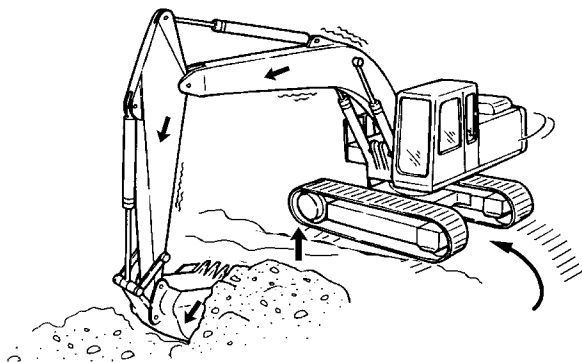


Illustration 204

g01250228

NOTICE

Do not allow the machine to swing from the force of traveling when you use the bucket, the stick, or the boom to assist in travel. If the force from traveling causes the machine to swing, damage may occur to the swing motor and to the swing drive.

Do not use the force of the bucket, the stick, or the boom to assist in turning the machine while the machine is traveling. This technique is referred to as "jump steering". This technique will damage the swing motor and the swing brake.

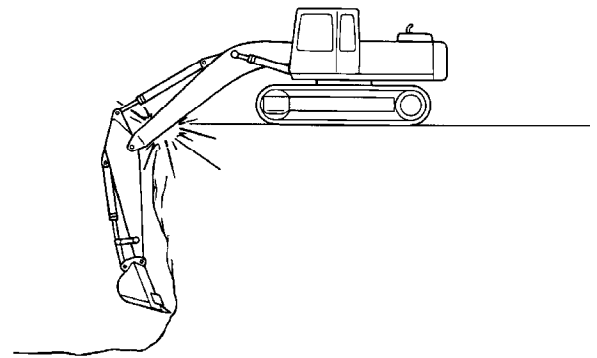


Illustration 205

g00529462

When deep holes are dug, do not lower the boom so that the bottom side of the boom touches the ground.

When deep holes are dug, do not allow the boom to interfere with the tracks.

i05150572

Boom, Stick and Bucket Operation

SMCS Code: 7000

Digging

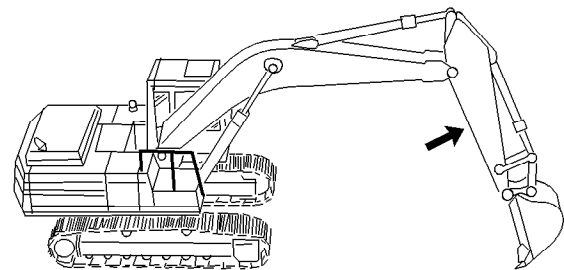


Illustration 206

g00101523

1. Position the stick at a 70 degree angle to the ground.

Operation Section
Boom, Stick and Bucket Operation

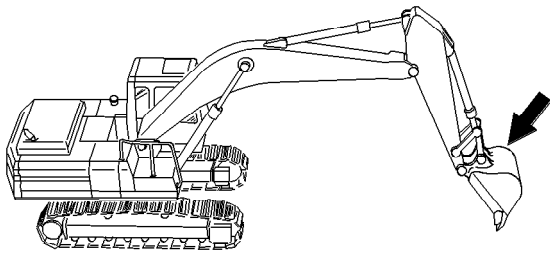


Illustration 207

g00101525

- Position the bucket cutting edge at a 120 degree angle to the ground. Maximum breakout force can now be exerted with the bucket.

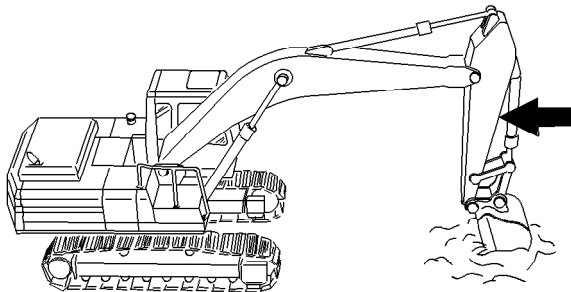


Illustration 208

g00101526

- Move the stick toward the cab and keep the bucket parallel to the ground.

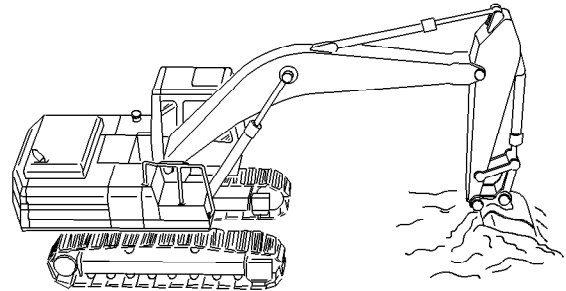


Illustration 209

g00101527

- If the stick stops due to the load, raise the boom and/or perform a curl in order to adjust the depth of the cut.
- To apply the greatest force at the cutting edge, decrease the down pressure as you move the stick toward the cab.
- Maintain a bucket attitude that ensures a continuous flow of material into the bucket.
- Continue the pass in a horizontal direction so that material peels into the bucket.

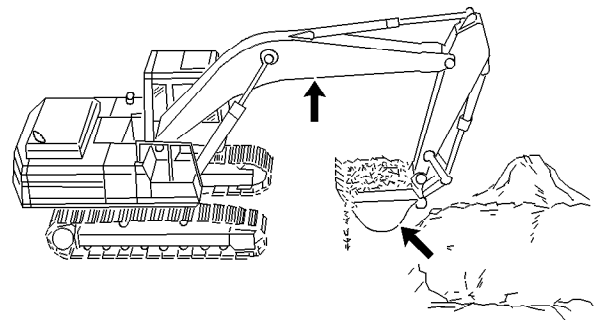


Illustration 210

g00101528

- Close the bucket and raise the boom when the pass has been completed.

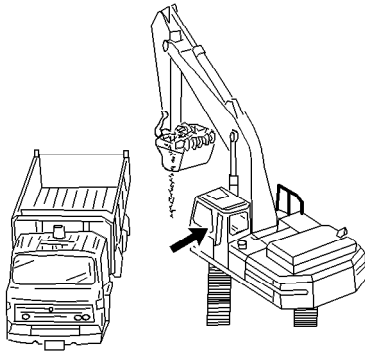


Illustration 211

g00101529

9. Engage the swing control when the bucket is clear of the excavation.

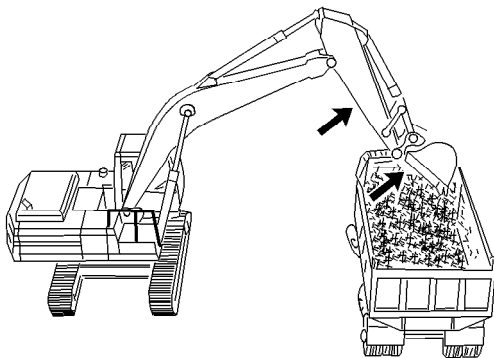


Illustration 212

g00101530

10. To dump a load, move the stick outward and open the bucket in a smooth motion.

Lifting Objects

WARNING

To prevent injury, do not exceed the rated load capacity of the machine. If the machine is not on level ground, load capacities will vary.

NOTICE

Damage to bucket cylinder, bucket or linkage could result if slings are placed incorrectly.

There may be local regulations and/or government regulations that govern the use of machines which lift heavy objects. Obey all local and government regulations.

If this machine is used to lift objects within an area that is controlled by the European Directive "2006/42/EC", the machine must be equipped with a boom lowering control valve, a stick lowering control valve, and an overload warning device.

Japan regulations require some machines to use a shovel crane configuration in order to lift certain objects.

Contact your Cat dealer for additional information.

Short slings will prevent excessive load swing.

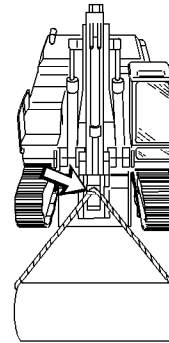


Illustration 213

g00101531

Use the lifting eye that is provided on the linkage to lift objects.

If the lifting eye is used, the connection must be made with a sling or with a shackle.

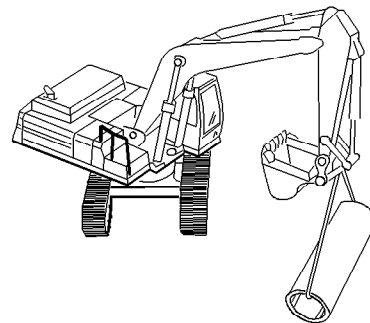


Illustration 214

g00101532

An unstable condition can exist if a load exceeds the machine load rating or if a heavy load is swung over an end or over a side.

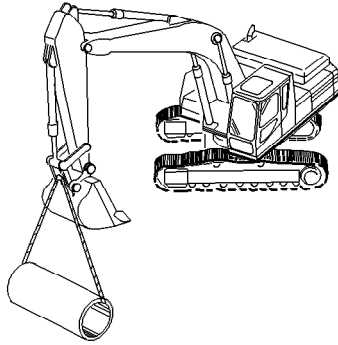


Illustration 215

g00101533

The most stable lifting position is over a corner of the machine.

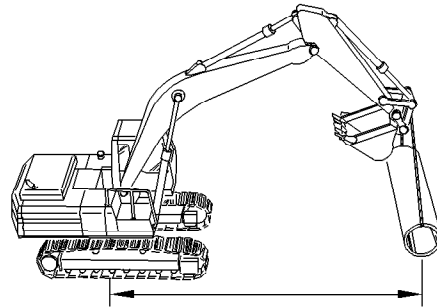


Illustration 217

g00101535

Lift capacity decreases as the distance from the swing centerline is increased.

Machines that are Equipped with a Long Reach Configuration

Machines with a long reach configuration require larger swing drift than standard machines when stopping, because inertial force in time of swing is large. Taking this into account, adjustments are made in timing for applying the swing brakes and speed of swinging.

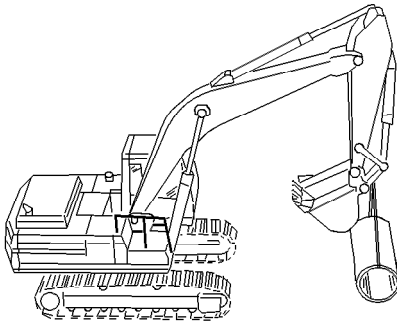


Illustration 216

g00101534

For the best stability, carry a load close to the machine and to the ground.

Machines with a long reach configuration could be damaged and stability of the machine would be adversely affected if a control was suddenly operated, because inertial force of work tool is large.

i00059374

Forest Machine Operation

SMCS Code: 7000

Log Loader (Heel Type)

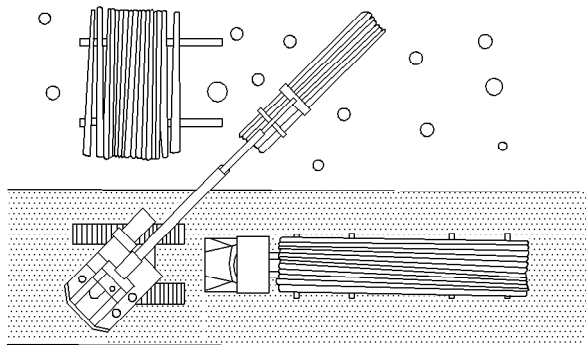


Illustration 218

g00101618

1. Position the machine near the bunched trees that need to be loaded. The machine should also be positioned perpendicular to the bunched trees that need to be loaded.
2. Position the truck behind the machine. The cab of the truck should be near the machine.
3. Turn the engine speed dial to the HIGH IDLE position.
4. Open the grapple. Lower the grapple far enough from the butt ends of the trees in order to have the butt ends of the trees rest on the heel of the implement when the load is raised. Close the grapple around the trees that need to be loaded. Do not overload the grapple. The arms of the grapple must close completely around the trees before lifting the trees.
5. Lift the load by using the boom function and the stick function. Keep the trees horizontal to the ground when you are lifting the trees. Swing the upper structure in order to bring the load over the trailer.
6. Lower the trees smoothly onto the trailer. Open the grapple slowly so that the trees will be released from the grapple. Raise the implement when the grapple is empty.

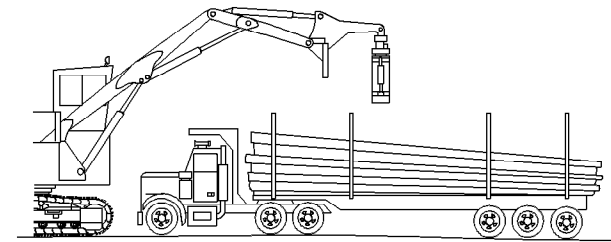


Illustration 219

g00101620

7. Repeat the loading cycle until the truck trailer is half loaded. The butt end of the trees should be near the cab of the truck.

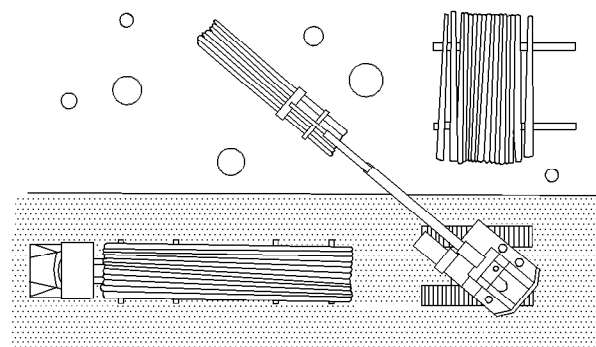


Illustration 220

g00101621

8. Reposition the truck in front of the machine in order to have the butt ends of the next trees at the end of the trailer.

9. Load the truck trailer until the trailer is full. The load should be as horizontal as possible.

Log Loader (Butt-N-Top)

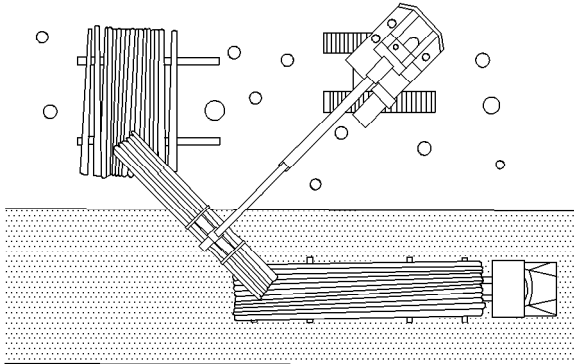


Illustration 221

g00104742

1. Position the machine parallel to the road. The machine should also be positioned so that the machine is facing the bunched trees that need to be loaded.
2. Position the truck in a convenient place that is as close as possible to the machine.
3. Turn the engine speed dial to the HIGH IDLE position.

NOTICE

During normal loading maneuvers and unloading maneuvers, keep the grapple leveler float control in FLOAT position to avoid structural damage to the grapple leveler. If it is necessary to index small loads correctly, the lever can be pushed to the LOCK position for the leveler to be controlled by the operator.

4. Open the grapple. Lower the open grapple at approximately 1/3 of the total tree's length from the butt ends. Close the grapple around the trees that need to be loaded. Do not overload the grapple. The grapple arms must completely close around the trees before lifting.
5. Lift the load by using the boom function and the stick function. Keep the load horizontal by using the two load stabilizers.
6. Swing the machine up to the trailer. Lower the trees smoothly onto the trailer. Open the grapple slowly in order to allow the trees out of the grapple. Raise the implement when the grapple is empty.

7. Repeat the loading cycle until the truck trailer is half loaded. The butt end of the trees should be near the cab of the truck.
8. Rotate the grapple so that the trees that are loaded next have the butts at the end of the trailer. This will equalize the load evenly on the trailer.
9. Load until the trailer is full. The load should be as horizontal as possible.

i02541201

Material Handler Operation

SMCS Code: 7000

WARNING

To prevent injury, do not exceed the rated load capacity of the machine. If the machine is not on level ground, load capacities will vary.

NOTICE

Damage to the work tool cylinder, work tool, or linkage could result if the slings are placed incorrectly.

Short slings will prevent excessive load swing.

Note: There may be local government regulations about the use of excavators for the lifting of heavy objects. Please observe those regulations.

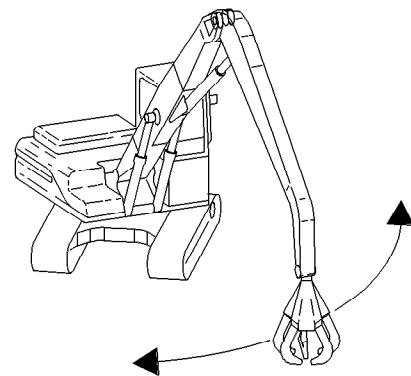


Illustration 222

g00130805

An unstable condition can exist if a load exceeds the machine load rating or if a heavy load is swung over an end or over a side.

i00072923

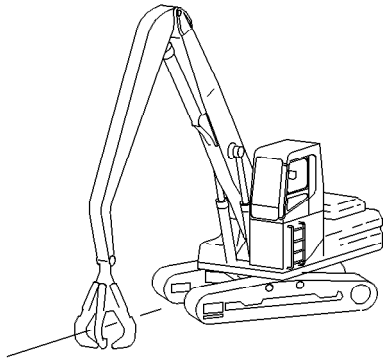


Illustration 223

g00130806

The most stable lifting position is over a corner of the machine.

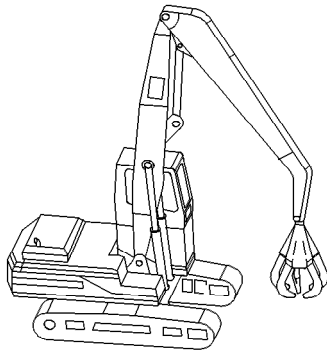


Illustration 224

g00130807

For the best stability, carry a load close to the machine and to the ground.

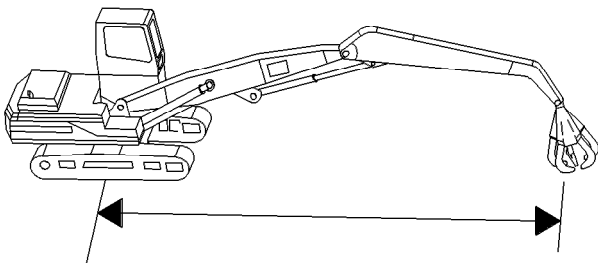


Illustration 225

g00130811

The lift capacity decreases as the distance from the swing centerline increases. Rotate the upper frame by 90 degrees relative to the undercarriage when the machine is working in a stationary application. This will evenly load the swing bearing.

Implement Changing

SMCS Code: 6522

Manual quick change couplers are equipped only on certain machines.

Implement Securing

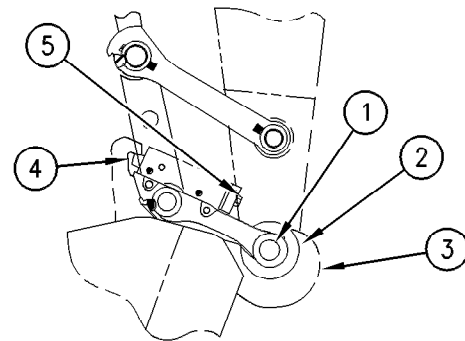


Illustration 226

g00101481

1. Move the implement control lever to the **STICK IN** position in order to move stick pin (1) into hook (3) on the implement. Make sure that two guide collars (2) are between the plates.
2. Use the **BUCKET CLOSE** position in order to extend the bucket cylinder until the implement starts to move. Move the implement control lever to the **BOOM RAISE** position in order to lift the boom slowly while you continue to extend the bucket cylinder. Lift the boom until the implement is hanging from the stick and retracted wedges (4) are pointing downward.
3. Move the hydraulic activation control lever to the **LOCKED** position.

- Turn screws (5) in order to extend wedges (4).
Make sure that the coupler is fully engaged.

Implement Releasing

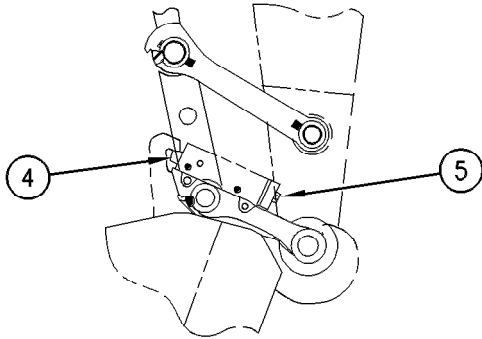


Illustration 227

g00101483

- Place the implement in a safe position before you disengage the coupler.
- Move the hydraulic activation control lever to the LOCKED position.
- Turn screws (5) in order to retract wedges (4).
- Move the hydraulic activation control lever to the UNLOCKED position.
- Use the BUCKET OPEN position to slowly retract the bucket cylinder. Make sure that the implement remains stationary and that the implement is properly positioned.

- After the coupler and the link are disengaged, slowly disengage the nose of the stick from the implement hook.

i03548680

Hammer Operation (If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 5705-WTL

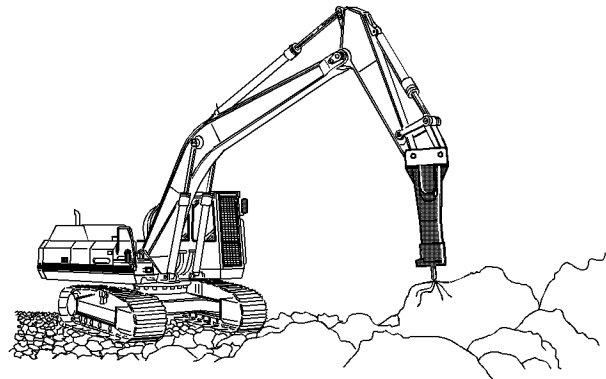


Illustration 228

g01876560

NOTICE

Use only a hydraulic hammer that is recommended by Caterpillar. The use of a hydraulic hammer that is not recommended by Caterpillar could damage your machine. Consult your Caterpillar dealer for information on recommended hydraulic hammers.

Only use the hydraulic hammer to break rocks, concrete, and other hard objects. Before you start hydraulic hammer operation, place the machine on a level, stable surface.

Before you start hydraulic hammer operation, close the front window. Caterpillar recommends the installation of a window guard on the front window for protection from flying debris.

NOTICE

In order to avoid structural damage to the host machine or the hydraulic hammer, comply with the following:

Do not attempt to break rocks or concrete by burying the hammer tool completely into the rocks or concrete.

Do not apply a prying force to the hammer tool in order to remove the hammer tool from the material.

Do not allow the hydraulic hammer to continuously operate at one location and for more than 15 seconds. Change the location of the hydraulic hammer and repeat the procedure. Failure to change the location of the hydraulic hammer could cause the hydraulic oil to overheat. Overheated hydraulic oil could cause damage to the accumulator.

Stop the hydraulic hammer immediately if the jumper lines are pulsating violently. This indicates that the accumulator nitrogen charge is lost. Consult your Caterpillar dealer for the necessary repair.

NOTICE

Do not use the dropping force of the hydraulic hammer to break rocks or other hard objects. This could cause structural damage to the machine.

Do not use the sides or back of the hydraulic hammer to move rocks or other hard objects. Doing this could cause damage not only to the hammer but to stick or boom cylinder.

Do not operate the hydraulic hammer with any of the cylinders fully retracted or extended. Doing this could cause structural damage to the machine, resulting in reduced machine life.

Do not use the hydraulic hammer to lift an object.

Do not operate the hydraulic hammer while the stick is vertical to the ground. This could allow the stick cylinder to vibrate excessively.

Operate the attachment control levers carefully in order to keep the hydraulic hammer's tool from hitting the boom.

Do not operate the hydraulic hammer under water unless the hydraulic hammer is properly equipped. Operating the hydraulic hammer under water could cause serious damage to the machine hydraulic system. Consult your Caterpillar dealer for information on underwater operation.

Do not operate the hydraulic hammer with the upper structure sideways to the undercarriage. Before you start hydraulic hammer operation, place the upper structure in the recommended positions that are shown in illustration 229. Any other operating positions could make the machine unstable. Any other operating positions could place excessive loads on the undercarriage.

Refer to the following for any additional questions about the operation and care of your Caterpillar hydraulic hammer: Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU7346, "Hydraulic Hammers", Operation and Maintenance Manual, HEPU9000, "Hydraulic Hammers" and Decal, SMEU7397, "Hammer Operation/Maintenance".

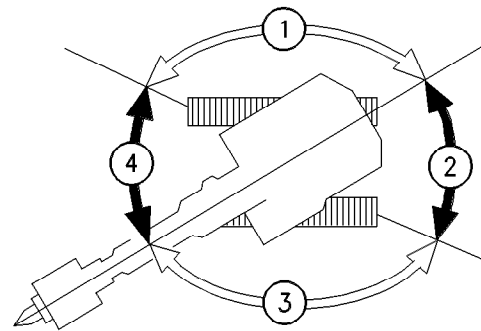


Illustration 229

g00101503

- (1) Incorrect working position
- (2) Correct working position
- (3) Incorrect working position
- (4) Correct working position

Parking

i02014194

Stopping the Machine

SMCS Code: 7000

NOTICE

Park on a level surface. If it is necessary to park on a grade, chock the tracks securely.

Note: The swing parking brake is automatically applied when the machine is stopped. The swing parking brake is released when the engine is running and the joystick controls are activated.

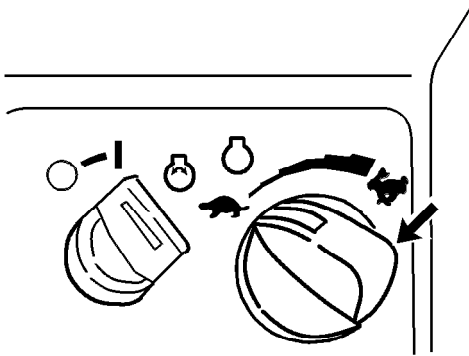


Illustration 230

g00101553

1. Turn the engine speed dial counterclockwise in order to reduce engine speed.

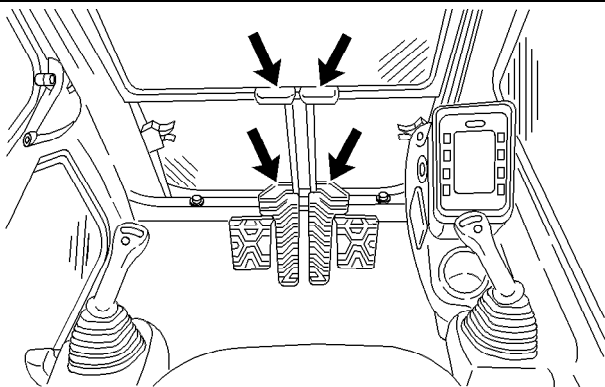


Illustration 231

g00107517

2. Release the travel levers and the travel pedals in order to stop the machine.
3. Lower the work tool to the ground. Apply a slight downward pressure.

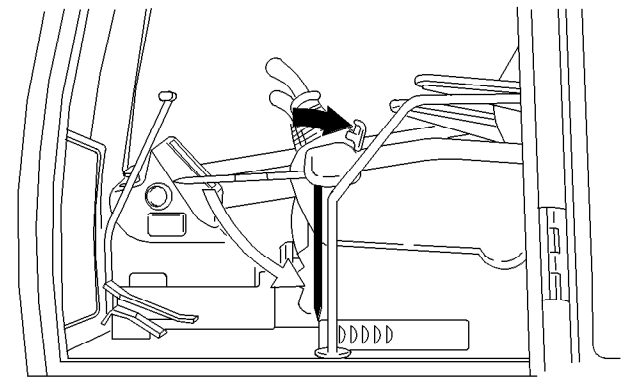


Illustration 232

g00107416

4. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.

i01871055

Freezing Conditions

SMCS Code: 7000

If freezing temperatures are expected, remove the mud and the dirt from each track roller frame. Park the machine on wood planks. Use the following procedure to clean each track roller frame.

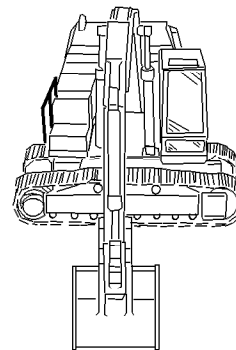


Illustration 233

g00101644

1. Position the boom over one side of the machine.
2. Use boom down pressure in order to lift the track on one side off the ground. Operate the track in the forward direction. Then operate the track in reverse. Continue this procedure until the maximum amount of material is thrown off the track.
3. Lower the track onto the wood planks.
4. Repeat the procedure for the other track.
5. Clean the area around the carrier rollers and around the track rollers.

- Lower the work tool onto a wood plank in order to prevent the work tool from touching the ground.

i00547283

i02015342

Stopping the Engine

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

NOTICE

Stopping the engine immediately after it has been working under load can result in overheating and accelerated wear of the engine components.

Refer to the following stopping procedure, to allow the engine to cool, and to prevent excessive temperatures in the turbocharger center housing, (if equipped) which could cause oil coking problems.

- Stop the machine and run the engine at low idle for five minutes.

NOTICE

Never turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position while the engine is running. Serious damage to the electrical system may result.

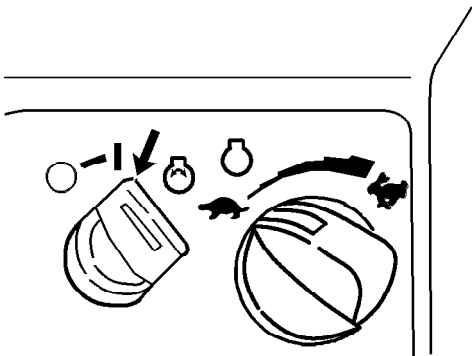


Illustration 234

g00101567

- Turn the engine start switch to the OFF position and remove the engine start switch key.

Leaving the Machine

SMCS Code: 7000

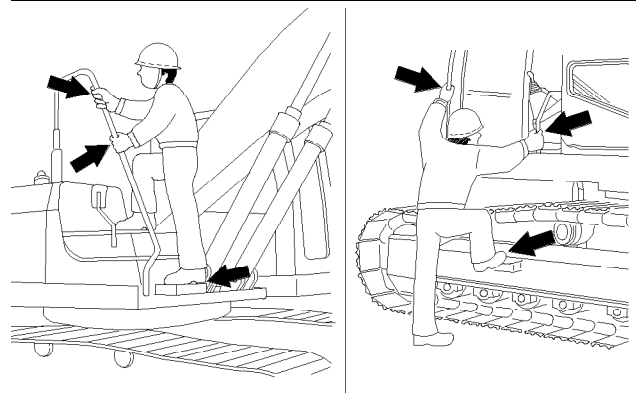


Illustration 235

g00103309

The above illustration shows an operator that is properly dismounting an excavator.



Illustration 236

g00109837

Dismounting points for a forest machine.

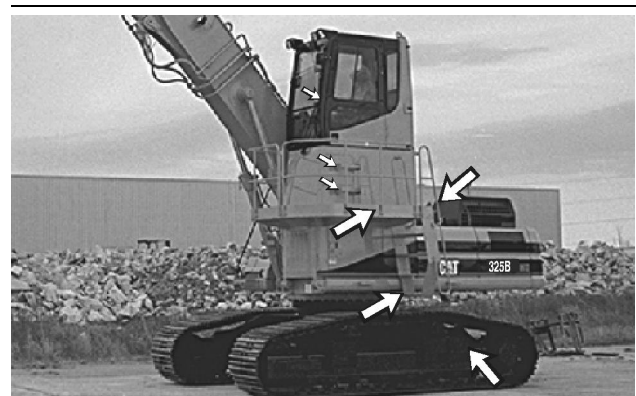


Illustration 237

g00275729

Dismounting points for a material handler.

Operation Section
Leaving the Machine

1. Use the steps and the handholds when you dismount. When you dismount, face the machine and use both hands. Be sure that you clean any debris from the steps.
2. Inspect the engine compartment for debris. Clean out any debris in order to avoid a fire hazard.
3. Remove all flammable debris from the front bottom guard through the access doors in order to reduce a fire hazard. Dispose of the debris properly.
4. When the machine is left for an extended period of one month or longer, turn the key for the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position. Remove the key. This will help to prevent a battery short circuit. Removing the key will also help to protect the battery from vandalism and from the current draw that is made by certain components.
5. Lock all vandalism covers and all compartments.

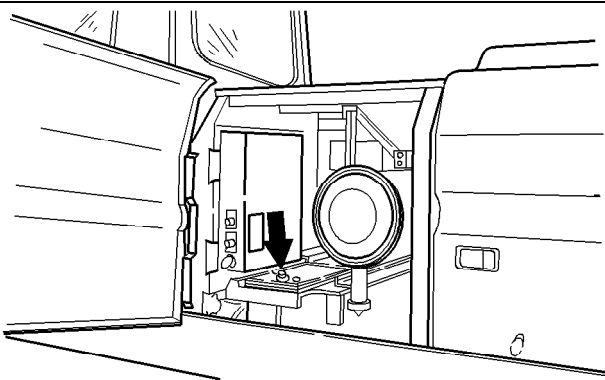


Illustration 238

g00101577

6. Remove the bolt that holds the vandalism guards in place. Remove the vandalism guards from the storage area.

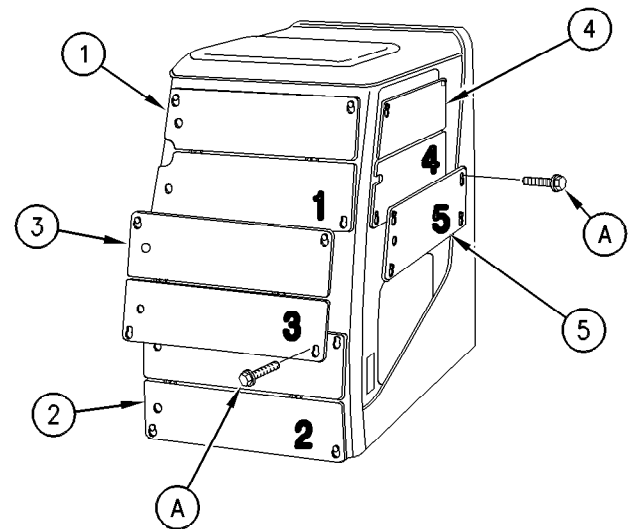


Illustration 239

g00101578

7. Install the vandalism guards on the front window and on the cab door. An identification number is stamped on each of the vandalism guards. Install the vandalism guards in the correct sequence. Use bolts (A) only for vandalism guards (3) and (5).

Storing Vandalism Guards

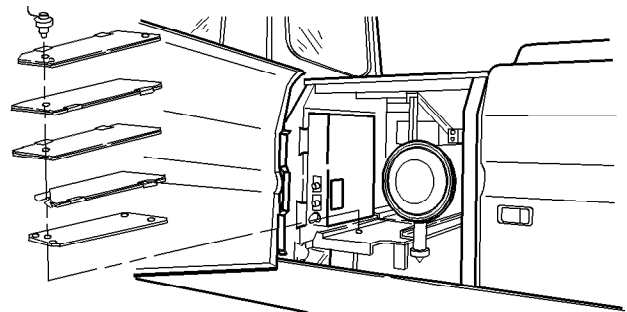


Illustration 240

g00101581

Note: When you are storing the vandalism guards, make sure that you place the guards in the storage area in sequential order, as shown. The vandalism guards will only fit in the storage area in this manner.

Transportation Information

i07200040

Shipping the Machine

SMCS Code: 7000; 7500

WARNING

Automatic Engine Speed Control (AEC) will increase engine speed automatically when you operate the control levers and/or travel pedals with AEC switch on.

When loading and unloading the machine from the truck or working in close quarters always turn AEC switch off to prevent any possibility of sudden movement of machine, which could result in serious injury or death.

Set the travel speed control switch to LOW before loading the machine. Never operate this switch when loading the machine on a trailer.

Investigate the travel route for overpass clearances. Make sure that there will be adequate clearance for the machine.

Remove ice, snow, or other slippery material from the loading dock and from the truck bed before you load the machine onto the transport machine. Removing ice, snow, or other slippery material will help to prevent the machine from slipping in transit.

Note: Obey all laws that govern the characteristics of a load (height, weight, width, and length). Observe all regulations that govern wide loads.

Choose the flattest ground when you load the machine or when you unload the machine.

1. Before you load the machine, chock the trailer wheels or the rail car wheels.
2. When you use loading ramps, make sure that the loading ramps have adequate length, adequate width, adequate strength, and an adequate slope.
3. Maintain the slope of the loading ramps within 15 degrees of the ground.
4. Position the machine so that the machine can drive straight up the loading ramps. The final drives should be toward the rear of the machine. Do not operate the control levers while the machine is on the loading ramps.
5. When you drive over the loading ramp joint areas, maintain the balance point of the machine.
6. Lower the work tool to the bed or to the floor of the transport machine.

7. To prevent rolling of the machine or sudden movement of the machine, perform the following items:

- Chock both tracks.
- Install sufficient tie-downs at several locations.
- Fasten wire cables.

NOTICE

Do not allow the chrome surface of the bucket cylinder rod to touch any part of the trailer. Damage to the rod can occur from impact with the trailer during transport.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Specifications".

Shipping a Machine that is not Completely Assembled

If the machine must be shipped when the boom, stick, or counterweight is not assembled on the machine, follow the instructions in Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Operation".

WARNING

The ROPS structural certification depends on the support of the boom, stick, and counterweight in the event of a machine tip over or a machine rollover incident.

When the machine needs to be moved without the boom, stick, or counterweight being installed, avoid any machine operations which could affect machine stability as a machine tip over or a machine rollover incident could result in serious injury or death.

The machine should be operated slowly on flat, stable ground or pavement by qualified operators.

i01961441

Securing the Machine

SMCS Code: 7000

Comply with any laws that govern the characteristics of a load (length, width, height, and weight).

NOTICE

Never transport the machine with the engine running. If the fine swing control (if equipped) is left ON with the engine running, the swing parking brake (if equipped) will stay disengaged.

Operation Section
Securing the Machine

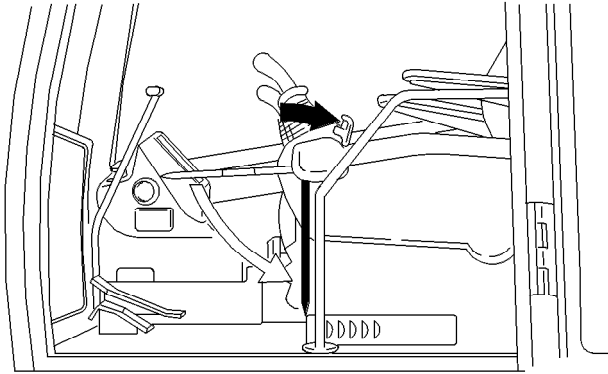


Illustration 241

g00107416

1. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.
2. Turn the engine start switch to the OFF position in order to stop the engine. Remove the engine start switch key.
3. Turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position and remove the disconnect switch key.
4. Remove the ether starting aid cylinder (if equipped). See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Ether Starting Aid Cylinder - Replace" for the removal procedure.
5. Lock the door and the access covers. Attach any vandalism protection.
6. Cover the exhaust opening.

NOTICE

Do not allow the turbocharger to rotate while the engine is not operating. Damage to the turbocharger can result.

Note: Before you remove the machine from the transport machine, remove the protective covering from the exhaust opening.

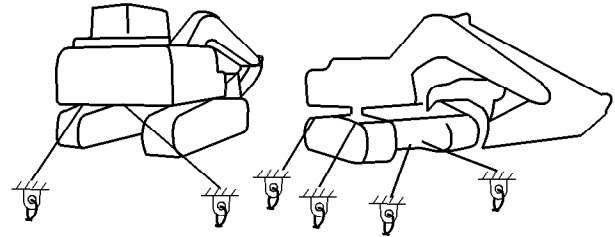


Illustration 242

g00101371

7. Chock the tracks and secure the machine with tie-downs. Make sure that you use the proper rated wire cable.

If the machine is equipped with a swing lock pin, use the front towing eyes on the lower frame and the rear towing eyes on the lower frame.

If the machine is not equipped with a swing lock pin, use the front towing eyes on the lower frame, the rear towing eyes on the lower frame, and the rear towing eye that is on the upper frame.

Securely fasten all loose parts and all removed parts to the trailer or to the rail car.

When the engine is stopped, the swing parking brake is automatically applied. This prevents the upper structure from swinging.

NOTICE

In freezing weather, protect the cooling system with antifreeze, to the lowest outside expected temperature on the travel route. Or, drain the cooling system completely.



Illustration 243

g00106934

8. Tilt the cab by using the instructions in Operation and Maintenance, “Cab Tilting”.

Note: The cab must be tilted or the cab must be in the LOWER position before transporting.

i00346996

Cab Tilting

SMCS Code: 7341

Forest Machine

The cab riser is equipped only on certain machines.

The cab and the riser must be tilted hydraulically in order to lower the overall height of the machine for shipping. A hydraulic pump is used to provide hydraulic oil flow for the tilt cylinder.

WARNING

Do not tilt the cab when occupied. Before tilting the cab remove all loose articles from the cab, secure all windows and emergency exits, and then close the cab and cab riser doors. Failure to do so can result in personal injury or damage to the machine.

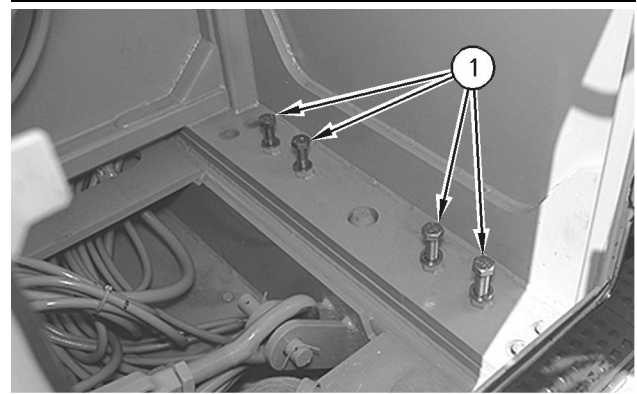


Illustration 244

g00104747

Cab retention bolts in the storage position

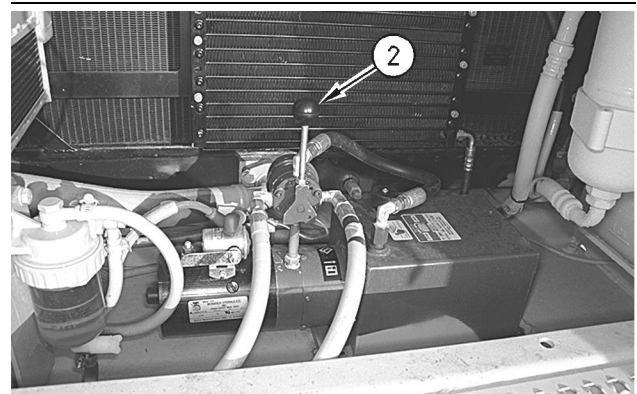


Illustration 245

g00104805

The cab tilt control lever is located in the left rear access door.

Lower

1. Remove cab retention bolts (1) from the rear of the cab riser compartment and install the cab retention bolts in the provided weld nuts.

Operation Section

Cab Tilting

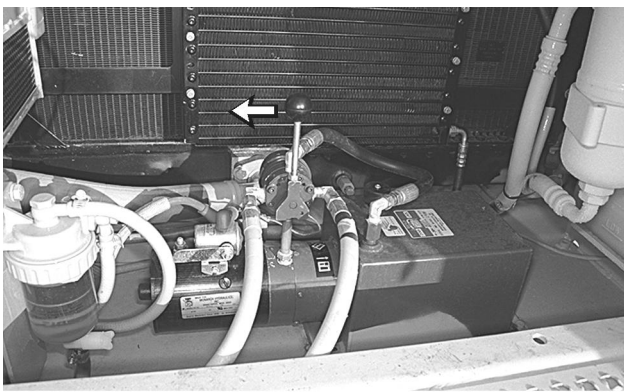


Illustration 246

g00104800

2. Move cab tilt control lever (2) to the LOWER position.

Note: The cab tilt control lever should be moved toward the front of the machine in order to be in the LOWER position.

3. Center the lever when the cab is in the desired position, or when the cable is tight.
4. Turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position. Remove the battery disconnect switch.

Raise

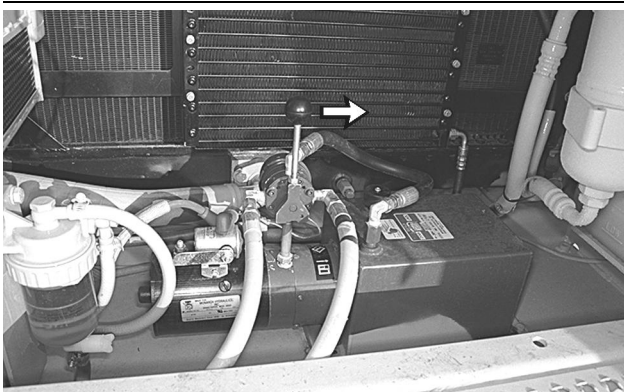


Illustration 247

g00104804

1. Move cab tilt control lever (2) to the RAISE position.

Note: The cab tilt control lever should be moved toward the rear of the machine in order to be in the RAISE position.

2. Center the lever when the cab is fully raised.

3. Torque cab retention bolts (1) to 82 N·m (60 lb ft).

Material Handler

The cab and the cab riser must be tilted in order to lower the overall height of the machine for the shipping. A lifting device such as a crane is needed in order to tilt the cab.

WARNING

Do not tilt the cab when occupied. Before tilting the cab remove all loose articles from the cab, secure all windows and emergency exits, and then close the cab and cab riser doors. Failure to do so can result in personal injury or damage to the machine.

Lower

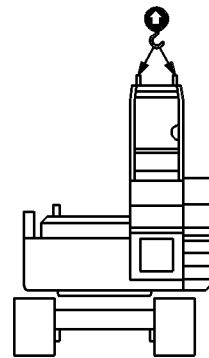


Illustration 248

g00268352

1. Attach a suitable lifting device to the two lifting rings.

Note: The lifting rings are located in the top rear corners of the cab. The approximate weight of the cab, platform, and riser is 1700 kg (3750 lb).

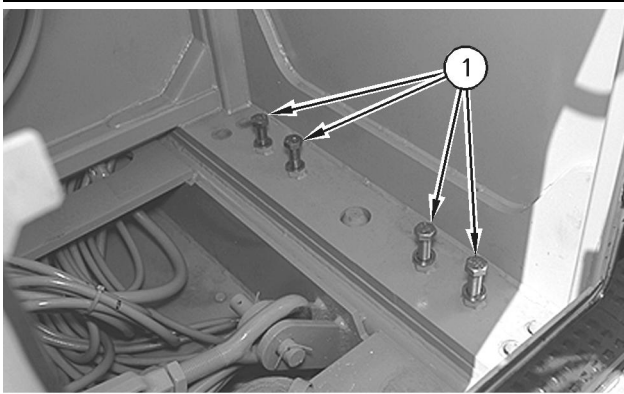


Illustration 249

g00104747

2. Remove cab retention bolts (1).

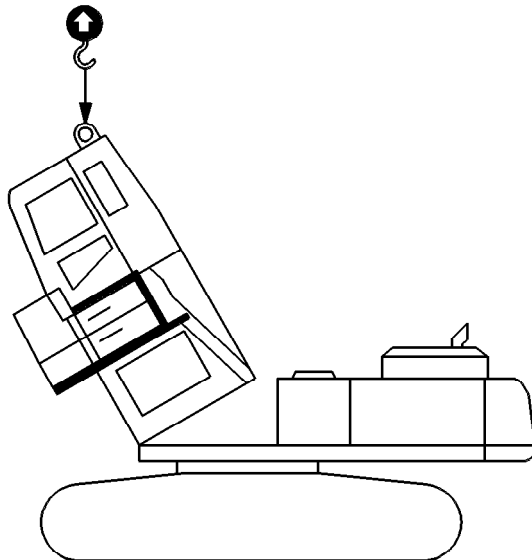


Illustration 250

g00268353

3. Remove the cab riser until the cab riser is beyond the center point.

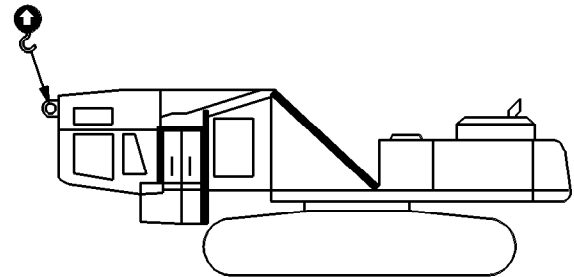


Illustration 251

g00268351

NOTICE

Improper lifting or tiedowns can allow load to shift and cause injury or damage.

NOTICE

Do not apply too much pressure with the lifting device being used. Damage to the riser frame may occur.

4. Slowly lower the cab riser until the brackets can be installed, as shown.
5. Install cab retention bolts (1).

Raise

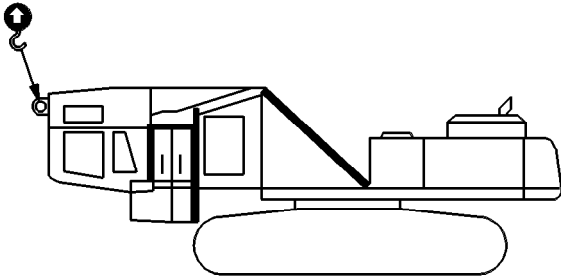


Illustration 252

g00268351

1. Attach a suitable lifting device to the two lifting rings.

Note: The lifting rings are located in the top rear corners of the cab. The approximate weight of the cab, platform, and riser is 1700 kg (3750 lb).

2. Remove the brackets. Lay the brackets next to the generator control panel in the bottom of the housing.

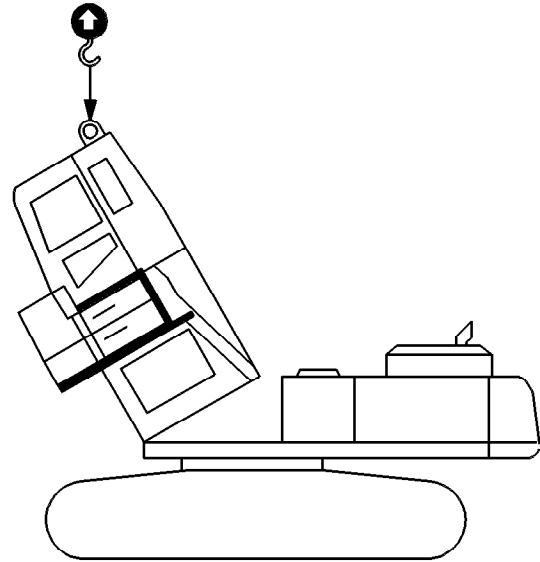


Illustration 253

g00268353

NOTICE

Do not apply too much pressure with the lifting device being used. Damage to the riser frame may occur.

3. Raise the riser until the riser is beyond the center point.
4. Slowly lower the riser until the riser is in the original position.

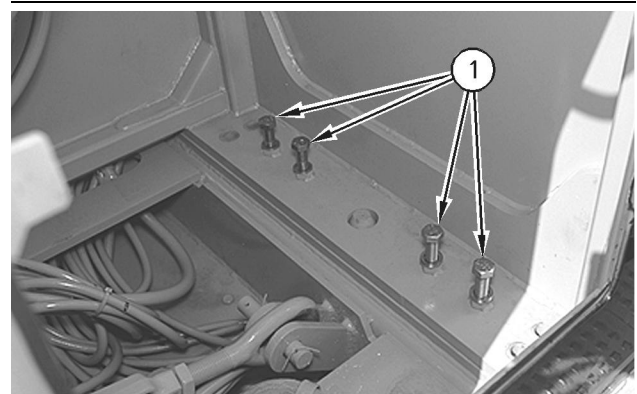


Illustration 254

g00104747

5. Install cab retention bolts (1).
6. Secure the cab retention bolts.

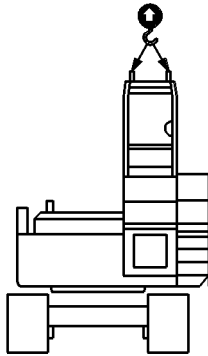


Illustration 255

g00268352

7. Remove the lifting device from the cab.

i00703722

Mirror Installation

SMCS Code: 7319

Note: Before you transport the machine, remove the rearview mirror or reposition the rearview mirror inward.

After you transport the machine, reinstall the rearview mirror or return the rearview mirror to the proper position. Use the following procedure.

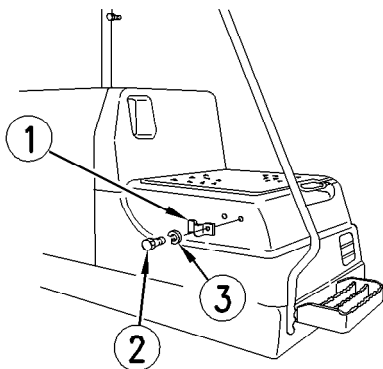


Illustration 256

g00101689

1. Use two bolts (2) and two washers (3) to install bracket (1) on the right side of the storage box.

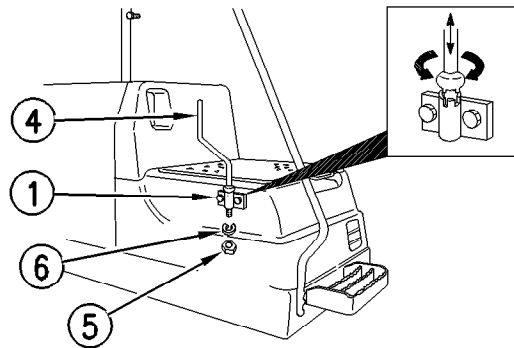


Illustration 257

g00101690

2. Put bar (4) into bracket (1). Align the notches at the lower part of the bar so that the bar faces outward. Secure the bar by tightening nut (5) and washer (6) on the bar.

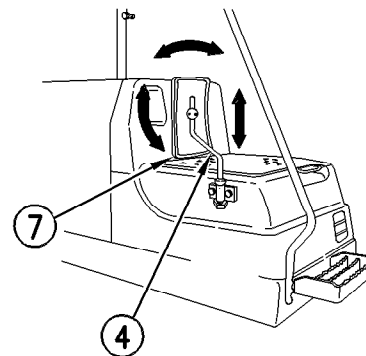


Illustration 258

g00101693

3. Install mirror (7) to bar (4). Rotate the mirror by hand to the desired angle.

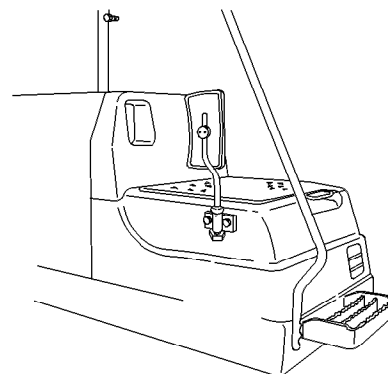


Illustration 259

g00101700

Reposition the rearview mirror inward before you transport the machine.

i01961443

Lifting and Tying Down the Machine

SMCS Code: 7000; 7500

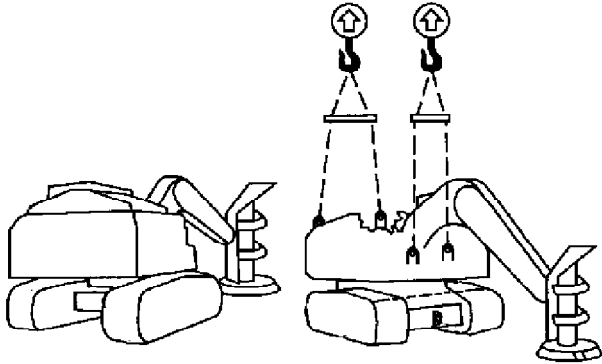


Illustration 260

g00788092

NOTICE

Improper lifting or tie-downs can allow load to shift and cause injury or damage.

1. The weight and the instructions that are given herein describe the machine as the machine is manufactured by Caterpillar.
Refer to the table in Operation and Maintenance, "Specifications" for specific weight information.
2. Use proper rated cables and slings for lifting. The crane should be positioned so that the machine is lifted parallel to the ground.
3. In order to prevent contact with the machine, lifting cables should have sufficient length.
4. Use the rear eyes and the front eyes that are provided on the lower frame to fasten tie-downs. Use corner protectors for sharp corners.

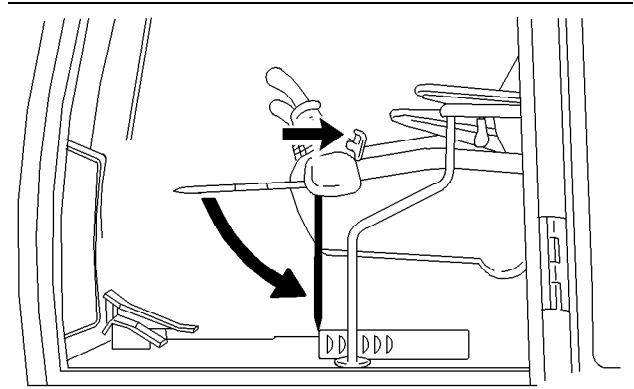


Illustration 261

g00812017

5. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.

Towing Information

i05662590

Towing the Machine

SMCS Code: 7000

WARNING

Personal injury or death could result when towing a disabled machine incorrectly.

Block the machine to prevent movement before final drives are disengaged. The machine can roll free if it is not blocked. With final drives disengaged, the machine cannot be stopped or steered.

Follow the recommendations below, to properly perform the towing procedure.

Relieve the hydraulic tank and line pressure before any disassembly.

Even after the machine has been turned off, the hydraulic oil can still be hot enough to burn. Allow the hydraulic oil to cool before draining.

NOTICE

To tow the machine, both final drives must be disengaged.

Do not operate the travel motors with the final drives disengaged. Damage could result.

These towing instructions are for moving a disabled machine for a short distance at low speed. Move the machine at a speed of 2 km/h (1.2 mph) or less to a convenient location for repair. Always haul the machine if long distance moving is required.

Shields must be provided on both machines. This will protect the operator if the tow line or the tow bar breaks.

Do not allow an operator to be on the machine that is being towed.

Before you tow the machine, make sure that the tow line or the tow bar is in good condition. Do not use a wire rope that is kinked, twisted, or damaged. Make sure that the tow line or the tow bar has enough strength for the towing procedure that is involved. The strength of the tow line or of the tow bar should be at least 150 percent of the gross weight of the towed machine. This requirement is for a disabled machine that is stuck in the mud and for being towed on a grade.

Do not use a chain for pulling a disabled machine. A chain link can break. This may cause personal injury. Use a wire rope with ends that have loops or rings. Put an observer in a safe position in order to watch the pulling procedure. The observer can stop the procedure if the wire rope starts to break. Stop pulling whenever the towing machine moves without moving the towed machine.

During towing, do not allow anyone to step between the towing and the towed machines.

Do not allow the wire rope to be straddled while the machine is being towed.

Keep the tow line angle to a minimum. Do not exceed a 30 degree angle from the straight ahead position.

Avoid towing the machine on a slope.

Quick machine movement could overload the tow line or the tow bar. This could cause the tow line or the tow bar to break. Gradual, steady machine movement will be more effective.

Prior to releasing the brake of the final drive, firmly lock both tracks in order to prevent the machine from moving suddenly. When the machine is ready to be towed, release the brake of the final drive. Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Final Drive Ring Gear Removal".

Normally, the towing machine should be as large as the disabled machine. Make sure that the towing machine has enough brake capacity, enough weight, and enough power. The towing machine must be able to control both machines for the grade that is involved and for the distance that is involved.

You must provide sufficient control and sufficient braking when you are moving a disabled machine downhill. This may require a larger towing machine or additional machines that are connected to the rear of the disabled machine. This will prevent the machine from rolling away out of control.

All situation requirements cannot be listed. Minimal towing machine capacity is required on smooth, level surfaces. Maximum towing machine capacity is required on an incline or on a surface that is in poor condition.

Do not tow a loaded machine.

Consult your Cat dealer for the equipment that is necessary for towing a disabled machine.

Retrieval and Towing of Machine

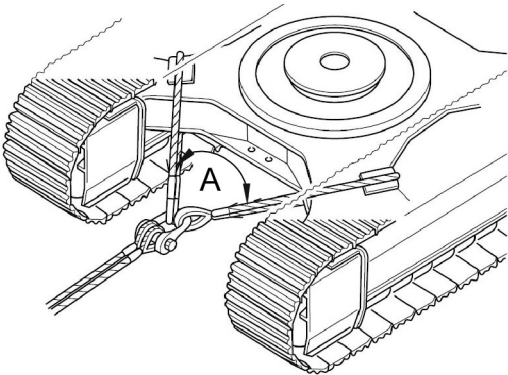


Illustration 262

g02533437

Note: Shackles must be used for towing the machine. The wire rope should be horizontal and straight to the track frame.

Install a properly rated wire rope to the lower frame of the towing machine and the lower frame of the towed machine. The permissible force for the lower frame is 100 percent of the gross weight of the towed machine.

Note: In order to prevent damage to the wire rope or the lower frame of the machines, use protective sleeves on the corners of the lower frame.

Retrieve the disabled machine carefully. The applied load for each wire rope should be equal. The angle (A) between each wire rope should be 60 degree maximum. Operate the machine at a low speed.

Lightweight Towing

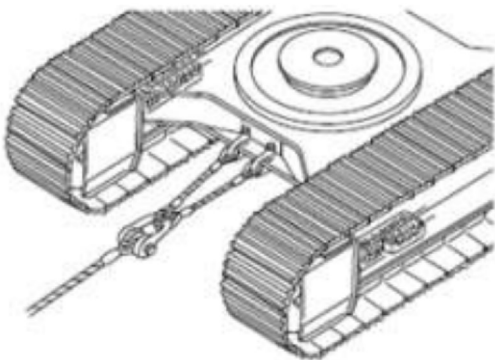


Illustration 263

g03589894

The maximum load for lightweight towing is 57000 N·m (42041 lb ft).

Shackles must be used for towing the machine. The wire rope should be horizontal and straight to the track frame.

Install a properly rated wire rope to the lower frame of the towing machine and the lower frame of the towed machine. Operate the machine at a low speed.

i00134594

Final Drive Ring Gear Removal

SMCS Code: 4050

S/N: 2JR1-Up

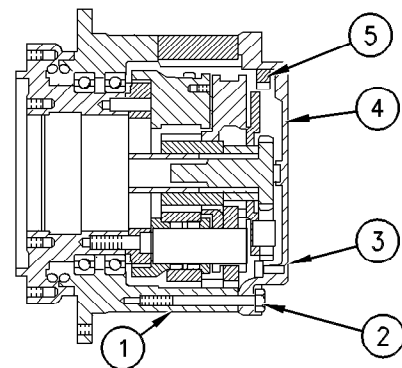


Illustration 264

g00102983

(1) Ring Gear. (2) Cover Bolts. (3) Bolts. (4) Final Drive Cover. (5) Ring Gear.

WARNING

Without the ring gear in place, the brakes are ineffective. Personal injury or death could result. Provide other means to hold or stop the machine.

1. Thoroughly clean the area around the final drive. Make sure that you also clean the track shoes that are positioned above the final drive.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information that pertains to Containing Fluid Spillage.

2. Drain the final drive oil into a suitable container. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Final Drive Oil - Change" for the procedure.
3. Remove eighteen of twenty cover bolts (2) from final drive cover (4). Do not leave a bolt in the top hole of the cover.

4. Insert an alignment dowel through the top hole of the cover and into the threads in the final drive housing. This is necessary in order to support ring gear (1) while you are removing the final drive cover.
5. Remove one track shoe in order to allow access to the face between final drive cover (4) and ring gear (1).
6. Loosen remaining two cover bolts (2).
7. Use a hammer and a wedge to separate final drive cover (4) and ring gear (1). Make sure that ring gear (1) stays in place.
8. Remove remaining two cover bolts (2) and final drive cover (4).
9. Remove twelve bolts (3) and ring gear (5) from final drive cover (4).
10. Install final drive cover (4) and all twenty cover bolts (2).
11. Fill the final drive with new oil. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Final Drive Oil - Change" for the procedure.
12. Repeat this procedure for the other final drive.
13. Refer to the Service Manual for information on the installation of the final drive ring gear.

i00134597

Final Drive Sun Gear Removal

SMCS Code: 4050

S/N: 1YS1-Up

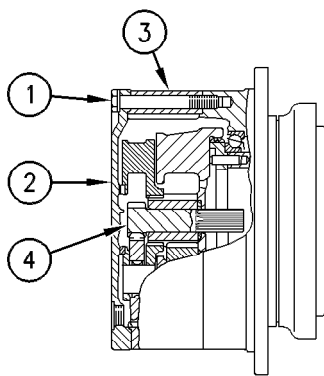


Illustration 265

g00110080

(1) Cover bolt. (2) Final drive cover. (3) Ring gear. (4) Sun gear.

WARNING

Without the sun gear in place, the brakes are ineffective. Personal injury or death could result. Provide other means to hold or stop the machine.

1. Thoroughly clean the area around the final drive. Make sure that you also clean the track shoes that are positioned above the final drive.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on containing fluid spillage.

2. Drain the final drive oil into a suitable container. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Final Drive Oil - Change" for the procedure.
3. Remove fourteen of sixteen cover bolts (1) from final drive cover (2). Do not leave a bolt in the top hole of the cover.
4. Insert an alignment dowel through the top hole of the cover and into the threads in the final drive housing. This is necessary in order to support ring gear (3) while you are removing the final drive cover.
5. Remove one track shoe in order to allow access to the face between final drive cover (2) and ring gear (3).
6. Loosen remaining two cover bolts (1).
7. Use a hammer and a wedge to separate final drive cover (2) and ring gear (3). Make sure that ring gear (3) stays in place.
8. Remove remaining two cover bolts (1) and final drive cover (2).
9. Remove sun gear (4) from final drive.
10. Install final drive cover (2) and sixteen cover bolts (1).
11. Fill the final drive with new oil. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Final Drive Oil - Change" for the procedure.
12. Repeat Steps 1 through 11 for the other final drive.
13. Refer to the Service Manual for information on the installation of the final drive sun gear.

Engine Starting (Alternate Methods)

i05974849

Engine Starting with Jump Start Cables (If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

WARNING

Failure to properly service the batteries may cause personal injury.

Prevent sparks near the batteries. They could cause vapors to explode. Do not allow the jump start cable ends to contact each other or the machine.

Do not smoke when checking battery electrolyte levels.

Electrolyte is an acid and can cause personal injury if it contacts skin or eyes.

Always wear eye protection when starting a machine with jump start cables.

Improper jump start procedures can cause an explosion resulting in personal injury.

Always connect the battery positive (+) to battery positive (+) and the battery negative (-) to battery negative (-).

Jump start only with an energy source with the same voltage as the stalled machine.

Turn off all lights and accessories on the stalled machine. Otherwise, they will operate when the energy source is connected.

NOTICE

To prevent damage to engine bearings and to electrical circuits when you jump-start a machine, do not allow the stalled machine to touch the machine that is used as the electrical source.

Turn on (close) the battery disconnect switch prior to the boost connection to prevent damage to electrical components on the stalled machine.

Use only equal voltage for starting. Check the battery and starter voltage rating of your machine. Use only the same voltage for jump starting. Use of a welder or higher voltage will damage the electrical system.

Severely discharged maintenance free batteries do not fully recharge from the alternator after jump starting. The batteries must be charged to proper voltage with a battery charger. Many batteries thought to be unusable are still rechargeable.

Refer to Special Instruction, SEHS7633, "Battery Test Procedure" for complete testing and charging information. This publication is available from your Cat dealer.

When the auxiliary start receptacles are not available, use the following procedure.

1. Lower the equipment to the ground. Move all controls to the HOLD position. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position.
2. Turn the start switch on the stalled machine to the OFF position. Turn off all accessories.
3. Turn the battery disconnect switch on the stalled machine to the ON position.
4. Move the machine that is being used as an electrical source near the stalled machine so that the jump-start cables reach the stalled machine.
Do not allow the machines to contact each other.
5. Stop the engine of the machine that is being used as an electrical source. If you are using an auxiliary power source, turn off the charging system.
6. Ensure that battery caps on both machines are tight and correctly placed. Ensure that batteries in the stalled machine are not frozen. Make sure that the batteries have enough electrolyte.

Note: The positive terminal of the 24 V system of the source and the negative terminal of the 24 V system of the source must be identified correctly before the jumper cables are connected. The positive terminal of the 24 V system of the discharged battery must be identified correctly before the jumper cables are connected.

7. The positive ends of the jump-start cable are red. Connect one positive end of the jump-start cable to the positive cable terminal of the discharged battery. Some machines have battery sets.

Note: Batteries that are in series may be in separate compartments. Use the terminal that is connected to the starter solenoid. This battery or battery set is normally on the same side of the machine as the starter.

Do not allow the positive cable clamps to contact any metal except for the battery terminals.

11. Start the engine of the machine that is being used as an electrical source or energize the charging system on the auxiliary power source.
12. Wait at least two minutes before you attempt to start the stalled machine. This will allow the batteries in the stalled machine to partially charge.
13. Attempt to start the stalled engine. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Engine Starting" for the correct starting procedure.
14. Immediately after you start the stalled engine, disconnect the jump-start cables in reverse order.

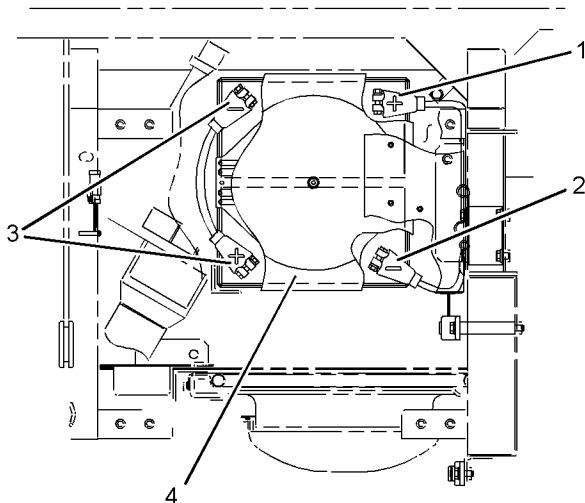


Illustration 266

g01226420

Typical example of the location of the batteries in an excavator

- (1) Red positive post to starter
 (2) The black negative post connects to the battery disconnect switch.
 (3) Do not use these two connections for jump starting. The red positive post is connected in series to the black negative post.
 (4) Cover

8. Connect the other positive end of the jump-start cable to the positive cable terminal of the electrical source.
9. Connect one negative end of the jump-start cable to the negative cable terminal of the electrical source.
10. Finally, connect the other negative end of the jump-start cable to the frame of the stalled machine. Do not connect the jump-start cable to the battery post. Do not allow the jump-start cables to contact the battery cables, the fuel lines, the hydraulic lines, or any moving parts.

Maintenance Section

Lubricant Viscosities and Refill Capacities

i07279193

Lubricant Viscosities (Fluids Recommendations)

SMCS Code: 7581

General Information for Lubricants

When you are operating the machine in temperatures below -20°C (-4°F), refer to Special Publication, SEBU5898, "Cold Weather Recommendations". This publication is available from your Cat dealer.

Refer to the "Lubricant Information" section in the latest revision of the Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations" for a list of Cat engine oils and for detailed information. This manual may be found on the web at Safety.Cat.com.

The footnotes are a key part of the tables. Read ALL footnotes that pertain to the machine compartment in question.

Selecting the Viscosity

To select the proper oil for each machine compartment, refer to the "Lubricant Viscosity for Ambient Temperature" table. Use the oil type AND oil viscosity for the specific compartment at the proper ambient temperature.

The proper oil viscosity grade is determined by the minimum ambient temperature (the air in the immediate vicinity of the machine). Measure the temperature when the machine is started and while the machine is operated. To determine the proper oil viscosity grade, refer to the "Min" column in the table. This information reflects the coldest ambient temperature condition for starting a cold machine and for operating a cold machine. Refer to the "Max" column in the table for operating the machine at the highest temperature that is anticipated. Unless specified otherwise in the "Lubricant Viscosities for Ambient Temperatures" tables, use the highest oil viscosity that is allowed for the ambient temperature.

Machines that are operated continuously should use oils that have the higher oil viscosity. The oils that have the higher oil viscosity will maintain the highest possible oil film thickness. Refer to "General Information for Lubricants" article, "Lubricant Viscosities" tables, and any associated footnotes. Consult your Cat dealer if additional information is needed.

NOTICE

Not following the recommendations found in this manual can lead to reduced performance and compartment failure.

Engine Oil

Cat oils have been developed and tested in order to provide the full performance and life that has been designed and built into Cat engines.

Cat DEO-ULS multigrade and Cat DEO multigrade oils are formulated with the correct amounts of detergents, dispersants, and alkalinity in order to provide superior performance in Cat diesel engines where recommended for use.

Note: SAE 10W-30 is the preferred viscosity grade for the 3116, 3126, C7, C-9, and C9 diesel engines when the ambient temperature is between -18°C (0°F) and 40°C (104°F).

Table 18

Lubricant Viscosities for Ambient Temperatures						
Compartment or System	Oil Type and Performance Requirements	Oil Viscosities	°C		°F	
			Min	Max	Min	Max
Engine Crankcase	Cat DEO-ULS Cold Weather	SAE 0W-40	-40	40	-40	104
	Cat DEO-ULS SYN Cat DEO SYN	SAE 5W-40	-30	50	-22	122
	Cat DEO-ULS Cat DEO	SAE 10W-30	-18	40	0	104
	Cat DEO-ULS Cat DEO	SAE 15W-40	-9.5	50	15	122
Pump Coupling (If Equipped)	Cat DEO-ULS Cat DEO	SAE 10W-30	-18	40	0	104

Note: API engine oil categories are backwards compatible. Cat DEO-ULS (API CK-4) oil can be used in all engines with some restrictions related to fuel sulfur level. Cat DEO (API CI-4/API CI-4 PLUS) can be used in engines that are Tier 3 emissions certified and prior, and in engines that do not use aftertreatment devices.

Hydraulic Systems

Refer to the "Lubricant Information" section in the latest revision of the Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations" for detailed information. This manual may be found on the web at Safety.Cat.com.

The following are the preferred oils for use in most Cat machine hydraulic systems:

- Cat HYDO Advanced 10 SAE 10W
- Cat HYDO Advanced 30 SAE 30W
- Cat BIO HYDO Advanced

Cat HYDO Advanced oils allow 6000 hours or higher oil drain intervals for most applications. S·O·S Services oil analysis is recommended when the oil drain interval is increased to 6000 hours or higher. In comparison, non-Cat commercial hydraulic oils (second choice oils) allow 2000 hours oil drain interval. It is recommended to follow the maintenance interval schedule for oil filter changes and for oil sampling that is stated in the Operation and Maintenance Manual for your particular machine. Consult your Cat dealer for details. When switching to Cat HYDO Advanced fluids, cross contamination with the previous oil should be kept to less than 10%.

Second choice oils are listed below.

- Cat MTO
- Cat DEO
- Cat DEO-ULS

- Cat TDTO
- Cat TDTO Cold Weather
- Cat TDTO-TMS
- Cat DEO-ULS SYN
- Cat DEO SYN
- Cat DEO-ULS Cold Weather

Note: Oil drain intervals of the oils listed above are less than those of Cat HYDO Advanced oils. The oil drain interval of these oils is typically 2000 hours and up to a maximum of 4000 hours. An exception is Cat TDTO Cold Weather oil which allows 6000 hours or higher oil drain interval. S·O·S Services oil analysis is required when the oils listed above are used in Cat hydraulic system components and hydrostatic transmissions.

Maintenance Section
Fluids Recommendations

Table 19

Lubricant Viscosities for Ambient Temperatures						
Compartment or System	Oil Type and Performance Requirements	Oil Viscosities	°C		°F	
			Min	Max	Min	Max
Hydraulic System	Cat HYDO Advanced 10 Cat TDTO	SAE 10W	-20	40	-4	104
	Cat HYDO Advanced 30 Cat TDTO	SAE 30	10	50	50	122
	Cat BIO HYDO Advanced	"ISO 46" Multi-Grade	-30	50	-22	122
	Cat MTO Cat DEO-ULS Cat DEO	SAE10W-30	-20	40	-4	104
	Cat DEO-ULS Cat DEO	SAE15W-40	-15	50	5	122
	Cat TDTO-TMS	Multi-Grade	-15	50	5	122
	Cat DEO-ULS SYN Cat DEO SYN	SAE 5W-40	-30	40	-22	104
	Cat DEO-ULS Cold Weather	SAE0W-40	-40	40	-40	104
	Cat TDTO Cold Weather	SAE 0W-20	-40	40	-40	104

Other Fluid Applications

Table 20

Excavators, Front Shovels, Mass Excavators, Demolition Excavators, and Track Material Handlers Lubricant Viscosities for Ambient Temperatures						
Compartment or System	Oil Type and Performance Requirements	Oil Viscosity Grade	°C		°F	
			Min	Max	Min	Max
Final Drives and Swing Drives	Cat TDTO Cat TDTO-TMS Cat TDTO SYN Cold Weather commercial TO-4	SAE 0W-20	-40	0	-40	32
		SAE 0W-30	-40	10	-40	50
		SAE 5W-30	-30	10	-22	50
		SAE 10W	-30	0	-22	32
		SAE 30	-25	25	-13	77
		SAE 50	-15	50	5	122
		Cat TDTO-TMS	-30	25	-22	77
Track Roller Frame Recoil Spring and Pivot Shaft Bearings	Cat TDTO Cat TDTO-TMS Cat TDTO SYN Cold Weather commercial TO-4	SAE 0W-20	-40	0	-40	32
		SAE 0W-30	-40	10	-40	50
		SAE 5W-30	-35	0	-31	32
		SAE 10W	-30	0	-22	32
		SAE 30	-20	25	-4	77
		SAE 40	-10	40	14	104
		SAE 50	0	50	32	122
Cat TDTO-TMS	-25	25	-13	77		

(continued)

(Table 20, contd)

Excavators, Front Shovels, Mass Excavators, Demolition Excavators, and Track Material Handlers Lubricant Viscosities for Ambient Temperatures						
Compartment or System	Oil Type and Performance Requirements	Oil Viscosity Grade	°C		°F	
			Min	Max	Min	Max
Track Idlers and Track Rollers	Cat DEO (single grade) Cat DEO SYN	SAE 30	-20	25	-4	77
	Cat DEO-ULS SYN Cat ECF-1-a Cat ECF-2 Cat ECF-3 API CF	SAE 5W-40	-35	40	-31	104

Table 21

Excavators, Front Shovels, Mass Excavators, Demolition Excavators, and Track Material Handlers Lubricant Viscosities for Ambient Temperatures						
Compartment or System	Oil Type and Performance Requirements	Oil Viscosity Grade	°C		°F	
			Min	Max	Min	Max
Variable Pitch Flexxaire Fan (If Equipped)	Cat Full Synthetic Multi-grade DEO commercial Full Synthetic Multigrade Diesel Engine Oil meeting either Cat ECF-1 or API CG-4	SAE 0W40 ⁽¹⁾	-40	50	-40	122
		SAE 5W40 ⁽¹⁾	-40	50	-40	122
	Caterpillar Non-Synthetic TO-4	SAE 30 ⁽²⁾	-15	25	-5	77
		SAE 50 ⁽²⁾	-10	50	14	122

(1) This is the first choice. Full synthetic oils are recommended. Synthetic oils may provide longer service life for the fan. Synthetic oils allow for increased service intervals over non-synthetic oils.

(2) This is the second choice. Caterpillar TDTO is acceptable. Commercial oils that meet the TO-4 specification are also acceptable. TDTO is non-synthetic. Commercial TO-4 oils are typically non-synthetic.

Special Lubricants

Grease

To use a non-Cat grease, the supplier must certify that the lubricant is compatible with Cat grease.

Each pin joint should be flushed with the new grease. Ensure that all old grease is removed. Failure to meet this requirement may lead to failure of a pin joint.

Table 22

Recommended Grease						
Compartment or System	Grease Type	NLGI Grade	°C		°F	
			Min	Max	Min	Max
External Lubrication Points	Cat Prime Application Grease	NLGI Grade 2	-20	140	-4	284
	Cat Extreme Application Grease	NLGI Grade 1	-20	140	-4	284
		NLGI Grade 2	-15	140	+5	284

(continued)

(Table 22, contd)

Recommended Grease						
Compartment or System	Grease Type	NLGI Grade	°C		°F	
			Min	Max	Min	Max
	Cat Extreme Application Grease-Artic	NLGI Grade 0.5	-50	130	-58	266
	Cat Extreme Application Grease-Desert	NLGI Grade 2	-10	140	+14	284
	Cat Utility Grease	NLGI Grade 2	-20	140	-4	284
	Cat Ball Bearing Grease	NLGI Grade 2	-20	160	-4	320

Grease for the Autolube System (if Equipped)

The grease used with the automatic lubrication system must not contain any graphite or PTFE.

Note: Pumpability is based on “US Steel Mobility and Lincoln Ventmeter Tests”. Performance may vary depending on lubrication equipment and the length of the lines.

Reference: Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, “Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations” for additional information about grease. This manual may be found on the web at Safety.Cat.com.

Table 23

Recommended Grease for the Autolube System						
Compartment or System	Grease Type	NLGI Grade	°C		°F	
			Min	Max	Min	Max
Cat Autolube System	Cat Extreme Application Grease	NLGI Grade 1	-35	40	-31	104
		NLGI Grade 2	-30	50	-22	122

Diesel Fuel Recommendations

Diesel fuel must meet “Caterpillar Specification for Distillate Fuel” and the latest versions of “ASTM D975” or “EN 590” to ensure optimum engine performance. Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, “Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations” for the latest fuel information and for Cat fuel specification. This manual may be found on the web at Safety.Cat.com.

The preferred fuels are distillate fuels. These fuels are commonly called diesel fuel, furnace oil, gas oil, or kerosene. These fuels must meet the “Caterpillar Specification for Distillate Diesel Fuel for Off-Highway Diesel Engines”. Diesel Fuels that meet the Caterpillar specification will help provide maximum engine service life and performance.

Misfueling with fuels of high sulfur level can have the following negative effects:

- Reduce engine efficiency and durability

- Increase the wear
- Increase the corrosion
- Increase the deposits
- Lower fuel economy
- Shorten the time period between oil drain intervals (more frequent oil drain intervals)
- Increase overall operating costs
- Negatively impact engine emissions

Failures that result from the use of improper fuels are not Caterpillar factory defects. Therefore the cost of repairs would not be covered by a Caterpillar warranty.

Caterpillar does not require the use of ULSD in off road and machine applications that are not Tier 4/ Stage IIIB certified engines. ULSD is not required in engines that are not equipped with after treatment devices.

Follow operating instructions and fuel tank inlet labels, if available, to ensure that the correct fuels are used.

Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations" for more details about fuels and lubricants. This manual may be found on the web at Safety.Cat.com.

Fuel Additives

Cat Diesel Fuel Conditioner and Cat Fuel System Cleaner are available for use when needed. These products are applicable to diesel and biodiesel fuels. Consult your Cat dealer for availability.

Biodiesel

Biodiesel is a fuel that can be made from various renewable resources that include vegetable oils, animal fat, and waste cooking oil. Soybean oil and rapeseed oil are the primary vegetable oil sources. To use any of these oils or fats as fuel, the oils or fats are chemically processed (esterified). The water and contaminants are removed.

U.S. distillate diesel fuel specification "ASTM D975-09a" includes up to B5 (5 percent) biodiesel. Currently, any diesel fuel in the U.S. may contain up to B5 biodiesel fuel.

European distillate diesel fuel specification "EN 590" includes up to B5 (5 percent) and in some regions up to B7 (7 percent) biodiesel. Any diesel fuel in Europe may contain up to B5 or in some regions up to B7 biodiesel fuel.

When biodiesel fuel is used, certain guidelines must be followed. Biodiesel fuel can influence the engine oil, aftertreatment devices, non-metallic, fuel system components, and others. Biodiesel fuel has limited storage life and has limited oxidation stability. Follow the guidelines and requirements for engines that are seasonally operated and for standby power generation engines.

To reduce the risks associated with the use of biodiesel, the final biodiesel blend and the biodiesel fuel used must meet specific blending requirements.

All the guidelines and requirements are provided in the latest revision of Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations". This manual may be found on the web at Safety.Cat.com.

Coolant Information

The information provided in this "Coolant Recommendation" section should be used with the "Lubricants Information" provided in the latest revision of Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations". This manual may be found on the web at Safety.Cat.com.

The following two types of coolants may be used in Cat diesel engines:

Preferred – Cat ELC (Extended Life Coolant)

Acceptable – Cat DEAC (Diesel Engine Antifreeze/ Coolant)

NOTICE

Never use water alone as a coolant. Water alone is corrosive at engine operating temperatures. In addition, water alone does not provide adequate protection against boiling or freezing.

i07445339

S·O·S Information

SMCS Code: 1000; 1348; 3080; 4050; 5050; 7000; 7542-008

S·O·S Services is a highly recommended process for Cat customers to use in order to minimize owning and operating cost. Customers provide oil samples, coolant samples, and other machine information. The dealer uses the data in order to provide the customer with recommendations for management of the equipment. In addition, S·O·S Services can help determine the cause of an existing product problem.

Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluid Recommendations" for detailed information concerning S·O·S Services.

The effectiveness of S·O·S Services is dependent on timely submission of the sample to the laboratory at recommended intervals.

Refer to the Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Maintenance Interval Schedule" for a specific sampling location and a service hour maintenance interval.

Consult your Cat dealer for complete information and assistance in establishing an S·O·S program for your equipment.

Maintenance Support

i07539955

Welding on Machines and Engines with Electronic Controls

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Do not weld on any protective structure. If it is necessary to repair a protective structure, contact your Cat dealer.

Proper welding procedures are necessary in order to avoid damage to the electronic controls and to the bearings. When possible, remove the component that must be welded from the machine or the engine and then weld the component. If you must weld near an electronic control on the machine or the engine, temporarily remove the electronic control in order to prevent heat related damage. The following steps should be followed in order to weld on a machine or an engine with electronic controls.

1. Turn off the engine. Place the engine start switch in the OFF position.
2. If equipped, turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position. If there is no battery disconnect switch, remove the negative battery cable at the battery.

NOTICE

Do NOT use electrical components (ECM or sensors) or electronic component grounding points for grounding the welder.

3. Clamp the ground cable from the welder to the component that will be welded. Place the clamp as close as possible to the weld. Make sure that the electrical path from the ground cable to the component does not go through any bearing. Use this procedure in order to reduce the possibility of damage to the following components:
 - Bearings of the drive train
 - Hydraulic components
 - Electrical components
 - Other components of the machine
4. Protect any wiring harnesses and components from the debris and the spatter which is created from welding.
5. Use standard welding procedures in order to weld the materials together.

i07702852

Maintenance Interval Schedule

SMCS Code: 7000

All safety information, warnings, and instructions must be read and understood before you perform any operation or any maintenance procedure.

Before each consecutive interval is performed, all of the maintenance requirements from the previous interval must also be performed.

The normal oil change interval for the engine is Every 500 Service Hours or 3 Months. If the engine is operated under severe conditions, change the oil after Every 250 Service Hours or 1 Month. Severe conditions include the following factors: high temperatures, continuous high loads and extremely dusty conditions.

Refer to the results of the S-O-S oil analysis in order to determine if the oil change interval should be decreased to 250 hours. Consult your Caterpillar Dealer for detailed information regarding the optimum oil change interval.

When Required

“ Air Conditioner/Cab Heater Filter (Recirculation) - Inspect/Replace”	143
“ Battery - Recycle”	143
“ Battery or Battery Cable - Inspect/Replace”	143
“ Boom Base Pins - Lubricate”	151
“ Bucket Linkage - Inspect/Adjust”	151
“ Bucket Tips - Inspect/Replace”	152
“ Cab Air Filter (Fresh Air) - Clean/Replace”	155
“ Circuit Breakers - Reset”	157
“ Engine Air Filter Primary Element - Clean/Replace”	164
“ Engine Air Filter Secondary Element - Replace”	164
“ Ether Starting Aid Cylinder - Replace”	177
“ Fuses - Replace”	177
“ Oil Filter - Inspect”	188
“ Track Adjustment - Adjust”	192
“ Window Washer Reservoir - Fill”	195
“ Window Wiper - Inspect/Replace”	195

“ Windows - Clean”	195
--------------------	-----

Every 10 Service Hours or Daily for First 100 Hours

“ Boom and Stick Linkage - Lubricate”	146
“ Boom, Stick and Bucket Linkage - Lubricate”	150

Every 10 Service Hours or Daily

“ Cab Tilt Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check”	156
“ Cooling System Coolant Level - Check”	160
“ Engine Oil Level - Check”	165
“ Fuel System Water Separator - Drain”	175
“ Fuel Tank Water and Sediment - Drain”	187
“ Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check”	187
“ Indicators and Gauges - Test”	187
“ Radiator Core - Clean”	188
“ Seat Belt - Inspect”	188
“ Track Adjustment - Inspect”	193
“ Travel Alarm - Test”	194
“ Undercarriage - Check”	194

Every 10 Service Hours or Daily for Machines Used in Severe Applications

“ Boom and Stick Linkage - Lubricate”	146
“ Boom, Stick and Bucket Linkage - Lubricate”	150

Every 50 Service Hours or Weekly

“ Boom and Stick Linkage - Lubricate”	146
“ Boom, Stick and Bucket Linkage - Lubricate”	150

Initial 250 Service Hours

“ Engine Valve Lash and Fuel Injector Timing - Check”	169
“ Final Drive Oil - Change”	169
“ Hydraulic System Oil Filter - Replace”	183

“ Swing Drive Oil - Change” 190

Every 250 Service Hours

“Cooling System Coolant Sample (Level 1) - Obtain” 162

“ Engine Oil Sample - Obtain” 167

“ Final Drive Oil Sample - Obtain” 170

Every 250 Service Hours or Monthly

“ Belt - Inspect/Adjust/Replace” 144

“ Condenser (Refrigerant) - Clean” 157

“ Cooling System Hoses - Inspect” 163

“ Engine Oil and Filter - Change” 167

“ Final Drive Oil Level - Check” 169

“ Fuel System Primary Filter - Clean/Replace” . . . 170

“ Fuel System Priming Pump - Operate” 172

“ Fuel System Secondary Filter Number One - Replace” 172

“ Fuel System Primary Filter (Water Separator) Element - Replace” 175

“ Swing Bearing - Lubricate” 189

“ Swing Drive Oil Level - Check” 191

Initial 500 Hours (for New Systems, Refilled Systems, and Converted Systems)

“Cooling System Coolant Sample (Level 2) - Obtain” 163

Every 500 Service Hours

“ Hydraulic System Oil Sample - Obtain” 187

“ Swing Drive Oil Sample - Obtain” 191

Every 500 Service Hours or 3 Months

“ Cab Tilt Hydraulic System Screen - Clean/Replace” 156

“ Engine Crankcase Breather - Clean/Replace”

“ Fuel System Secondary Filter Number Two - Replace” 174

“ Fuel Tank Cap and Strainer - Clean” 176

“ Hydraulic System Oil Filter - Replace” 183

Every 1000 Service Hours or 6 Months

“ Battery - Clean” 143

“ Battery Hold-Down - Tighten” 143

“ Hydraulic System Oil Filter (Return) - Replace” 178

“ Swing Drive Oil - Change” 190

Every 2000 Service Hours or 1 Year

“ Cab Tilt Hydraulic System Oil - Change” 155

“ Engine Governor Oil Supply Screen - Clean/Inspect/Replace” 165

“ Engine Valve Lash and Fuel Injector Timing - Check” 169

“ Final Drive Oil - Change” 169

“ Hydraulic System Oil - Change”

“ Receiver Dryer (Refrigerant) - Replace”

“ Swing Gear - Lubricate”

Every Year

“Cooling System Coolant Sample (Level 2) - Obtain” 163

Every 3 Years After Date of Installation or Every 5 Years After Date of Manufacture

“ Seat Belt - Replace” 188

Every 6000 Service Hours or 3 Years

“ Cooling System Coolant Extender (ELC) - Add” 159

Every 12 000 Service Hours or 6 Years

“ Cooling System Coolant (ELC) - Change” 158

i00934864

i04064489

Battery - Clean

SMCS Code: 1401-070**S/N:** 1YS1–Up

Clean the battery surface with a clean cloth. Keep the terminals clean and keep the terminals coated with petroleum jelly. Install the post cover after you coat the terminal post with petroleum jelly.

i06543763

Battery - Recycle

SMCS Code: 1401-561

Always recycle a battery. Never discard a battery.

Always return used batteries to one of the following locations:

- A battery supplier
- An authorized battery collection facility
- Recycling facility

i00934872

Battery Hold-Down - Tighten

SMCS Code: 7257**S/N:** 1YS1–Up

Tighten the hold-downs for the battery in order to prevent the batteries from moving during machine operation.

Battery or Battery Cable - Inspect/Replace

SMCS Code: 1401-561; 1401-040; 1401-510; 1401; 1402-510; 1402-040

WARNING

Personal injury can result from battery fumes or explosion.

Batteries give off flammable fumes that can explode. Electrolyte is an acid and can cause personal injury if it contacts the skin or eyes.

Prevent sparks near the batteries. Sparks could cause vapors to explode. Do not allow jumper cable ends to contact each other or the engine. Improper jumper cable connections can cause an explosion.

Always wear protective glasses when working with batteries.

1. Turn all of the switches to the OFF position. Turn the engine start switch key to the OFF position.
2. Turn the battery disconnect switch to the OFF position. Remove the key.
3. Disconnect the negative battery cable at the battery.
4. Disconnect the positive battery cable at the battery.
5. Disconnect the battery cables at the battery disconnect switch. The battery disconnect switch is connected to the machine frame.
6. Make necessary repairs or replace the battery.
7. Connect the battery cable at the battery disconnect switch.
8. Connect the positive battery cable of the battery.
9. Connect the negative battery cable of the battery.
10. Install the key and turn the battery disconnect switch to the ON position.

i01585072

Belt - Inspect/Adjust/Replace

SMCS Code: 1357-025; 1357-040; 1357-510; 1397-025; 1397-040; 1397-510

Your engine can be equipped with a water pump belt, with a fan drive belt and with accessory drive belts. Your engine can also be equipped with an alternator belt. For maximum engine performance and maximum utilization of your engine, inspect the belts for wear and for cracking. Check the belt tension. Adjust the belt tension in order to minimize belt slippage. Belt slippage will decrease the belt life. Belt slippage will also cause poor performance of the alternator and of any driven equipment.

If new belts are installed, recheck the belt adjustment after 30 minutes of operation. If two belts or more are required for an application, replace the belts in belt sets. If only one belt of a matched set is replaced, the new belt will carry more load. This is due to the fact that the older belts are stretched. The additional load on the new belt could cause the new belt to break.

Water Pump Belt

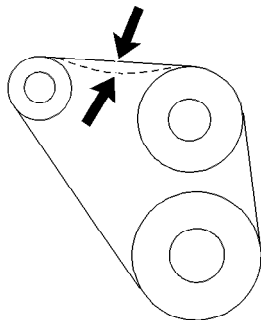


Illustration 267

g00323083

1. To check the belt tension, apply 110 N (25 lb) of force midway between the pulleys. Correctly adjusted belts will deflect 13 to 19 mm (1/2 to 3/4 inch).

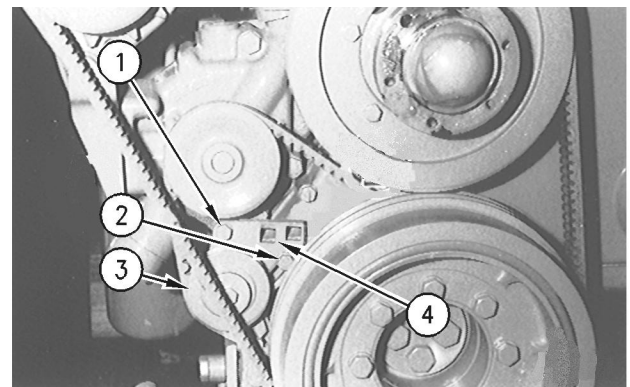


Illustration 268

g00824137

Typical example

2. To adjust the water pump drive belt, loosen mounting bolt (1) and bracket bolt (2).
3. Move idler pulley (3) in order to achieve the correct adjustment.
4. If necessary, use a pry bar in square hole (4) in the mounting bracket.
5. Tighten mounting bolt (1) and bracket bolt (2).
6. If a new belt is installed, run the engine at rated speed for thirty minutes. Check the bolt torque. Readjust the belt, if necessary.

Alternator Belt and Fan Drive Belt

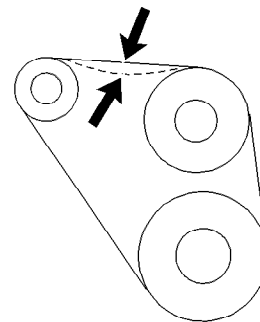


Illustration 269

g00323083

1. To check the belt tension, apply 110 N (25 lb) of force midway between the pulleys. Correctly adjusted belts will deflect 13 to 19 mm (1/2 to 3/4 inch).

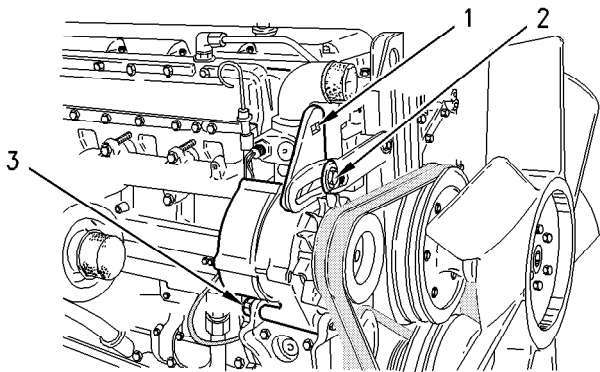


Illustration 270

g00822434

2. To adjust the alternator belt and the fan drive belt, loosen bracket bolt (2) and mounting bolt (3) on the alternator bracket.
3. To achieve the correct adjustment, move the alternator inward or move the alternator outward, as required.
4. If necessary, use a pry bar in hole (1) in the alternator bracket.
5. Tighten mounting bolt (3) and bracket bolt (2).

Note: The alternator shaft nut must be tightened to a torque of $50 \pm 5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$ ($37 \pm 4 \text{ lb ft}$).

6. If new belts are installed, check the belt adjustment again after 30 minutes of engine operation at the rated speed.

Air Conditioner Belt

NOTICE

The V-belt must be tensioned correctly. Failure to tension the belt properly could cause damage to the belt and/or to the air conditioner compressor.

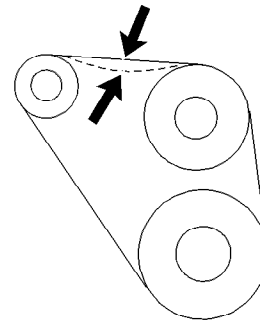


Illustration 271

g00323083

1. Apply approximately 98 N (22 lb) force midway between the pulleys.

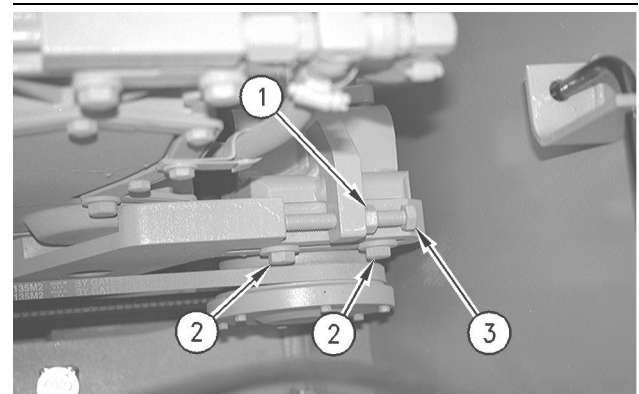


Illustration 272

g00824147

2. Measure the deflection of the belt. The belt should deflect 7 to 10 mm (5/16 to 7/16 inch).
3. If the deflection is not correct, loosen nut (1) and two bolts (2). Turn bolt (3) in order to adjust the belt tension.
4. When the adjustment is correct, tighten nut (1) and two bolts (2) to a torque of $100 \pm 20 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$ ($70 \pm 15 \text{ lb ft}$).
5. Check the deflection again.

Note: If a new belt is installed, check the belt adjustment again after 30 minutes of engine operation at the rated speed.

i01957825

Boom and Stick Linkage - Lubricate

SMCS Code: 6501-086; 6502-086

Forest Machine

Note: For some applications of the machine, the repeated duty cycle of the machine, the repeated duty cycle of the front linkage may only require small angular movements of the boom or stick. There might not be enough angular motion in order to distribute the grease between the pin and the bearing. The operator should operate the boom, the stick and the implement in order to distribute the grease within the joint assemblies.

Note: Caterpillar recommends the use of 5% molybdenum grease for lubricating the boom, stick and bucket control linkage. Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations" for more information on molybdenum grease.

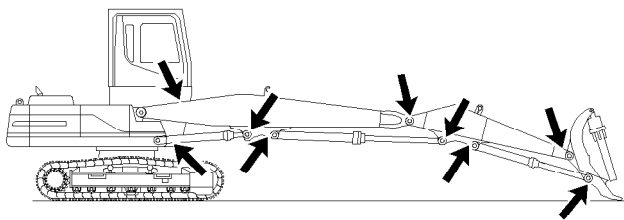


Illustration 273

g00274917

Service a new machine after Every 10 Service Hours only within the initial 100 service hours.

After the initial 100 service hours of operation, service the boom, the stick, and the implement control linkage after Every 50 Service Hours.

Note: If the machine is operated under severe conditions that might cause abrasive material to enter the cylinder bearings, service the boom, the stick, and the implement after Every 10 Service Hours.

Wipe all fittings before you apply lubricant.

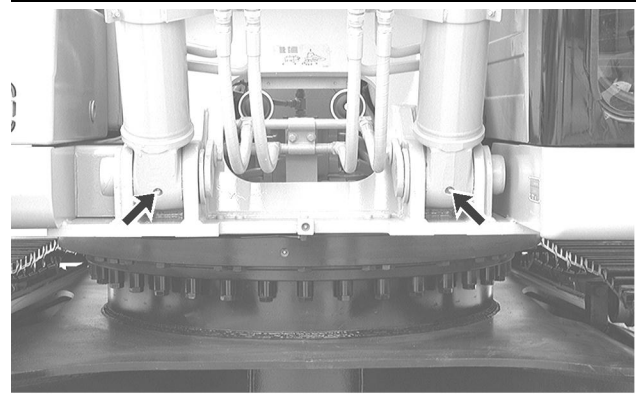


Illustration 274

g00101656

1. Apply lubricant through the fitting at the base of each boom cylinder.

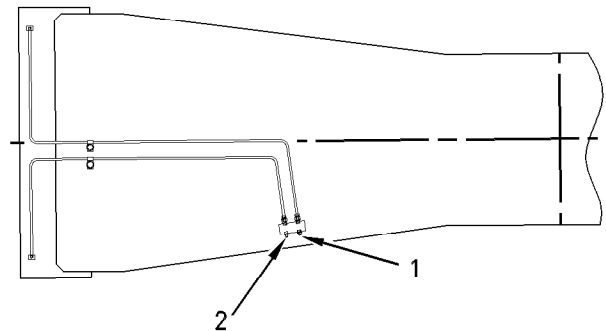


Illustration 275

g00102079

- (1) Fitting. (2) Fitting.

2. Apply lubricant through fittings (1) and (2) at the base of the boom.

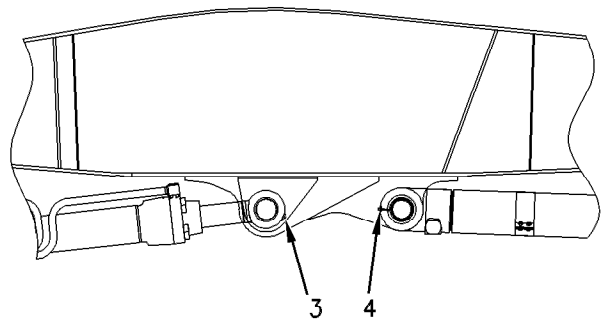


Illustration 276

g00102081

- (3) Fitting. (4) Fitting.

- Apply lubricant through fitting (3) on the rod end of each boom cylinder. Apply lubricant through fitting (4) on the head end of each stick cylinder.

Note: To ensure proper lubrication of the lower boom bearings and of the boom cylinder rod end bearings, lubricant should be applied through fittings (1), (2), (3) and (4). Apply lubricant first when the boom is raised and any implement is suspended. Then apply lubricant when the boom is lowered and the implement is rested on the ground with a slight downward pressure.

Under/Under Heel Boom

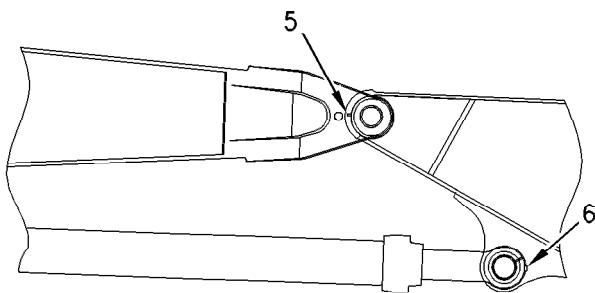


Illustration 277

g00109881

(5) Fitting. (6) Fitting.

- Apply lubricant through two fittings (5) at the connection point of the boom and the stick. Apply lubricant through fitting (6) at the rod end of the stick cylinder.

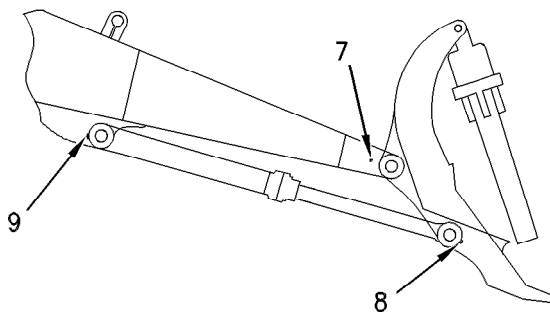


Illustration 278

g00102084

(7) Fitting. (8) Fitting. (9) Fitting.

- Apply lubricant through fitting (7) at the connecting point of the heel and stick pivot area. Apply lubricant through fitting (8) at the rod end of the heel cylinder. Apply lubricant through fitting (9) at the head end of the heel cylinder.

Over/Under Heel Boom

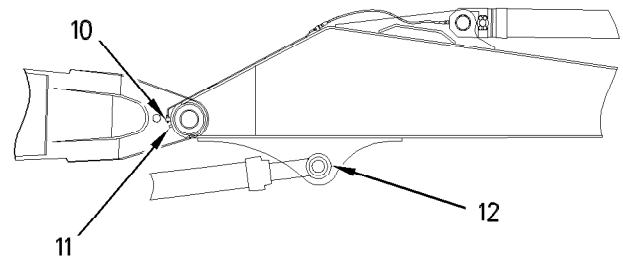


Illustration 279

g00109913

(10) Fitting. (11) Fitting. (12) Fitting.

- Fittings (10) and (11) are located in a manifold block at the connection point of the boom and the stick. Apply lubricant through fitting (10) at the rod end of the heel cylinder. Apply lubricant through fitting (11) in order to lubricate the bearing that connects the boom and the stick. Apply lubricant through fitting (12) at the rod end of the stick cylinder.

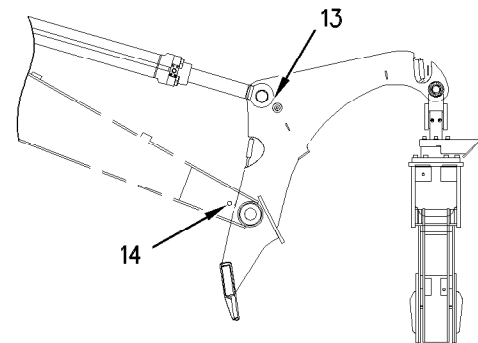


Illustration 280

g00109914

(13) Fitting. (14) Fitting.

- Apply lubricant through fitting (13) at the rod end of the heel cylinder. Apply lubricant through fitting (14) at the connecting point of the heel and stick pivot area.

Grapple

Wipe all fittings before you apply lubricant.

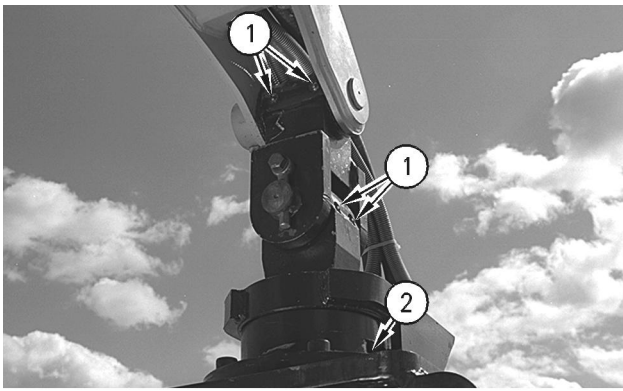


Illustration 281 g00108120
 (1) Fittings. (2) Fitting.

1. Apply lubricant through four fittings (1) on the crosshead and the upperhead. Apply lubricant through fitting (2) which is on the rotator.

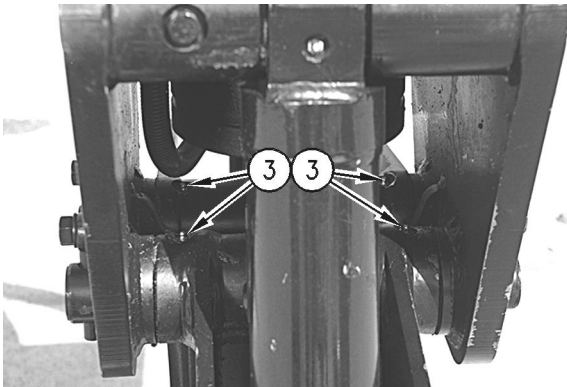


Illustration 282 g00108121
 (3) Fittings.

2. Apply lubricant through four fittings (3) that are located on the leg pivot pins.

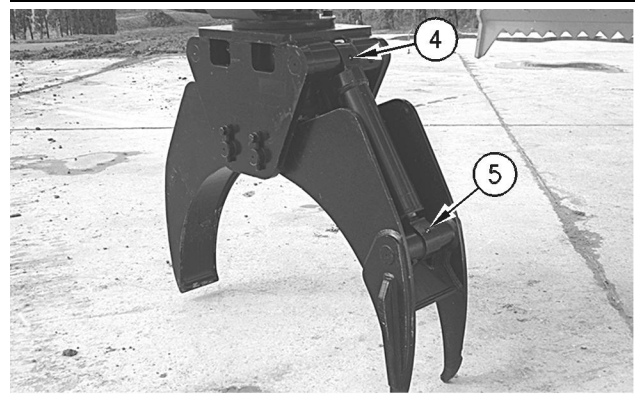


Illustration 283 g00108124
 (3) Fitting. (4) Fitting.

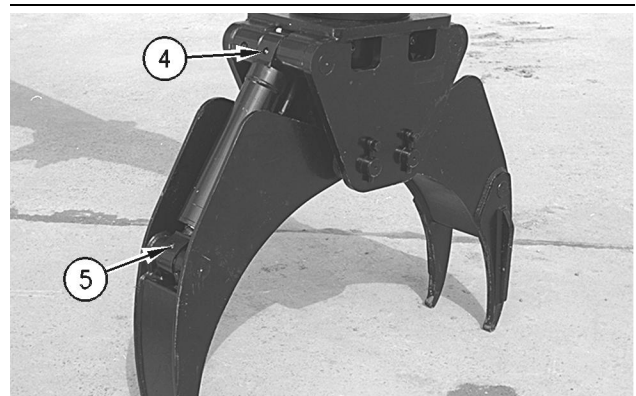


Illustration 284 g00108125
 (4) Fitting. (5) Fitting.

3. Apply lubricant through fitting (4) which is on the head end of each leg cylinder. Apply lubricant through fitting (5) which is on the rod end of each leg cylinder.

Material Handler

Note: For some applications of the machine, the repeated duty cycle of the front linkage may only require small angular movements of the boom or stick. There might not be enough angular motion in order to distribute the grease between the pin and the bearing. The operator should operate the boom, the stick and the implement in order to distribute the grease within the joint assemblies.

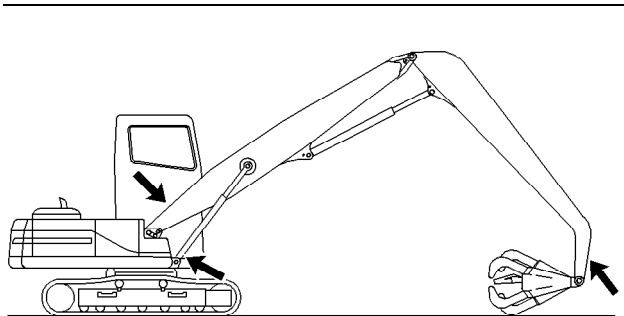


Illustration 285 g00274919

Service a new machine after Every 10 Service Hours only within the initial 100 service hours.

After the initial 100 service hours of operation, service the boom, the stick, and the implement control linkage after Every 50 Service Hours.

Note: If the machine is operated under severe conditions that might cause abrasive material to enter the cylinder bearings, service the boom, the stick, and the bucket linkage after Every 10 Service Hours.

Wipe all fittings before you apply lubricant.

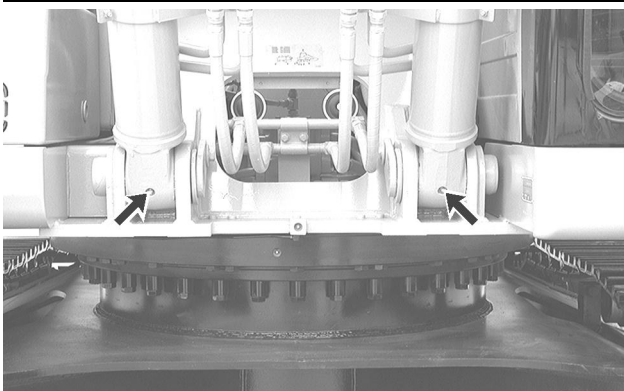


Illustration 286 g00101656

1. Apply lubricant through the fitting at the base of each boom cylinder.

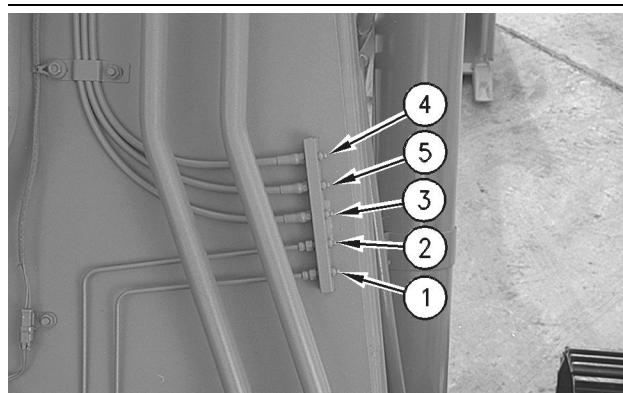


Illustration 287 g00102063

(1) Fitting. (2) Fitting. (3) Fitting. (4) Fitting. (5) Fitting.

2. The fittings are at the base of the boom. To lubricate the lower boom bearings, apply lubricant through fittings (1) and (2). To lubricate the boom cylinder rod, apply lubricant through fittings (3) and (4). To lubricate the stick cylinder head, apply lubricant through fitting (5).

Note: To ensure proper lubrication of the lower boom bearings and of the boom cylinder rod end bearings, lubricant should be applied through fittings (1), (2), (3), and (4). Apply lubricant first when the boom is raised and any implement is suspended. Then apply lubricant when the boom is lowered and the implement is rested on the ground with a slight downward pressure.

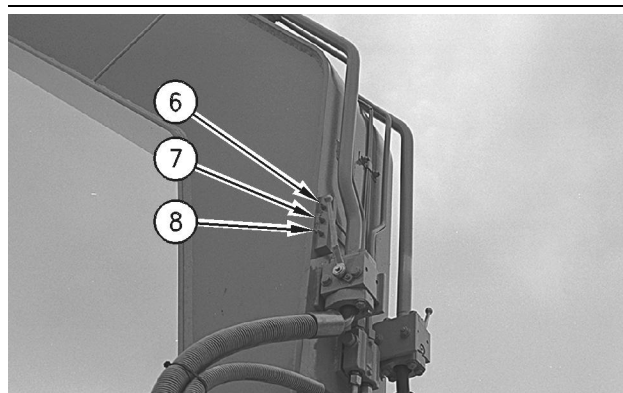


Illustration 288 g00274920

(6) Fitting. (7) Fitting. (8) Fitting.

Maintenance Section
Boom, Stick and Bucket Linkage - Lubricate

3. The fittings are located at the end of the stick.
Apply lubricant through fittings (6) and (8) in order to lubricate the connection point of the boom and the stick. Apply lubricant through fitting (7) in order to lubricate the rod end of the stick cylinder.

i01961446

Boom, Stick and Bucket Linkage - Lubricate

SMCS Code: 6501-086; 6502-086; 6513-086

Note: Caterpillar recommends the use of 5% molybdenum grease for lubricating the boom, stick and bucket control linkage. Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations" for more information on molybdenum grease.

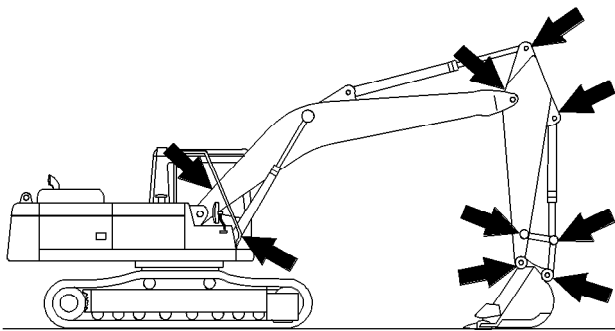


Illustration 289

g00102961

Wipe all fittings before you apply lubricant.

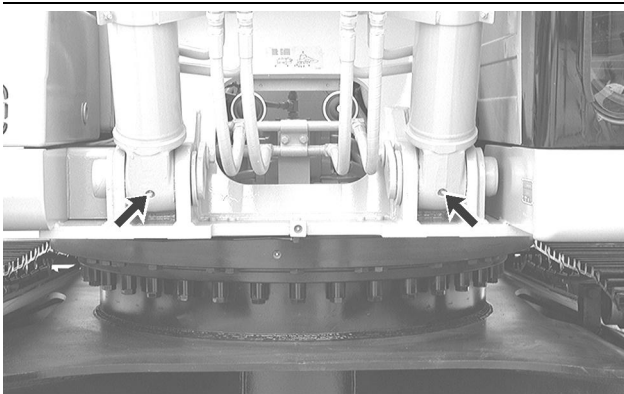


Illustration 290

g00101656

1. Apply lubricant through the fitting at the base of each boom cylinder.



Illustration 291

g00101660

2. The fittings are at the base of the boom. The fittings can be serviced from the platform that is on the storage box. To lubricate the lower boom bearings, apply lubricant through fittings (1) and (2). To lubricate the boom cylinder rod, apply lubricant through fittings (3) and (4). To lubricate the stick cylinder head, apply lubricant through fitting (5).

Use Steps 2a through 2d to ensure proper lubrication of the lower boom bearings and of the boom cylinder rod end bearings.

- Apply grease through the grease fitting while the boom is raised and all of the implement is suspended.
- Lower the boom and the implement to the ground.
- Apply a slight downward pressure on the implement.
- Apply grease through the grease fitting.

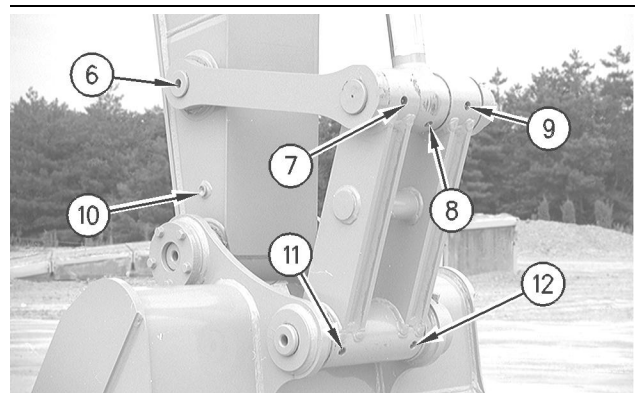


Illustration 292

g00101661

3. Apply lubricant through fittings (6), (7), (8), and (9). These fittings are on the link.

4. Apply lubricant through fittings (10), (11), and (12). These fittings are on the bucket.

i03902571

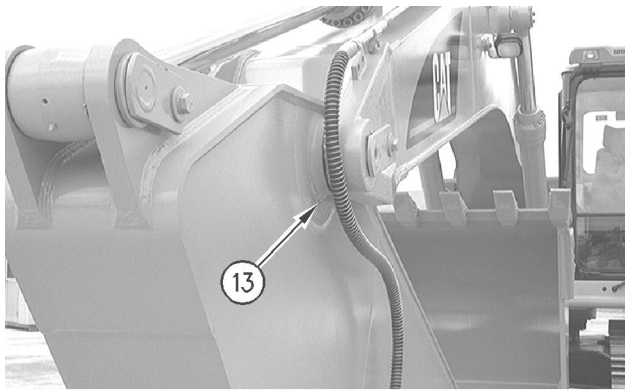


Illustration 293

g00319603

- 5.

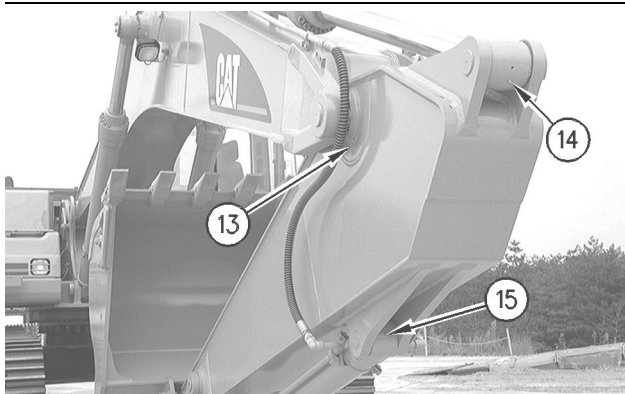


Illustration 294

g00319583

6. Apply lubricant through fitting (14) on the stick cylinder rod. Apply lubricant through two fittings (13). Fittings (13) are at the connection point of the boom and of the stick. Apply lubricant through fitting (15) on the bucket cylinder head end.

Bucket Linkage - Inspect/Adjust

SMCS Code: 6513-025; 6513-040

WARNING

Unexpected machine movement can cause injury or death.

To avoid possible machine movement, move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position and attach a Special Instruction, SEHS7332, "Do Not Operate" or similar warning tag to the hydraulic lockout control.

NOTICE

Improperly adjusted bucket clearance could cause galling on the contact surfaces of the bucket and stick, resulting in excessive noise and/or damaged O-ring seals.

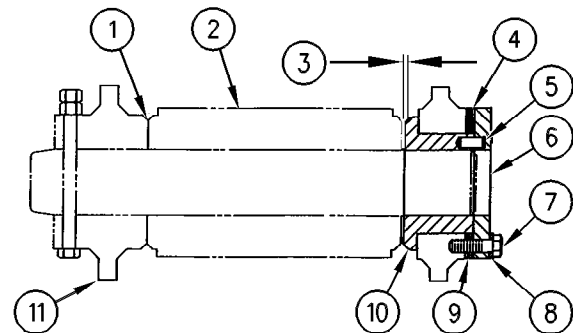


Illustration 295

g00101687

(1) No gap. (2) Stick boss. (3) Bucket clearance. (4) Shims. (5) Pin. (6) Plate. (7) Bolts. (8) Washers. (9) Location. (10) Flange. (11) Bucket boss.

The clearance of the bucket control linkage on this machine can be adjusted by shimming. If the gap between the bucket and the stick becomes excessive, adjust bucket clearance (3) to 0.5 to 1 mm (0.02 to 0.04 inch).

Two shims of different thickness are used at location (9). The thicknesses of the shims are 0.5 mm (0.02 inch) and 1.0 mm (0.04 inch).

i02420572

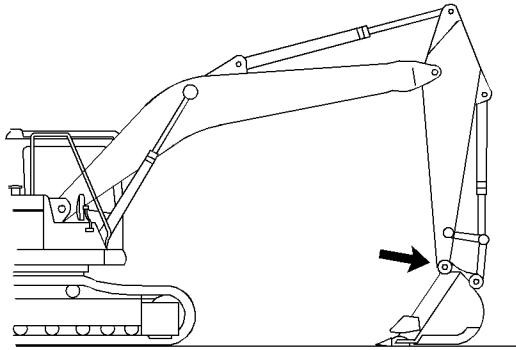


Illustration 296

g02109636

Area for linkage adjustment

1. Position the machine on a level surface and lower the bucket to the ground.
2. Slowly operate the swing control lever until stick boss (2) and the bucket boss (11) are in full face contact at no gap (1). This will help to determine the total clearance of the connection point of the stick and of the bucket.
3. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position. Stop the engine.
4. Measure bucket clearance (3), which is the existing total clearance.
5. Determine the number of shims that need to be removed from shims (4) by using the following calculation:

Subtract 0.5 mm (0.02 inch) or 1.0 mm (0.04 inch) from bucket clearance (3).
6. Remove the appropriate number of shims at location (9) in order to meet the above thickness. Make sure that you use a minimum of three 0.5 mm (0.02 inch) shims. To remove the shims, remove bolts (7), washers (8), and plate (6).
7. After the correct number of shims has been removed and pin (5) is aligned with the pin hole, install plate (6), washers (8), and bolts (7). Tighten bolts (7) to a torque of $240 \pm 40 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$ ($175 \pm 30 \text{ lb ft}$).
8. After installation, make sure that bucket clearance (3) is still correct.

Bucket Tips - Inspect/Replace

SMCS Code: 6805-040; 6805-510

WARNING

Personal injury or death can result from bucket falling.

Block the bucket before changing bucket tips or side cutters.

Bucket Tips

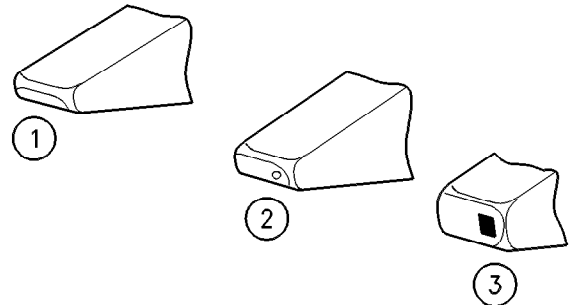


Illustration 297

g00101352

- (1) Usable
- (2) Replace this bucket tip.
- (3) Overworn

Check the bucket tips for wear. If the bucket tip has a hole, replace the bucket tip.

1. Remove the pin from the bucket tip. The pin can be removed by one of the following methods.
 - Use a hammer and a punch from the retainer side of the bucket to drive out the pin.
 - Use a Pin-Master. Follow Step 1a through Step 1c for the procedure.

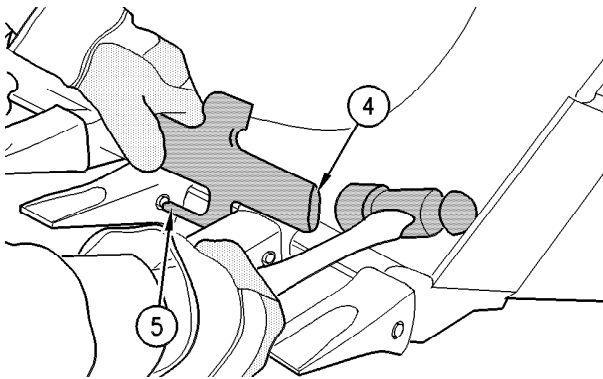


Illustration 298

g00590670

- (4) Back of Pin-Master
(5) Extractor

- a. Place the Pin-Master on the bucket tip.
- b. Align extractor (5) with the pin.
- c. Strike the Pin-Master at the back of the tool (4) and remove the pin.

Note: Discard the old pin and the retainer assembly. When you change tips, use a new pin and a new retainer assembly. Refer to the appropriate parts manual for your machine.

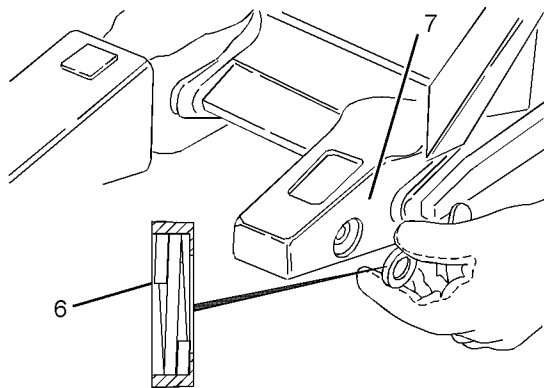


Illustration 299

g01194448

- (6) Retainer assembly
(7) Adapter

2. Clean the adapter and the pin.
3. Fit retainer assembly (6) into the counterbore that is in the side of adapter (7). Make sure that the face of the retainer assembly with the marking "OUTSIDE" is visible.

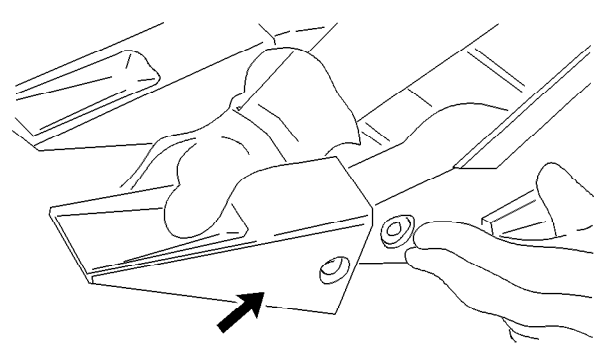


Illustration 300

g00101359

4. Install the new bucket tip onto the adapter.

Note: The bucket tips can be rotated by 180 degrees in order to allow the tip to wear evenly. You may also move the tips from the outside teeth to the inside teeth. Check the tips often. If wear is present on the tips, rotate the tips. The outside teeth generate the most wear.

5. Drive the pin through the bucket tip. The pin can be installed by using one of the following methods:

- From the same side of the retainer, drive the pin through the bucket tip, the retainer assembly, and the adapter.
- Use a Pin-Master. Follow Step 5a through Step 5e for the procedure.

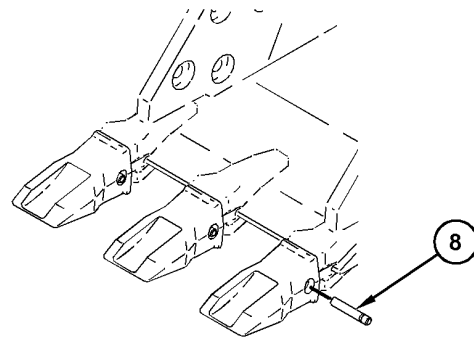


Illustration 301

g01209166

- (8) Pin

- a. Insert pin (8) through the bucket tip.

Maintenance Section
Bucket Tips - Inspect/Replace

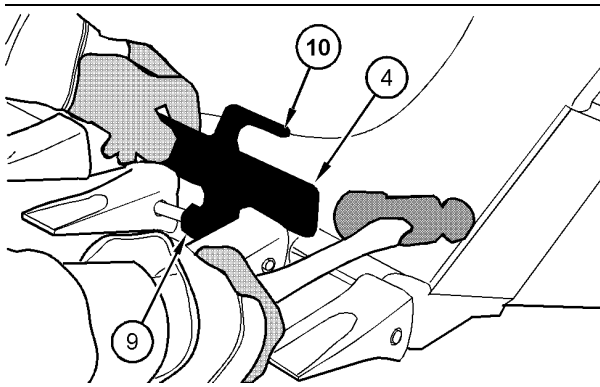


Illustration 302

g01209140

- (4) Back of Pin-Master
- (9) Pin holder
- (10) Pin setter

- b. Place the Pin-Master over the bucket tips so that the pin will fit into the counterbore of the pin holder (9).
- c. Strike the Pin-Master with a hammer at the back of the tool (4) in order to insert the pin.
- d. Slide pin holder (9) away from the pin and rotate the tool slightly in order to align pin setter (10) with the pin.

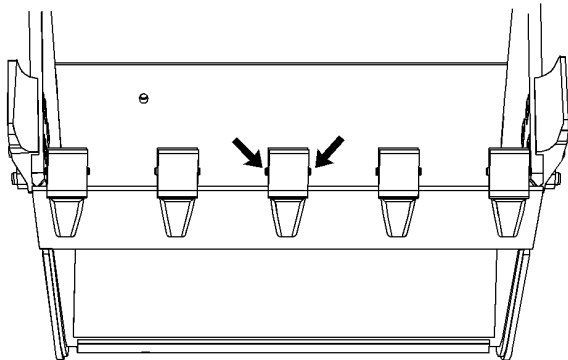


Illustration 303

g01209159

Final assembly of pin into bucket tip.

- e. Strike the end of the tool until the pin is fully inserted.

Side Cutters

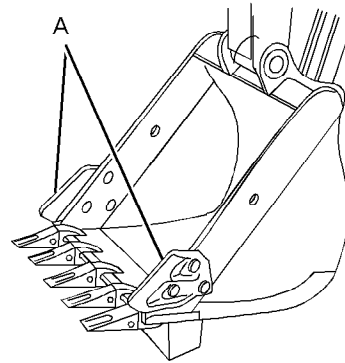


Illustration 304

g01092808

Bucket With Side Cutters

(A) Side cutters

1. Remove the mounting bolts and the side cutters.
2. Clean the mounting surface of the side plate on the bucket and of the side cutter. Remove any burrs or protrusions on the mating surfaces.

Note: Some side cutters may be rotated for additional wear.

3. Install the side cutter.

Note: Certain bolts may require thread compound.

4. Hand tighten the bolts.

5. Torque the mounting bolts to the correct specification.

i01546947

Cab Air Filter (Fresh Air) - Clean/Replace

SMCS Code: 7342-510; 7342-070

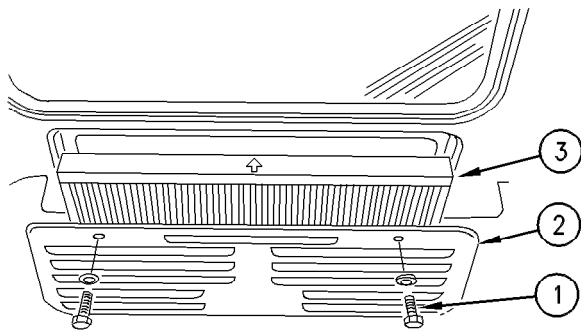


Illustration 305

g00102781

The cab air filter is behind the cab.

1. Loosen two bolts (1) and remove filter cover (2) and air filter (3).
2. Clean the air filter with a maximum of 200 kPa (30 psi) pressure air.
3. After you clean the air filter, inspect the air filter. If the air filter is damaged or badly contaminated, use a new air filter.
4. Install the air filter and the filter cover.

Note: Make sure that the arrow on top of the air filter is facing forward.

i00112868

Cab Tilt Hydraulic System Oil - Change

SMCS Code: 7341-044

The cab tilt hydraulic system is equipped only on certain machines.

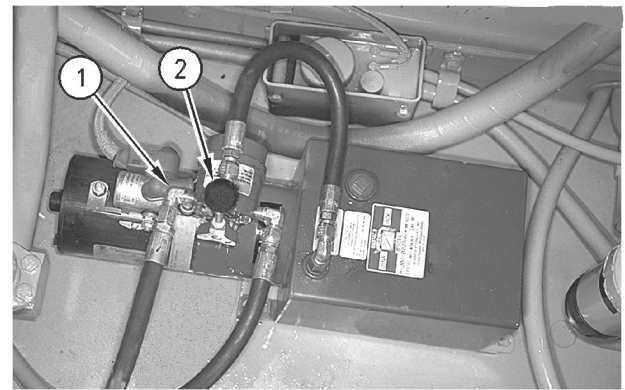


Illustration 306

g00106984

(1) Hydraulic line. (2) Cab tilt control lever. The cab tilt hydraulic system is located behind the left engine access door.

1. Make sure that the cab tilt cylinder is fully retracted.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on Containing Fluid Spillage.

2. Disconnect line (1) from the valve.
3. Install a suitable drain line onto this valve.
4. Refer to Operation and Maintenance, "Refill Capacities" for the correct size of container that is needed to contain the hydraulic oil. Place the open end of the drain line into a suitable container and move cab tilt control lever (2) to the LOWER position in order to operate the machine.
5. When the volume of oil that is flowing from the drain begins to decrease, return the cab tilt control lever (2) to the CENTER position.
6. Reinstall line (1). Make sure that the fittings are slightly loose. This will allow air to escape.
7. Refill the reservoir with oil until the level is 12 mm (0.5 inch) from the top surface of the reservoir.
8. Momentarily move cab tilt control lever (2) to the LOWER position in order to operate the pump. Return the cab tilt control lever to the CENTER position. Observe the oil that is flowing from the loose fitting in line (1).
9. Repeat the previous step until no air is visible in the oil that is flowing from the loose fitting.
10. Check the oil level in the reservoir. Add oil if it is necessary.
11. Tighten the fitting in line (1).
12. Check line (1) for leaks.

i00112932

Cab Tilt Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check

SMCS Code: 7341-535

The cab tilt hydraulic system is equipped only on certain machines.

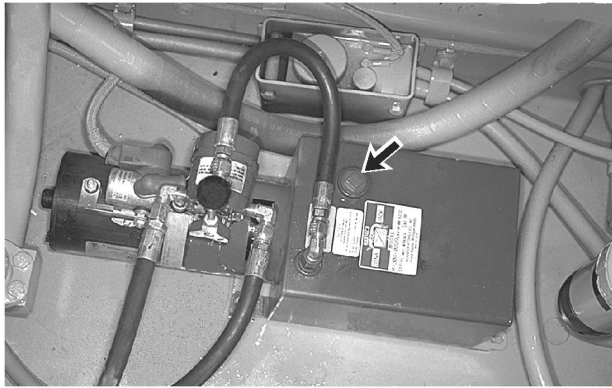


Illustration 307

g00106990

The cab tilt pump is located behind the left engine access door.

1. Make sure that the cab tilt cylinder is fully retracted.
2. Remove the vent plug.
3. Make sure that the oil level is within 12 mm (0.5 inch) from the top surface of the reservoir.
4. Reinstall the vent plug.

i00112979

Cab Tilt Hydraulic System Screen - Clean/Replace

SMCS Code: 7341-070; 7341-510

The cab tilt hydraulic system is equipped only on certain machines.

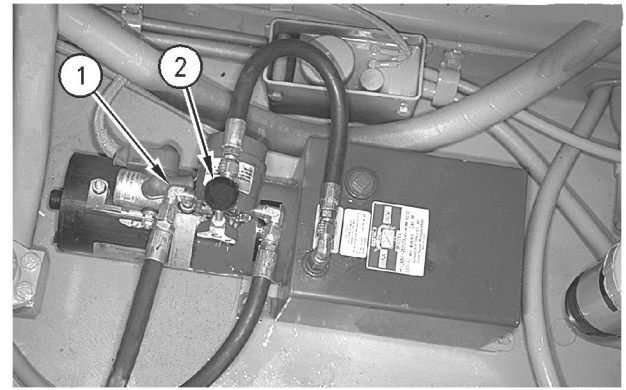


Illustration 308

g00106984

(1) Hydraulic line. (2) Cab tilt control lever. The cab tilt pump is located behind the left engine access door.

1. Make sure that the cab tilt cylinder is fully retracted.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on Containing Fluid Spillage.

2. Disconnect line (1) from the valve.
3. Install a suitable drain line onto this valve.
4. Refer to Operation and Maintenance, "Refill Capacities" for the correct size of container that is needed to contain the hydraulic oil. Place the open end of the drain line into a suitable container and move cab tilt control lever (2) to the LOWER position in order to operate the machine.
5. When the volume of oil that is flowing from the drain begins to decrease, return the cab tilt control lever (2) to the CENTER position.

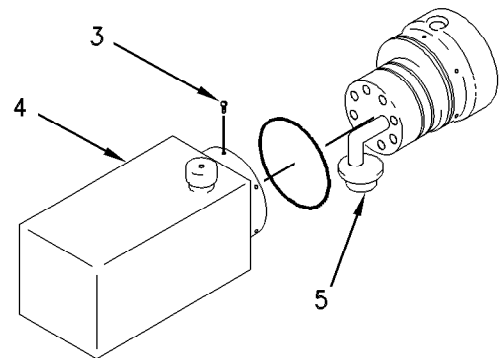


Illustration 309

g00102110

(3) screw. (4) reservoir. (5) screen.

6. Remove six screws (3).
7. Slide reservoir (4) away from the pump.

8. Remove screen (5).
9. Wash the screen in a clean nonflammable solvent and allow the screen to dry. Inspect the screen and replace the screen if the screen is damaged.
10. Reinstall screen (5) and reinstall reservoir (4) by using the six screws that were removed previously.
11. Reinstall line (1). Make sure that the fittings are slightly loose. This will allow air to escape.
12. Refill the reservoir with oil until the level is 12 mm (0.5 inch) from the top surface of the reservoir.
13. Momentarily move cab tilt control lever (2) to the LOWER position in order to operate the pump. Return the lever to the CENTER position. Observe the oil that is flowing from the loose fitting in line (1).
14. Repeat the previous step until no air is visible in the oil that is flowing from the loose fitting.
15. Check the oil level in the reservoir. Add oil if it is necessary.
16. Tighten the fitting in line (1).
17. Check line (1) for leaks.

i00570850

Circuit Breakers - Reset

SMCS Code: 1420-529

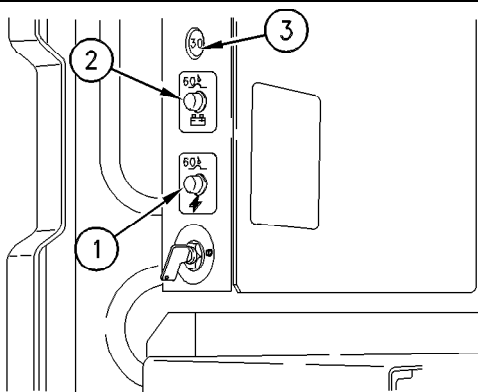


Illustration 310

g00280133

The circuit breakers are inside the access door on the front left of the machine.



Alternator Circuit (1) – This circuit breaker is designed to protect the alternator. If the batteries are installed with reversed polarity, the circuit breaker would prevent the alternator from damaging the rectifier.



Main Circuit (2) – This circuit breaker is designed to protect the wires between the batteries and the fuses. If the wires are shorted to the machine's body, this circuit breaker would minimize the damage to the wires.

Generator Circuit (3) – This circuit breaker is designed to protect the generator. If the wires are shorted to the machine's body, this circuit breaker would minimize the damage to the wires.

The Alternator Circuit and Main Circuit have a capacity of 60 Amp.

The Generator Circuit has a capacity of 30 Amp.

Circuit Breaker Reset – Push in the button in order to reset the circuit breaker. If the electrical system is working properly, the button will remain depressed. If the button does not remain depressed, check the appropriate electrical circuit. Repair the electrical circuit, if necessary.

i01041005

Condenser (Refrigerant) - Clean

SMCS Code: 1805-070

NOTICE

If excessively dirty, clean condenser with a brush. To prevent damage or bending of the fins, do not use a stiff brush.

Repair the fins if found defective.

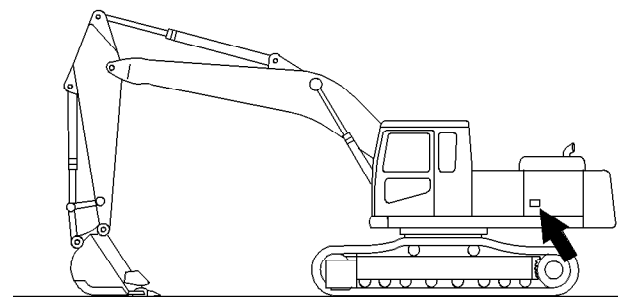


Illustration 311

g00102191

1. Open the access door on the left side of the machine.

Maintenance Section
Cooling System Coolant (ELC) - Change

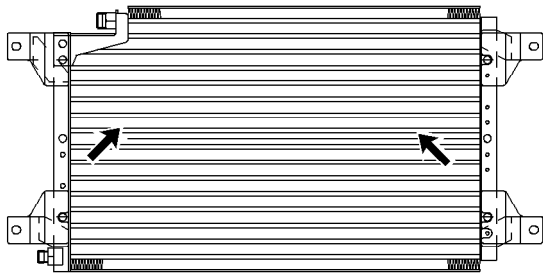


Illustration 312

g00537515

Typical example

2. Inspect the condenser for debris. Clean the condenser, if necessary.
3. Use clean water to wash off all dust and dirt from the condenser.
4. Close the access door.

i01956335

Cooling System Coolant (ELC) - Change

SMCS Code: 1350-044

NOTICE

Do not change the coolant until you read and understand the material found in the Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Cooling System Specifications" section. Failure to do so could result in damage to the cooling systems components.

NOTICE

Mixing ELC with other products reduces the effectiveness of the coolant and shortens coolant life. Use only Caterpillar products or commercial products that have passed the Caterpillar EC-1 specifications for premixed or concentrate coolants. Use only Caterpillar Extender with Caterpillar ELC. Failure to follow these recommendations could result in the damage to cooling systems components.

If ELC cooling system contamination occurs see the topic Extended Life Coolant (ELC) in the Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations".

If the coolant in the machine is changed to Extended Life Coolant from another type of coolant, see Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Extended Life Coolant Cooling System Maintenance".

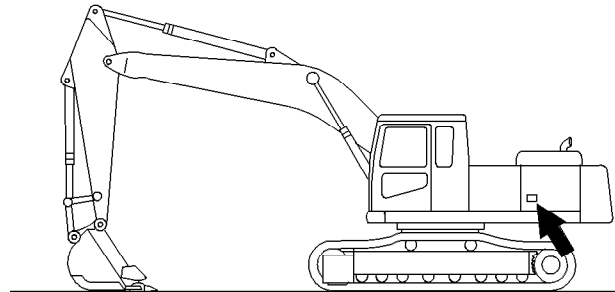


Illustration 313

g00101813

1. Open the left access door.

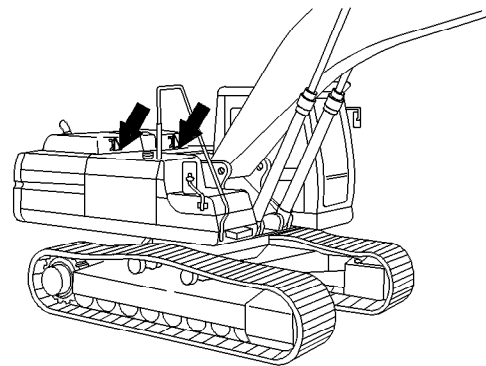


Illustration 314

g00101796

2. Unlatch the engine hood and raise the engine hood.

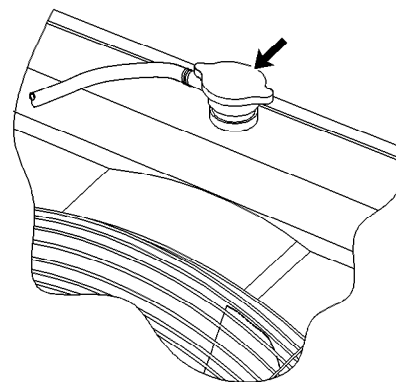


Illustration 315

g00544510

3. Slowly loosen the pressure cap that is on the radiator in order to release pressure from the cooling system.
4. Remove the pressure cap.

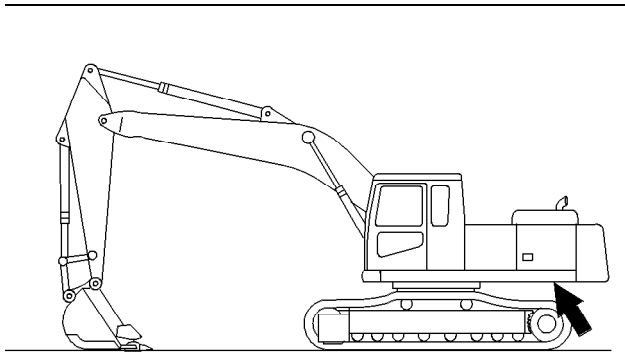


Illustration 316

g00544378

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “General Hazard Information” for information that pertains to containing fluid spillage.

5. Open the drain valve and allow the coolant to drain into a suitable container. The drain valve is under the radiator.
6. Flush the cooling system. Follow Step 6a through Step 6h in order to properly flush the cooling system.
 - a. Close the drain valve.
 - b. Fill the cooling system with clean water.
 - c. Install the pressure cap.
 - d. Start the engine and run the engine until the engine reaches operating temperature.
 - e. Stop the engine and allow the engine to cool.
 - f. Loosen the pressure cap slowly in order to relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
 - g. Open the drain valve that is underneath the radiator and allow the coolant to drain into a suitable container.
 - h. Flush the radiator with clean water until the draining water is transparent.
7. Close the drain valve.
8. Add the Extended Life Coolant. Refer to the following topics:
 - Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU6250, “Cooling System Specifications”
 - Operation and Maintenance Manual, “Capacities (Refill)”

9. Start the engine. Operate the engine without the cooling system pressure cap until the water temperature regulator opens and the coolant level stabilizes.
10. Maintain the coolant level within 13 mm (.5 inches) of the bottom of the filler pipe.
11. Inspect the gasket of the cooling system pressure cap. If the gasket is damaged, replace the pressure cap.
12. Install the cooling system pressure cap.
13. Stop the engine.

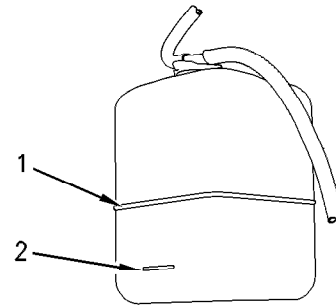


Illustration 317

g00545226

- (1) “FULL”
- (2) “LOW”

14. Check the coolant reservoir. Maintain the coolant level between “FULL” mark (1) and “LOW” mark (2).
15. If additional coolant is necessary, remove the reservoir cap and add the appropriate coolant solution.
16. Install the reservoir cap.
17. Close the engine hood and latch the engine hood. Close the left access door.

i02018491

Cooling System Coolant Extender (ELC) - Add

SMCS Code: 1352; 1353; 1395

When a Caterpillar Extended Life Coolant (ELC) is used, an Extender must be added to the cooling system. See Special Publication, SEBU6250, “Cooling Recommendations” for all cooling system requirements.

Use a coolant conditioner test kit in order to check the concentration of the coolant.

Maintenance Section
Cooling System Coolant Level - Check

NOTICE

Mixing Extended Life Coolant (ELC) with other products reduces the effectiveness of the coolant and shortens coolant life. Use only Caterpillar products or commercial products that have passed the Caterpillar EC-1 specification for premixed or concentrate coolants. Use only Caterpillar Extender with Caterpillar ELC. Failure to follow these recommendations could result in the damage to cooling systems components.

If ELC cooling system contamination occurs refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU6250, "ELC Cooling System Contamination".

This machine was factory filled with Extended Life Coolant.

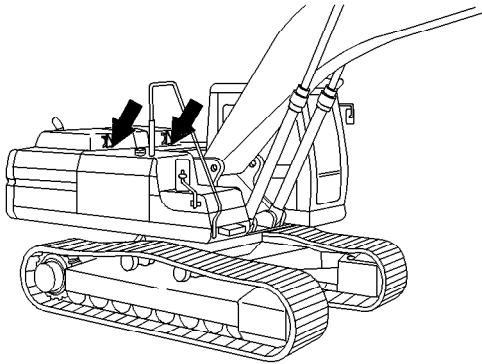


Illustration 318

g00101428

1. Unlatch the engine hood and raise the engine hood.

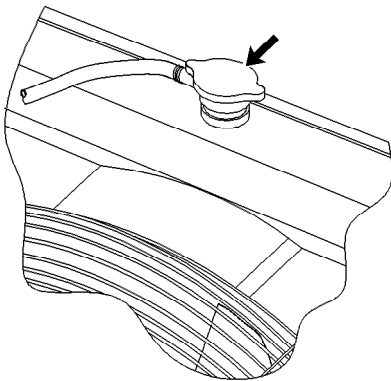


Illustration 319

g00544510

2. Loosen the cooling system pressure cap slowly in order to relieve system pressure. Remove the pressure cap.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on containing fluid spillage.

3. It may be necessary to drain some coolant from the radiator so that Caterpillar Extender can be added to the cooling system.

Note: Always discard drained fluids according to local regulations.

4. Add Extender to the cooling system. Refer to the following topics for the proper amount of Caterpillar Extender:
 - Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Extended Life Coolant (ELC)"
 - Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Capacities (Refill)"
5. Inspect the gasket of the cooling system pressure cap. If the gasket is damaged, replace the pressure cap.
6. Install the cooling system pressure cap.
7. Close the engine hood and latch the engine hood.

i02018254

Cooling System Coolant Level - Check

SMCS Code: 1350-040; 1350-535-FLV; 1395-535-FLV

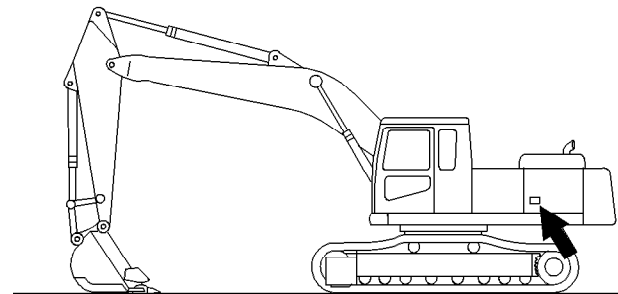


Illustration 320

g00101557

1. Open the left access door.

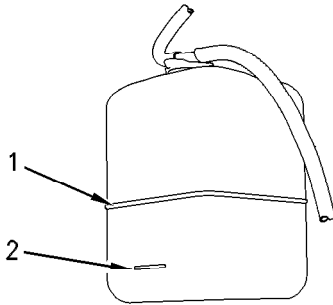


Illustration 321

g00545226

- (A) "FULL" level
(B) "LOW" level

2. Check the coolant level of the coolant reservoir. Maintain the coolant level between the "FULL" mark and the "LOW" mark. If the coolant reservoir is empty, follow Steps 2a through 2i.

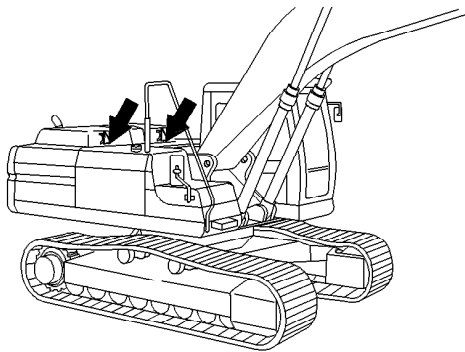


Illustration 322

g00101561

- a. Unlatch the engine hood and raise the engine hood.

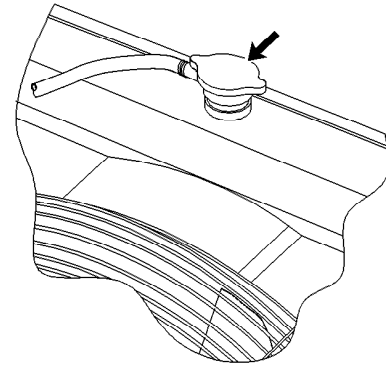


Illustration 323

g00544510

- b. Slowly loosen the cooling system pressure cap in order to relieve system pressure. Remove the pressure cap.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on containing fluid spillage.

- c. Add the appropriate coolant solution to the cooling system. Refer to the following topics:
- Special Publication, SENR6250, "Cooling System Specifications"
 - Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Capacities (Refill)"
- d. Start the engine. Operate the engine without the cooling system pressure cap until the water temperature regulator opens and the coolant level stabilizes.
- e. Maintain the coolant level within 13 mm (0.5 inch) of the bottom of the filler pipe.

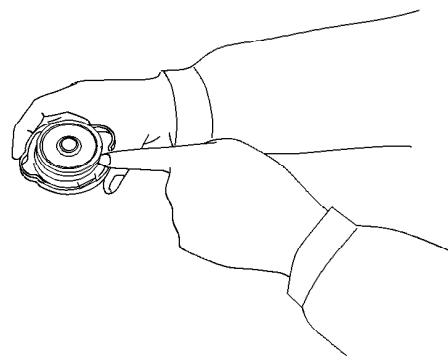


Illustration 324

g00102170

- f. Inspect the condition of the gasket on the pressure cap. If the gasket is damaged, replace the pressure cap.

Maintenance Section

Cooling System Coolant Sample (Level 1) - Obtain

- g. Install the cooling system pressure cap.
- h. Stop the engine.
- i. Close the engine hood and latch the engine hood.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on containing fluid spillage.

3. If additional coolant is necessary, remove the reservoir cap and add the appropriate coolant solution.
4. Install the reservoir cap.
5. Close the left access door.

i02425978

Cooling System Coolant Sample (Level 1) - Obtain

SMCS Code: 1395-008; 1395-554; 7542

Note: It is not necessary to obtain a Coolant Sample (Level 1) if the cooling system is filled with Cat ELC (Extended Life Coolant). Cooling systems that are filled with Cat ELC should have a Coolant Sample (Level 2) that is obtained at the recommended interval that is stated in the Maintenance Interval Schedule.

Note: Obtain a Coolant Sample (Level 1) if the cooling system is filled with any other coolant instead of Cat ELC. This includes the following types of coolants.

- Commercial long life coolants that meet the Caterpillar Engine Coolant Specification -1 (Caterpillar EC-1)
- Cat Diesel Engine Antifreeze/Coolant (DEAC)
- Commercial heavy-duty antifreeze/coolant solution

NOTICE

Always use a designated pump for oil sampling, and use a separate designated pump for coolant sampling. Using the same pump for both types of samples may contaminate the samples that are being drawn. This contaminate may cause a false analysis and an incorrect interpretation that could lead to concerns by both dealers and customers.

Note: Level 1 results may indicate a need for Level 2 Analysis.

NOTICE

Care must be taken to ensure that fluids are contained during performance of inspection, maintenance, testing, adjusting and repair of the product. Be prepared to collect the fluid with suitable containers before opening any compartment or disassembling any component containing fluids.

Refer to Special Publication, NENG2500, "Caterpillar Dealer Service Tool Catalog" for tools and supplies suitable to collect and contain fluids on Caterpillar products.

Dispose of all fluids according to local regulations and mandates.

Obtain the sample of the coolant as close as possible to the recommended sampling interval. The recommended sampling interval for Level 1 Coolant Analysis is every 250 service hours. In order to receive the full effect of S·O·S analysis, you must establish a consistent trend of data. In order to establish a pertinent history of data, perform consistent samplings that are evenly spaced. Supplies for collecting samples can be obtained from your Caterpillar dealer.

Use the following guidelines for proper sampling of the coolant:

- Complete the information on the label for the sampling bottle before you begin to take the samples.
- Keep the unused sampling bottles stored in plastic bags.
- Keep the lids on empty sampling bottles until you are ready to collect the sample.
- Place the sample in the mailing tube immediately after obtaining the sample in order to avoid contamination.
- Never collect samples from expansion bottles.
- Never collect samples from the drain for a system.

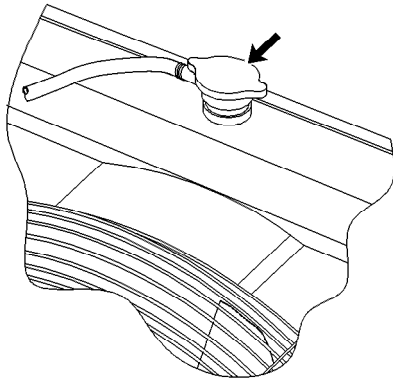


Illustration 325

g00544510

⚠ WARNING

Pressurized System: Hot coolant can cause serious burns. To open the cooling system filler cap, stop the engine and wait until the cooling system components are cool. Loosen the cooling system pressure cap slowly in order to relieve the pressure.

1. The machine needs to be operated in order to circulate the coolant. Collect the sample after a normal workday. Collect the samples from one to two hours after the engine has been shut off.
2. Start the engine momentarily in order to circulate the coolant again.
3. Shut off the engine.
4. Carefully remove the radiator cap.
5. Use a vacuum pump and draw the sample. Do not allow dirt or other contaminants to enter the sampling bottle. Fill the sampling bottle three-fourths from the top. Do not fill the bottle completely.
6. Place the sampling bottle with the completed label into the mailing tube.
7. Install the radiator cap.

i07349178

Cooling System Coolant Sample (Level 2) - Obtain

SMCS Code: 1395-008; 1395-554; 7542

Reference: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Cooling System Coolant Sample (Level 1) - Obtain" for the guidelines for proper sampling of the coolant.

Obtain the sample of the coolant as close as possible to the recommended sampling interval. Supplies for collecting samples can be obtained from your Cat dealer.

Submit the sample for Level 2 analysis.

Reference: For additional information about coolant analysis, refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations" or consult your Cat dealer.

i00059334

Cooling System Hoses - Inspect

SMCS Code: 1380-510; 1380-040



Illustration 326

g00101547

1. Inspect all hoses for leaks due to cracking, for softness next to the clamps, and for loose clamps.
2. Replace hoses that are cracked or soft and tighten any loose clamps.

Replace the Hoses



Illustration 327

g00101549

1. Loosen the radiator cap slowly in order to relieve any pressure. Remove the radiator cap.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on Containing Fluid Spillage.

2. Drain the coolant from the cooling system to a level that is below the hose that is being replaced.

Note: Drained fluids should always be disposed of according to local regulations.

3. Loosen the hose clamps and disconnect the damaged hose. Replace the damaged hose with a new hose.
4. Add coolant until the level is between the marks on the coolant reservoir.

i00702568

Engine Air Filter Secondary Element - Replace

SMCS Code: 1054-510

NOTICE

Always replace the secondary filter element. Never attempt to reuse the secondary filter element by cleaning the element.

When the primary filter element is replaced, the secondary filter element should be replaced.

The secondary filter element should also be replaced if the restricted Air Filter indicator comes on after the installation of a clean primary filter element or if the exhaust smoke is still black.

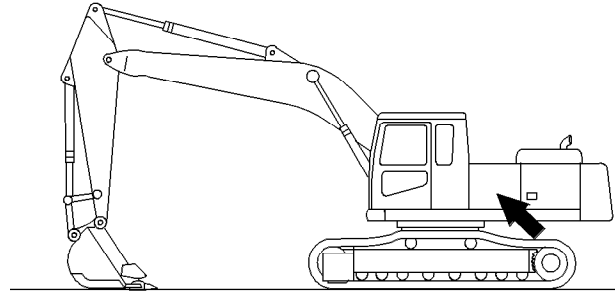


Illustration 328

g00101721

1. Open the access door on the front left side of the machine.
2. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Engine Air Filter Primary Element - Clean/Replace". Remove the air cleaner cover from the air cleaner housing. Remove the primary filter element from the air cleaner housing.

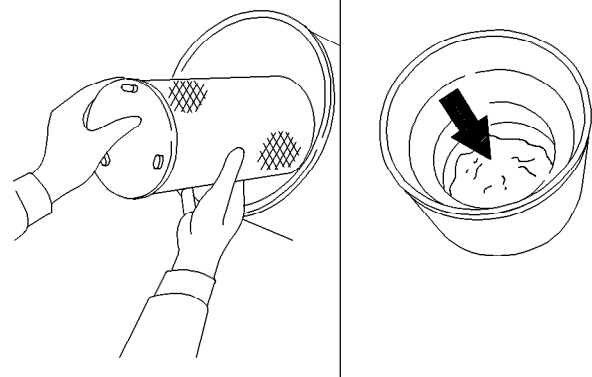


Illustration 329

g00101451

3. Remove the secondary filter element.
4. Cover the air inlet opening. Clean the inside of the air cleaner housing.
5. Remove the cover from the air inlet opening.
6. Install the new secondary filter element.
7. Install the primary filter element.
8. Install the air cleaner cover and close the latches securely.
9. Close the access door.

i00093745

Engine Governor Oil Supply Screen - Clean/Inspect/Replace

SMCS Code: 1264-070; 1264-510; 1264-040

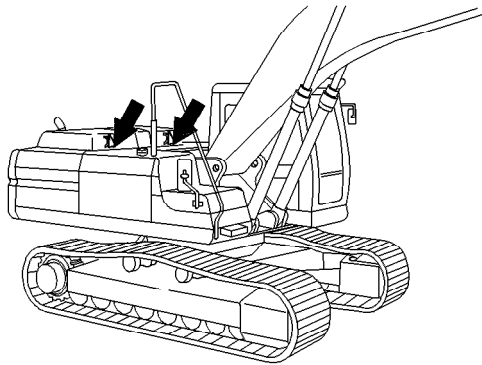


Illustration 330

g00101428

1. Unlatch the engine hood and raise the engine hood.

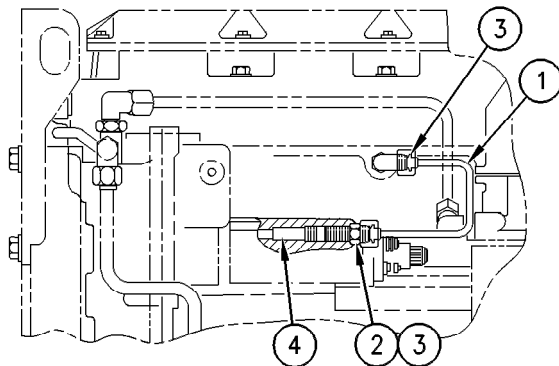


Illustration 331

g00102232

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on containing fluid spillage.

2. Remove oil supply tube (1) from the cylinder head. Remove fitting (2) and seal (3) from the governor housing.
3. Use a 6 mm hexagon wrench in order to remove oil screen (4).
4. Wash the oil screen in a clean, nonflammable solvent in order to remove any debris. Inspect the oil screen and the seals for damage. If necessary, replace the oil screen.

5. Install the oil screen into the governor housing. The oil screen should be far enough into the governor housing in order to allow clearance for the seals and for the fitting.
6. Install the seal, the fitting, and the oil supply tube.
7. Close the engine hood and latch the engine hood.

i01027842

Engine Oil Level - Check

SMCS Code: 1000-535

NOTICE

Do not overfill the crankcase. Engine damage can result.

Note: This machine is equipped with a function for checking fluid levels. However, if the machine is on an incline or the engine has been stopped only for a short time, the engine oil does not return to the crankcase. The fluid level cannot be properly checked. Park the machine on level ground and check the oil level after the engine has been stopped for at least 30 minutes.

Check the oil level while the engine is stopped. Do not check the oil level while the engine is running.

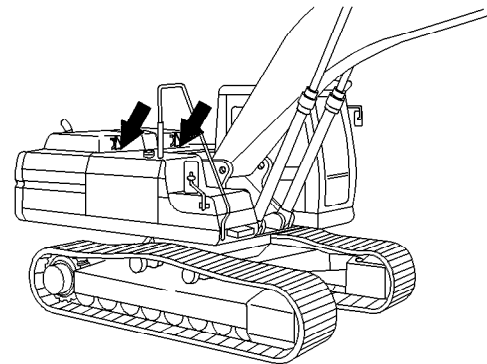


Illustration 332

g00101473

1. Unlatch the engine hood and raise the engine hood.

Maintenance Section
Engine Oil Level - Check

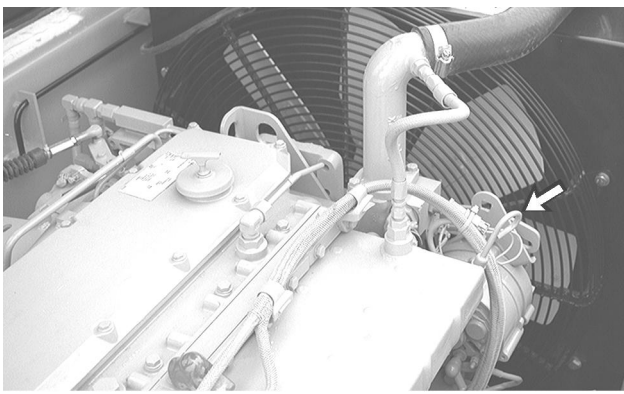


Illustration 333

g00101477

2. Remove the dipstick. Wipe the oil off the dipstick and reinsert the dipstick.

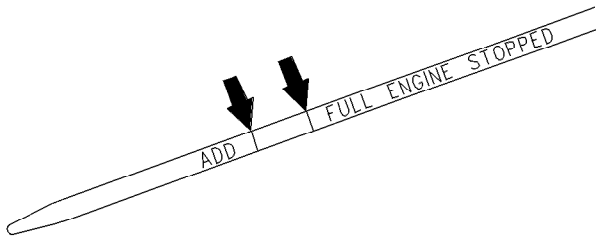


Illustration 334

g00101479

3. Check the dipstick. The oil level should be between the "FULL" mark and the "ADD" mark.

NOTICE

Do not fill above the "FULL" mark on the dipstick.

If the oil level is above the "FULL" Mark, the crankshaft might dip into the oil during engine operation. This will lead to excessively high oil temperatures. High oil temperatures can reduce the lubricating characteristics of oil.

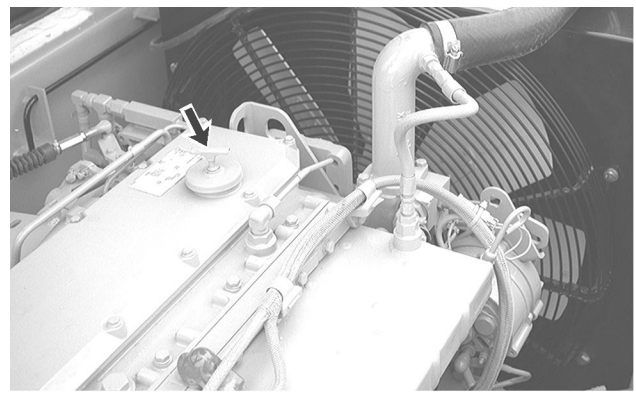


Illustration 335

g00101476

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on Containing Fluid Spillage.

4. Remove the oil filler plug in order to add oil, if necessary. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Refill Capacities".

Note: If the oil is deteriorated or badly contaminated, change the oil regardless of the maintenance interval.

5. Clean the oil filler plug. Install the oil filler plug.
6. Close the engine hood. Latch the engine hood.

i01959029

Engine Oil Sample - Obtain

SMCS Code: 1000-008; 1000; 1348-554-SM; 1348-008; 7542-554-SM; 7542-008; 7542-554-OC

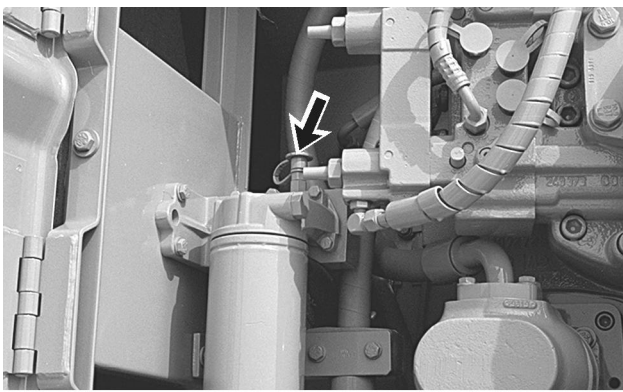


Illustration 336

g00274521

Obtain a sample of the engine oil from the engine oil sampling valve that is located on the engine oil filter housing. Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations" "S·O·S Oil Analysis" for information that pertains to obtaining a sample of the engine oil. Refer to Special Publication, PEHP6001, "How To Take A Good Oil Sample" for more information about obtaining a sample of the engine oil.

i00317345

Engine Oil and Filter - Change

SMCS Code: 1318-510

Note: If the sulfur content in the fuel is greater than 1.5 percent by weight, use an oil that has a TBN of 30 and reduce the oil change interval by one-half.

Park the machine on a level surface and engage the parking brake. Stop the engine.

Note: Drain the crankcase while the oil is warm. This allows waste particles that are suspended in the oil to drain. As the oil cools, the waste particles will settle to the bottom of the crankcase. The particles will not be removed by draining the oil and the particles will recirculate in the engine lubrication system with the new oil.

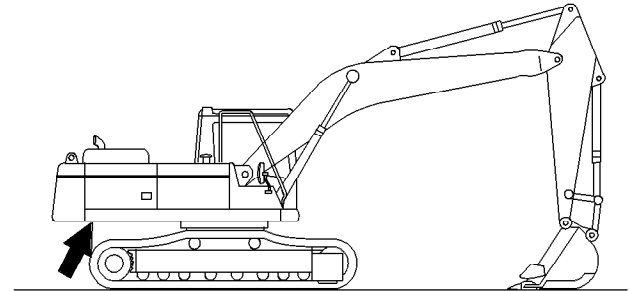


Illustration 337

g00101627

1. Open the crankcase access cover.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on containing fluid spillage.

2. Open the crankcase drain valve. Allow the oil to drain into a suitable container.

Note: Dispose of drained fluids according to local regulations.

3. Close the drain valve.
4. Close the crankcase access cover.

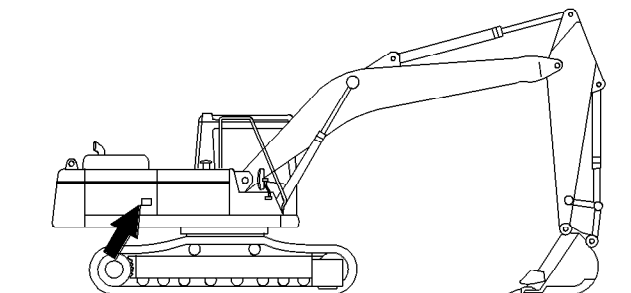


Illustration 338

g00101628

5. Open the access door at the right side of the machine.

Maintenance Section
Engine Oil and Filter - Change

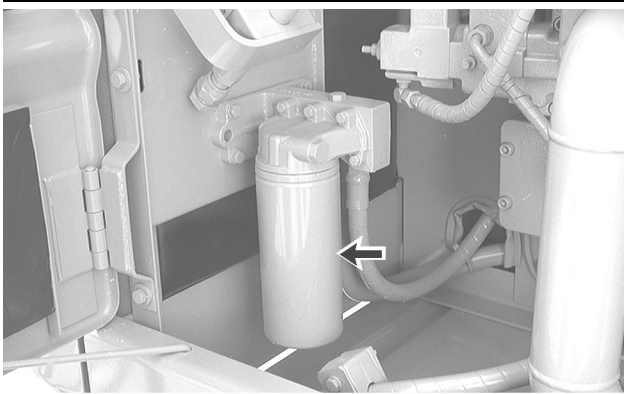


Illustration 339

g00101630

6. Remove the oil filter with a strap type wrench. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Oil Filter - Inspect".

Note: Dispose of drained fluids according to local regulations.

7. Clean the filter housing base. Make sure that all of the old filter gasket is removed.

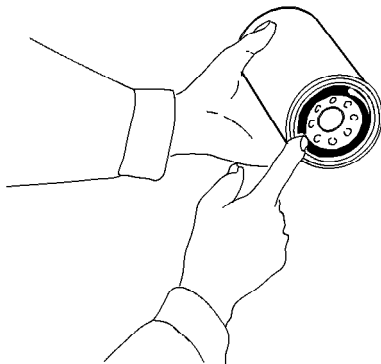


Illustration 340

g00101634

8. Apply a thin coat of engine oil to the gasket of the new filter.
9. Install the new filter by hand. When the gasket contacts the filter base, turn the filter by 270 degrees more. This will tighten the filter sufficiently.

Every new oil filter has rotation index marks that are spaced at 90 degree increments. Use the rotation index marks as a guide for tightening the oil filter.

10. Close the access door.

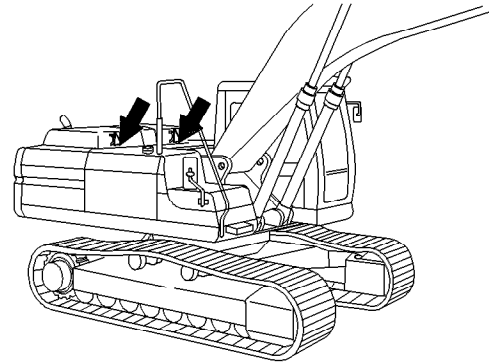


Illustration 341

g00101637

11. Unlatch the engine hood and raise the engine hood.

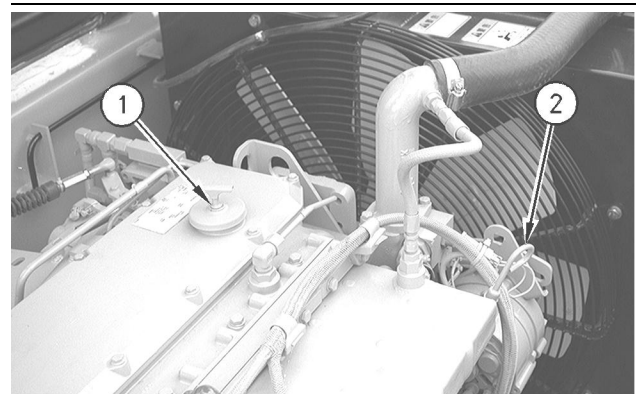


Illustration 342

g00101639

12. Remove oil filler plug (1). Fill the crankcase with new oil. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Refill Capacities". Clean the oil filler plug and install the oil filler plug.

NOTICE

Do not under fill or overfill engine crankcase with oil. Either condition can cause engine damage.

13. Start the engine and allow the oil to warm. Check the engine for leaks.
14. Run the engine. Check dipstick (2) after the engine has been running for ten minutes. Maintain the oil between the marks on the "LOW IDLE" side of the dipstick. If necessary, add oil.

i00707053

Engine Valve Lash and Fuel Injector Timing - Check

SMCS Code: 1105-025; 1209-535; 1290-531-FT

Refer to the Service Manual for the complete procedure for checking the engine valve lash. This procedure lists the steps for the engine valve lash adjustment and the steps in order to check the engine valve lash.

Note: Make sure that a qualified mechanic works on the injector fuel timing. Special tools and training are required.

Refer to the Service Manual for the complete procedure for checking the injector fuel timing or for adjusting the injector fuel timing.

Note: The correct fuel timing specification is given on the Engine Information Plate. Fuel timing specifications may differ for distinct engine applications and/or power ratings.

i06882903

Final Drive Oil - Change

SMCS Code: 4050-044-FLV

WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

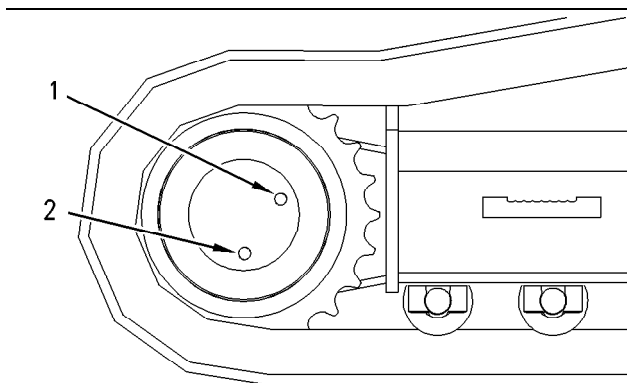


Illustration 343

g00822278

- (1) Oil level plug
(2) Oil drain plug

1. Position one final drive so that oil drain plug (2) is at the bottom.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on Containing Fluid Spillage.

2. Remove drain plug (2) and level plug (1). Allow the oil to drain into a suitable container.
3. Clean the plugs and inspect the O-ring seals. If wear or damage is evident, replace the drain plug, the level plug, and/or the O-ring seals.
4. Install drain plug (2).
5. Fill the final drive to the bottom of the opening on level plug (1). See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Lubricant Viscosities" and Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Capacities (Refill)".

Note: If the oil fills slowly, the fill hole may be blocked by the planetary gear. Rotate the final drive to move the planetary gear away from the fill hole.

Note: Overfilling the final drive will cause the seals on the travel motor to allow hydraulic oil or water to enter the final drive. The final drive may become contaminated.

6. Install level plug (1).
7. Perform Step 1 to Step 6 on the other final drive. Use a different container for the oil so that the oil samples from the final drives will be separate.
8. Completely remove the oil that has spilled onto surfaces.
9. Start the machine and allow the final drives to run through several cycles.
10. Stop the machine. Check the oil level.
11. Check the drained oil for metal chips or for particles. If there are any chips or particles, consult your Cat dealer.
12. Properly dispose of the drained material. Obey local regulations for the disposal of the material.

i03914051

Final Drive Oil Level - Check

SMCS Code: 4050-535-FLV

WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

Maintenance Section
Final Drive Oil Sample - Obtain

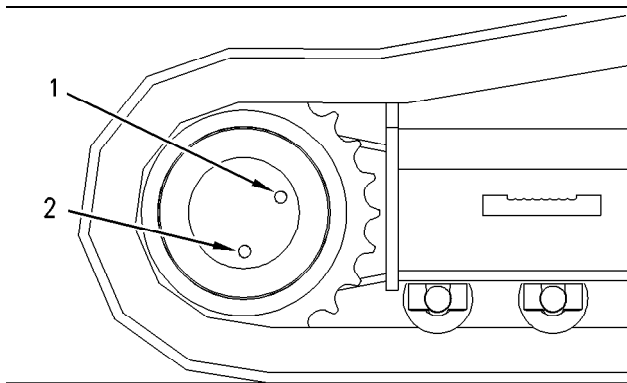


Illustration 344

g00822278

- (1) Oil level plug
(2) Oil drain plug

1. Position one final drive so that oil drain plug (2) is at the bottom.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on Containing Fluid Spillage.

2. Remove oil level plug (1).
3. Check the oil level. The oil should be near the bottom of the level plug opening.
4. Add oil through the level plug opening, if necessary. See Operation and Maintenance, "Lubricant Viscosities".

Note: If the oil fills slowly, the fill hole may be blocked by the planetary gear. Rotate the final drive in order to move the planetary gear away from the fill hole.

Note: Overfilling the final drive will cause the seals on the travel motor to allow hydraulic oil or water to enter the final drive. The final drive may become contaminated.

5. Clean oil level plug (1). Inspect the O-ring seal. Replace the O-ring seal if the O-ring seal is worn or damaged.
6. Install oil level plug (1).
7. Repeat the procedure for the other final drive.

i00932060

Final Drive Oil Sample - Obtain

SMCS Code: 4011-008; 4050-008; 4050-SM; 7542-008

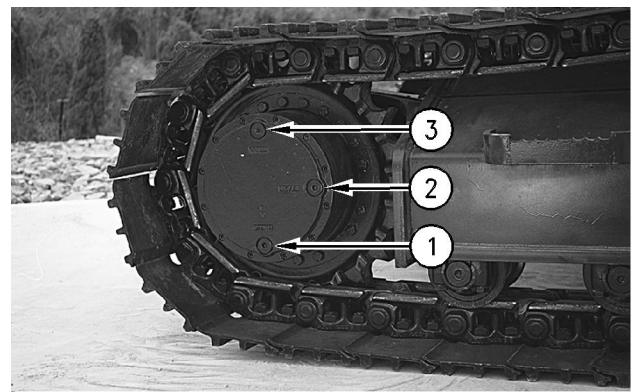


Illustration 345

g00288316

- (1) Oil drain plug
(2) Oil level plug
(3) Filler plug

1. Position the final drive so that oil drain plug (1) is at the bottom.
2. Remove oil level plug (2).
3. Obtain a sample of the final drive oil through the hole for the oil level plug.
4. Install oil level plug (2).

Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "S·O·S Oil Analysis" for more information on obtaining a sample of the final drive oil.

i01959019

Fuel System Primary Filter - Clean/Replace

SMCS Code: 1260-510; 1260-070

NOTICE

Turn the disconnect switch OFF or disconnect the battery when changing fuel filters.

Do not fill fuel filters with fuel before installing them. Contaminated fuel will cause accelerated wear to fuel systems parts.

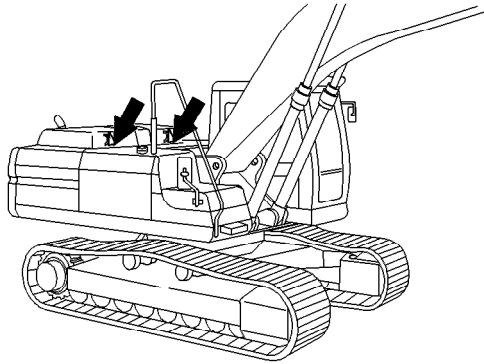


Illustration 346

g00102033

1. Unlatch the engine hood and raise the engine hood.

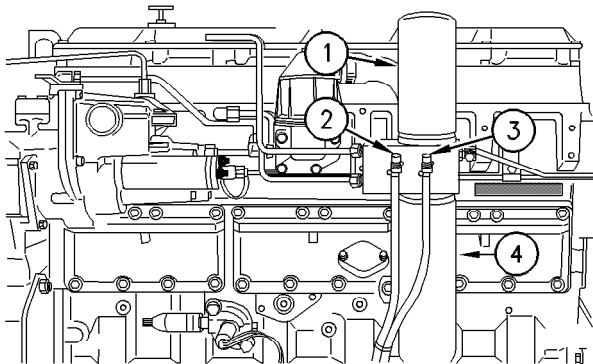


Illustration 347

g00102035

(1) Secondary filter. (2) Valve. (3) Valve. (4) Primary filter.

Note: Drain secondary filter (1) before you remove primary filter (4).

2. Turn valve (3) counterclockwise to the ON position.
3. Turn valve (2) counterclockwise to the ON position.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on containing fluid spillage.

4. Slowly loosen secondary filter (1). Allow any remaining fuel in the valves to drain into a suitable container. When the fuel stops draining, loosen secondary filter (1) more. Repeat this process until the secondary filter is completely drained.

Note: Dispose of used fluids according to local regulations.

5. Remove primary filter (4). Inspect the fuel filter for debris by cutting the fuel filter open.

Note: This fuel filter is a cartridge type filter. This type of filter cannot be reused.

Note: Dispose of used filters according to local regulations.

6. Clean the filter mounting base. Make sure that all of the used seal is removed.

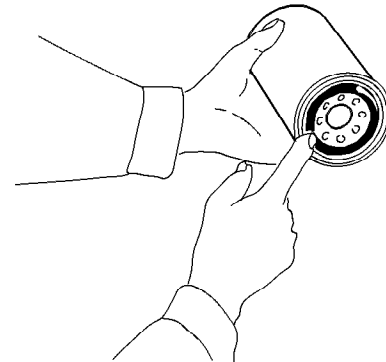


Illustration 348

g00102044

7. Coat the seal of the new filter with clean diesel fuel.
8. Install the new fuel filter by hand. When the seal contacts the filter mounting base, tighten the filter by an additional 3/4 turn.

The filter has rotation index marks that are spaced at 90 degree intervals. Use these rotation index marks as a guide for proper tightening.
9. Turn valves (2) and (3) clockwise to the OFF position.
10. Tighten secondary filter (1) in the same manner that is described in Step 8.
11. Prime the fuel system. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Fuel System Priming Pump - Operate" for instructions.
12. Close the engine hood and latch the engine hood.

i00059065

Fuel System Priming Pump - Operate

SMCS Code: 1258

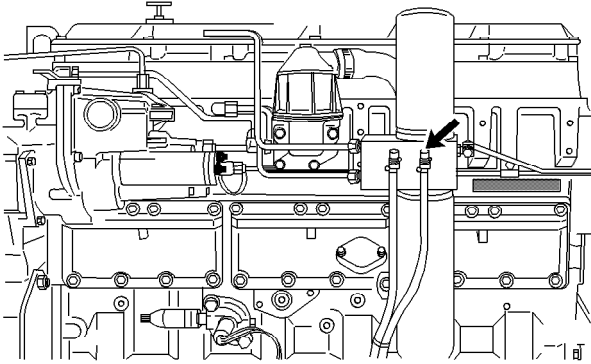


Illustration 349

g00102312

1. Turn the fuel drain valve counterclockwise to the ON position.

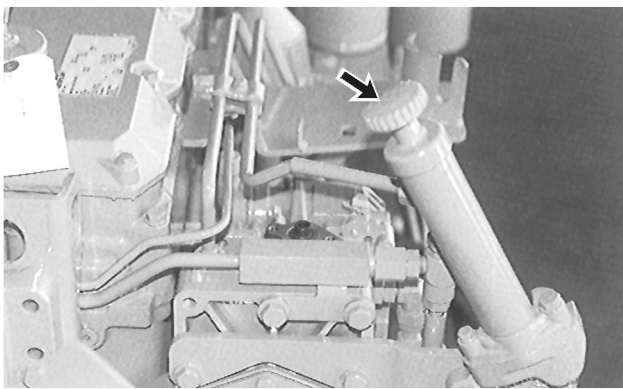


Illustration 350

g00102314

2. Unlock the priming pump plunger and operate the priming pump plunger until fuel flows out of the drain hose.
3. Turn the fuel drain valve clockwise to the OFF position.
4. Operate the priming pump plunger for another ten strokes.
5. Push in the priming pump plunger and tighten the priming pump plunger by hand.
6. Crank the engine. If the engine does not start or the engine misfires, additional priming is required. Also if the engine emits smoke, additional priming is required.

7. If the engine starts but the engine runs rough, continue to run the engine at low idle. Run the engine at low idle until the engine runs properly.
8. Check the fuel system for leaks. Stop the engine.

i00728372

Fuel System Secondary Filter Number One - Replace (Lower Filter)

SMCS Code: 1261-510-SE

WARNING

Personal injury or death can result from a fire.

Fuel leaked or spilled onto hot surfaces or electrical components can cause a fire.

Clean up all leaked or spilled fuel. Do not smoke while working on the fuel system.

Turn the disconnect switch OFF or disconnect the battery when changing fuel filters.

NOTICE

Do not fill fuel filters with fuel before installing them. Contaminated fuel will cause accelerated wear to fuel system parts.

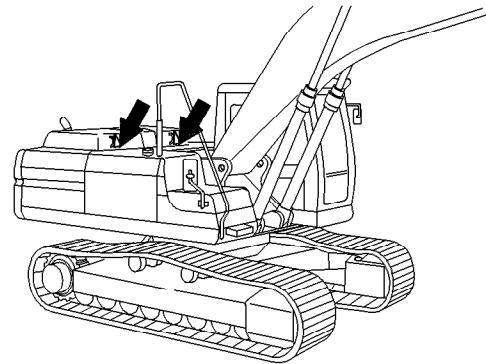


Illustration 351

g00102033

1. Unlatch the engine hood and raise the engine hood.

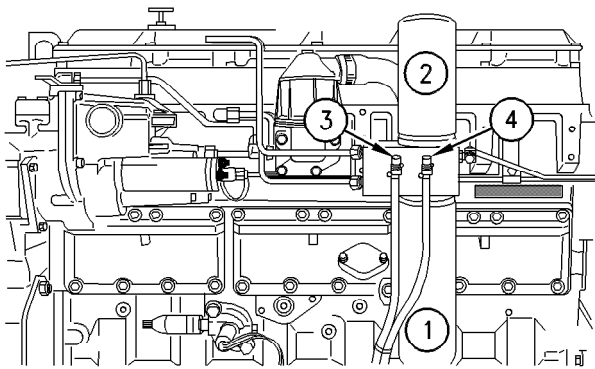


Illustration 352

g00325284

- (1) Secondary filter
- (2) Secondary filter
- (3) Drain valve
- (4) Drain valve

Note: Drain upper secondary filter (2) before you remove lower secondary filter (1).

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on containing fluid spillage.

2. Open drain valve (4) and immediately open drain valve (3). Allow the fuel to drain into a suitable container.

Note: Make sure that the drain valves are opened in the proper order. If you open the wrong drain valve first, an air lock in the fuel system may occur. This will not allow fuel to drain from the upper filter.

3. Slowly loosen upper secondary filter (2) for 1/4 turn. Allow any remaining fuel in the valves to drain into a suitable container. When the fuel stops draining, loosen upper secondary filter (2) for an additional 1/4 turn. Repeat this process until the upper filter is completely drained.

4. Close drain valves (3) and (4).

Note: Dispose of used fluids according to local regulations.

5. Remove lower secondary filter (1).

Note: The lower secondary filter has not been drained. The filter contains fuel. When you remove the lower filter, use caution in order to avoid spilling the fuel.

6. Inspect the fuel filter for debris by cutting the fuel filter open.

Note: This fuel filter is a cartridge type filter. This type of filter cannot be reused.

Note: Dispose of used filters according to local regulations.

7. Clean the mounting base of the fuel filter. Make sure that all of the old seal is removed from the mounting base.

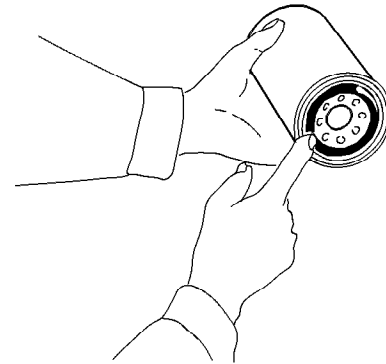


Illustration 353

g00102044

8. Apply a thin coat of clean diesel fuel to the sealing surface of the new fuel filter.

9. Install the new fuel filter by hand. When the seal contacts the filter mounting base, tighten the filter by an additional 3/4 turn.

The filter has rotation index marks that are spaced by increments of 1/4 turn. Use these rotation index marks as a guide for proper tightening.

10. Tighten upper secondary filter (2) in the same manner that is described in Step 9.
11. Prime the fuel system. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Fuel System Priming Pump - Operate" for instructions.
12. Close the engine hood and latch the engine hood.

i00913140

Fuel System Secondary Filter Number Two - Replace (Upper Filter)

SMCS Code: 1261-510-SE

WARNING

Personal injury or death can result from a fire.

Fuel leaked or spilled onto hot surfaces or electrical components can cause a fire.

Clean up all leaked or spilled fuel. Do not smoke while working on the fuel system.

Turn the disconnect switch OFF or disconnect the battery when changing fuel filters.

NOTICE

Do not fill fuel filters with fuel before installing them. Contaminated fuel will cause accelerated wear to fuel system parts.

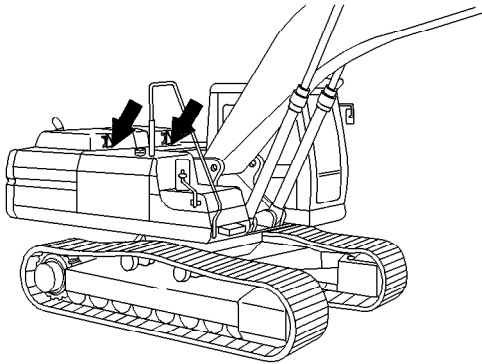


Illustration 354

g00101307

1. Unlatch the engine hood and raise the engine hood.

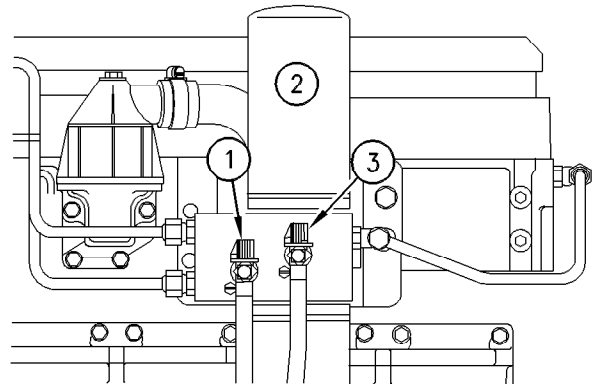


Illustration 355

g00325444

- (1) Drain valve
- (2) Secondary filter
- (3) Drain valve

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on containing fluid spillage.

2. Open drain valve (3) and immediately open drain valve (1). Allow the fuel to drain into a suitable container.

Note: Make sure that the drain valves are opened in the proper order. If you open the wrong drain valve first, an air lock in the fuel system may occur. This will not allow fuel to drain from the upper filter.

3. Slowly loosen upper secondary filter (2) for 1/4 turn. Allow any remaining fuel in the valves to drain into a suitable container. When the fuel stops draining, loosen upper secondary filter (2) for an additional 1/4 turn. Repeat this process until the upper filter is completely drained.

4. Close drain valves (3) and (1).

Note: Dispose of used fluids according to local regulations.

5. Remove upper secondary filter (2).
6. Inspect the fuel filter for debris by cutting the fuel filter open.

Note: This fuel filter is a cartridge type filter. This type of filter cannot be reused.

Note: Dispose of used filters according to local regulations.

7. Clean the mounting base of the fuel filter. Make sure that all of the old seal is removed from the mounting base.

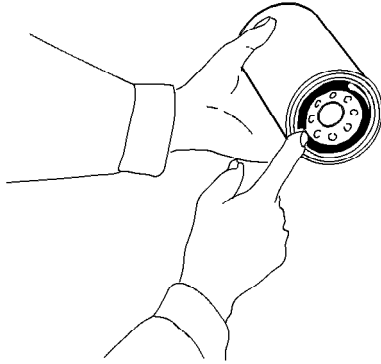


Illustration 356

g00101318

8. Apply a thin coat of clean diesel fuel to the sealing surface of the new fuel filter.
9. Install the new fuel filter by hand. When the seal contacts the filter mounting base, tighten the filter by an additional 3/4 turn.

The filter has rotation index marks that are spaced by increments of 1/4 turn. Use these rotation index marks as a guide for proper tightening.
10. Prime the fuel system. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Fuel System Priming Pump - Operate" for instructions.
11. Close the engine hood and latch the engine hood.

i01107325

Fuel System Water Separator - Drain

SMCS Code: 1263

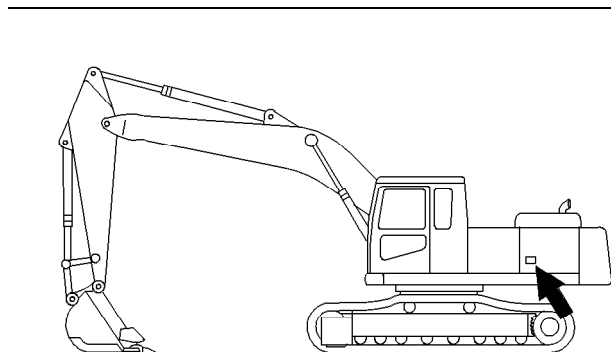


Illustration 357

g00101429

1. Open the access door on the left side of the machine.

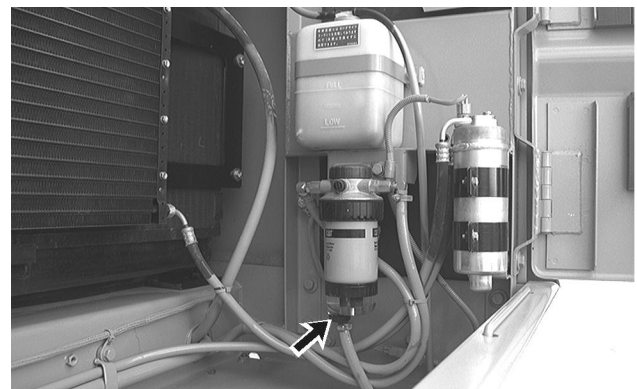


Illustration 358

g00101340

The drain valve is located on the bottom of the water separator.

2. Turn the drain valve counterclockwise in order to open.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on containing fluid spillage.

3. Drain the water and drain the sediment into a suitable container.

Note: Dispose of drained fluids according to local regulations.

4. Close the drain valve.
5. Close the access door.

i00338552

Fuel System Primary Filter (Water Separator) Element - Replace

SMCS Code: 1263-510-FQ

WARNING

Personal injury or death can result from a fire.

Fuel leaked or spilled onto hot surfaces or electrical components can cause a fire.

Clean up all leaked or spilled fuel. Do not smoke while working on the fuel system.

Turn the disconnect switch OFF or disconnect the battery when changing fuel filters.

Maintenance Section
Fuel Tank Cap and Strainer - Clean

NOTICE

Do not fill fuel filters with fuel before installing them. Contaminated fuel will cause accelerated wear to fuel system parts.

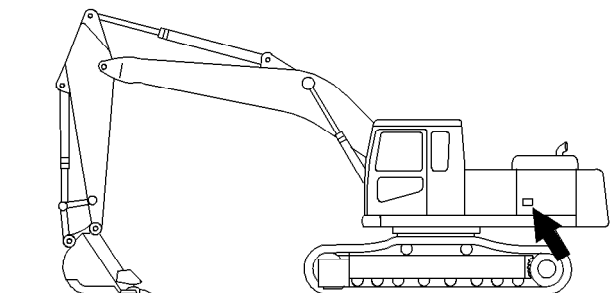


Illustration 359

g00101429

1. Open the access door on the left side of the machine.

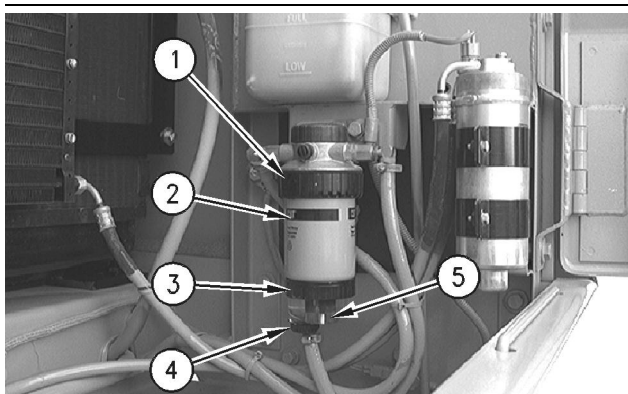


Illustration 360

g00101351

(1) Collar. (2) Water Separator Element. (3) Collar. (4) Drain Valve. (5) Bowl.

2. Turn drain valve (4) counterclockwise in order to open. The drain valve is located on the bottom of the water separator.

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information that pertains to containing fluid spillage.

3. Drain the water and the sediment into a suitable container.

Note: Dispose of used fluids according to local regulations.

4. Close the drain valve (4).

5. Hold the bottom of water separator element (2) while you loosen collar (3).

6. Remove bowl (5).

7. Loosen collar (1).

8. Remove water separator element (2). Discard water separator element (2).

Note: The water separator element is a cartridge type filter. The filter cannot be reused.

9. Clean the inside surfaces of the filter head and of the bowl (5).

10. Inspect the O-ring on bowl (5). Also inspect the seal on the filter head. Replace these seals if the seals are worn or damaged.

11. Install a new water separator element. Tighten collar (1) in order to secure the water separator element.

12. Install bowl (5). Tighten collar (3).

Note: Do not start the engine until all service to the fuel system is complete. For instructions about priming the fuel system, refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Fuel System Priming Pump - Operate".

13. Close the access door.

i00076547

Fuel Tank Cap and Strainer - Clean

SMCS Code: 1273-070-STR

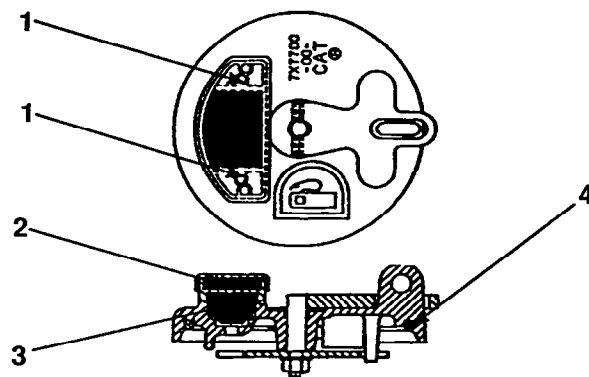


Illustration 361

g00101392

1. Remove the fuel cap.

2. Inspect seal (4) for damage. Replace the seal, if necessary.

3. Remove screws (1), filter assembly (2), drain valve (3) and the gaskets.



Illustration 362

g00101393

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, “General Hazard Information” for information on Containing Fluid Spillage.

4. Remove the strainer that is located in the filler opening.
5. Wash the strainer and the fuel tank cap in a clean, nonflammable solvent.
6. Install a new cap filter kit. Install the gaskets, drain valve (3), filter assembly (2), and screws (1).
7. Install the strainer into the filler opening.
8. Install the fuel tank cap.

i00571629

Fuses - Replace

SMCS Code: 1417-510



Illustration 363

g00101419

The fuse panel is located on the left console. Open the access cover for fuse access.



Fuses – Fuses protect the electrical system from damage that is caused by overloaded circuits. Change a fuse if the element separates. If the element of a new fuse separates, check the circuit and/or repair the circuit.

NOTICE

Always replace fuses with the same type and capacity fuse that was removed. Otherwise, electrical damage could result.

NOTICE

If it is necessary to replace fuses frequently, an electrical problem may exist.

Contact your Caterpillar dealer.

To replace a fuse, use a puller that is stored in the fuse panel. Three fuses of 10 Amperes are contained in the fuse panel as spare fuses and one fuse of 15 Amperes are contained in the fuse panel as spare fuses.

The following list identifies the circuits that are protected by each fuse. The amperage for each fuse is included with each circuit.

Maintenance Section
Hydraulic System Oil Filter (Return) - Replace

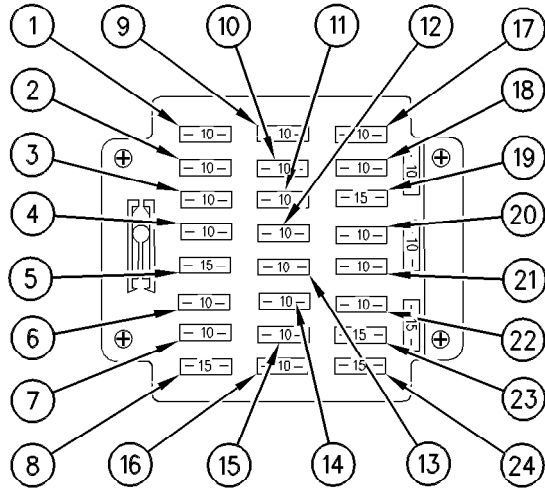


Illustration 364

g00101417

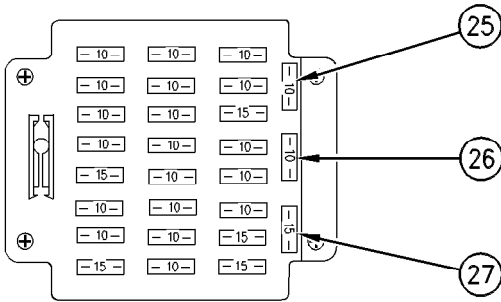


Illustration 365

g00101418

- Spare (1) – 10 Amp**
- Grapple Rotate Solenoids and/or Auxiliary Fuel Tank (If Equipped) (2) – 10 Amp**
- Fan Circuit (If Equipped) (3) – 10 Amp**
- Backup (4) – 10 Amp**
- Attachment Flood Lamp (If Equipped) (5) – 15 Amp**
- Hydraulic Lock Limit Switch or Hydraulic Lock Solenoid (6) – 10 Amp**
- Engine Governor (7) – 10 Amp**
- Engine Controller or Pump Controller (8) – 15 Amp**
- Horn (9) – 10 Amp**
- Cab Dome Light (10) – 10 Amp**

- Engine Shutdown (Not Used) (11) – 10 Amp**
- Starter Key Switch (12) – 10 Amp**
- Auxiliary Circuit (Attachment) (13) – 10 Amp**
- Fine Swing Control (14) – 10 Amp**
- Boom Lamp (15) – 10 Amp**
- AUTO Lubricator (If Equipped) (16) – 10 Amp**
- Switch Panel (17) – 10 Amp**
- Cigar Lighter (18) – 10 Amp**
- Heater and Air Conditioner (19) – 15 Amp**
- Windshield Washer and Windshield Wiper (20) – 10 Amp**
- Lower Washer and Lower Wiper (If Equipped) (21) – 10 Amp**
- Converter (22) – 10 Amp**
- Cab and Chassis Lamp (23) – 15**
- Auxiliary Hydraulic (Attachment) (24) – 15 Amp**
- Spare (25) – 10 Amp**
- Spare (26) – 10 Amp**
- Spare (27) – 15 Amp**

i01909832

Hydraulic System Oil Filter (Return) - Replace

SMCS Code: 5068-510-RJ

The return filter is a cartridge type filter. By using a cartridge type filter, the amount of foreign material that enters the hydraulic system is reduced when the filter element is replaced.

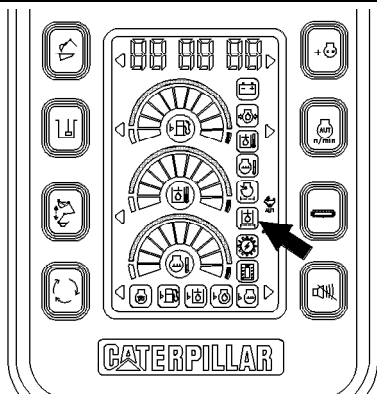


Illustration 366

g00102209

Note: If the indicator for a restricted hydraulic return filter comes on, push the reset switch at the filter case. Run the machine on level ground for approximately 10 minutes. If the indicator still comes on, inspect the filter and replace the filter, if necessary.

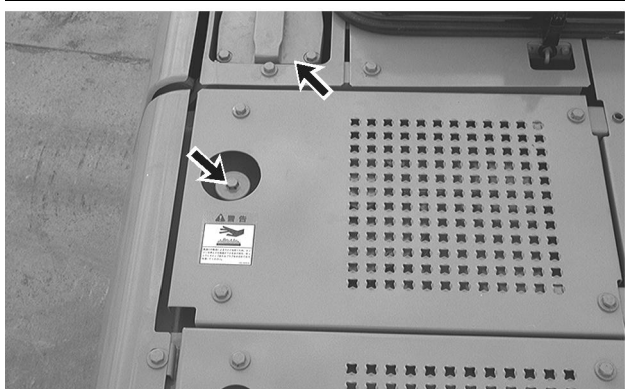


Illustration 367

g00104900

1. Loosen the filler plug in order to relieve the hydraulic tank pressure. Tighten the filler plug after the hydraulic tank pressure is relieved.

Note: The return filter cartridge is located behind the filler plug.

2. Remove the filter cartridge. Perform Step 2a through Step 2f in order to remove the filter cartridge.

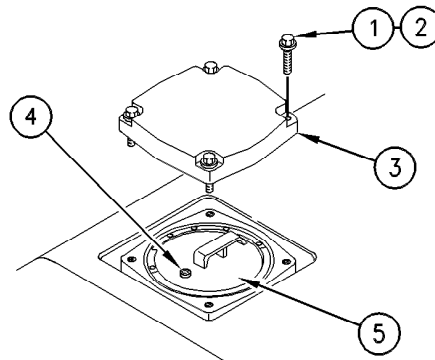


Illustration 368

g00102211

- (1) Bolts
- (2) Washers
- (3) Cover
- (4) Plug
- (5) Filter cartridge

a. Remove bolts (1), washers (2), and cover (3).

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on containing fluid spillage.

b. Remove plug (4) in order to release the pressure in filter cartridge (5).

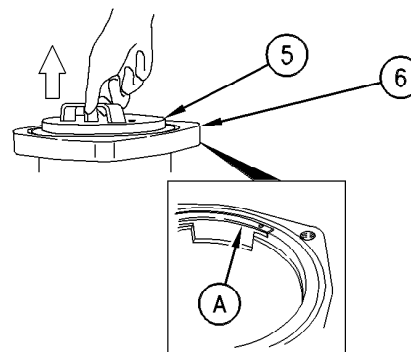


Illustration 369

g00102212

- (5) Filter cartridge
- (6) Filter case
- (A) Guide

c. Pull up the handle at the top of filter cartridge (5) until the filter cartridge contacts guide (A) on filter case (6).

Maintenance Section
Hydraulic System Oil Filter (Return) - Replace

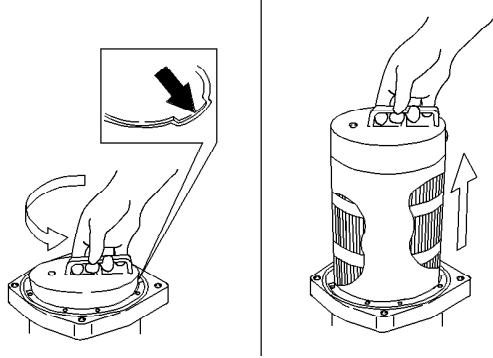


Illustration 370

g00102214

- d. Turn the filter cartridge counterclockwise by 180 degrees in order to align the projection of the filter cartridge with the notch of the filter case. Pull out the filter cartridge.

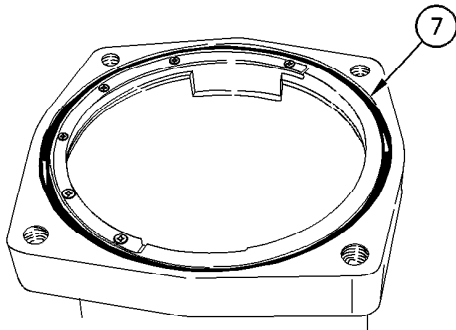


Illustration 371

g00102219

(7) O-ring

- e. Inspect the cover and O-ring (7). If either part is damaged, replace the part.
- f. Inspect the filter cartridge for debris and for damage. If necessary, replace the filter cartridge.

3. Remove the filter element. Perform Step 3a through Step 3f in order to remove the filter element.

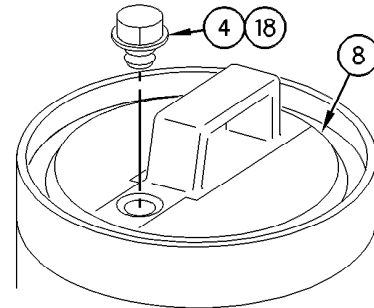


Illustration 372

g00104507

(4) Plug
(8) Plate
(18) O-ring

- a. Make sure that plug (4) is removed. Make sure that all of O-ring (18) is removed from plate (8).

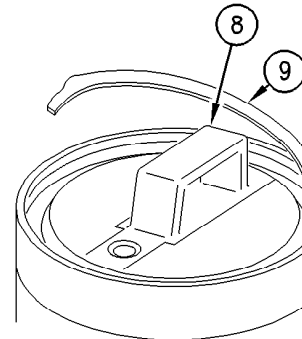


Illustration 373

g00918893

(8) Plate
(9) Spiral retaining ring

- b. Remove spiral retaining ring (9).

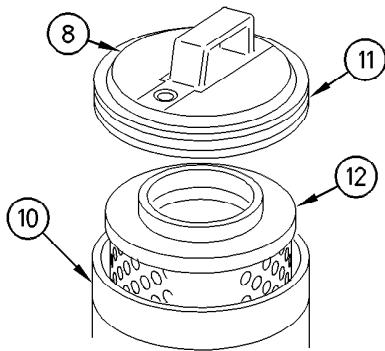


Illustration 374

g00104510

- (8) Plate
- (10) Shell
- (11) O-ring
- (12) Filter element

- c. Hold the filter cartridge with one hand. Grasp the grip of plate (8) with your other hand. Lift plate (8) in order to separate plate (8) from the filter cartridge.
- d. Remove O-ring (11) from plate (8).
- e. Lift filter element (12) from shell (10).
- f. Pour the remaining oil into a suitable container.

Note: Dispose of used oil according to local regulations.

- g. Repeat Step 3a through Step 3f for the other filter groups.

4. Clean the shell of the filter cartridge. Perform Step 4a through Step 4d in order to clean the shell of the filter cartridge.

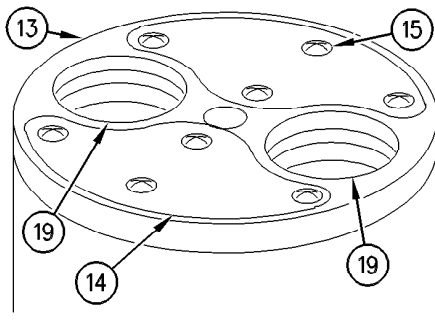


Illustration 375

g00104511

- (13) Slide plate
- (14) Cushions
- (15) Screws
- (19) Port

- a. Turn shell (10) upside-down.

- b. Remove screws (15).
- c. Remove cushions (14) from slide plate (13).
- d. Wash the following parts in a clean nonflammable solvent: plug (4), plate (8), spiral retaining ring (9), shell (10) and cushions (14). Dry the parts.

5. Install the filter elements. Perform Step 5a through Step 5k in order to install the filter elements.

Note: Consult a Caterpillar dealer for the Service Kit that is needed to install the filter element and the filter cartridge.

- a. Apply spray type oil to the inside of shell (10) in order to prevent rust.
- b. Apply grease to a new O-ring (11).
- c. Plate (8) will contact the inside of shell (10). Apply grease to this point.
- d. Apply grease to O-rings inside ports (19) at the bottom of shell (10).
- e. Install new cushions (14). Tighten the screws to a torque of 0.4 N·m (3.5 lb in).
- f. Apply spray type oil into the clearance between shell (10) and slide plate (13).

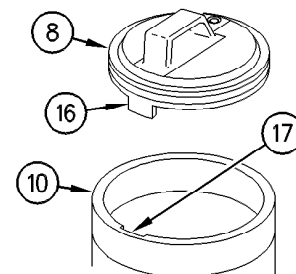


Illustration 376

g00104512

- (8) Plate
- (10) Shell
- (16) Boss
- (17) Notch

- g. Turn over shell (10). Apply grease to the two O-rings on new element (12). Install element (12) into shell (10).
- h. Move boss (16) in alignment with notch (17). Install plate (8) into shell (10).
- i. Install spiral retaining ring (9) into the groove in shell (10).

Maintenance Section
Hydraulic System Oil Filter (Return) - Replace

j. Apply grease to new O-ring (18). Install O-ring (18) on plug (4).

k. Install plug (4) into plate (8).

6. Install the filter cartridge. Perform Step 6a through Step 6e in order to install the filter cartridge.

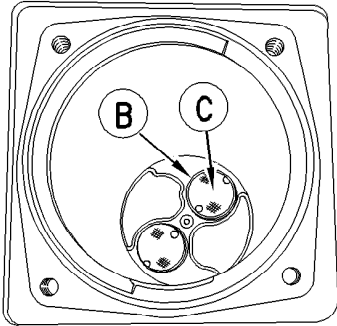


Illustration 377

g00102220

(B) Port
(C) Slide plate

a. Check that ports (B) at the bottom of the filter case are closed.

Note: If the ports are open, rotate slide plate (C) counterclockwise to the stopper in order to fully close the ports. When the ports are fully closed, any remaining oil in the filter case should be completely removed.

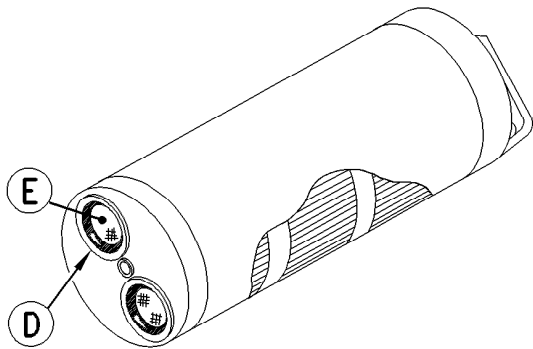


Illustration 378

g00102221

(E) Slide plate
(D) Port

b. Check that ports (D) of the filter cartridge are fully closed.

Note: The filter cartridge cannot be installed unless the ports are fully closed. If the ports are open, rotate slide plate (E) counterclockwise to the stopper in order to fully close the ports.

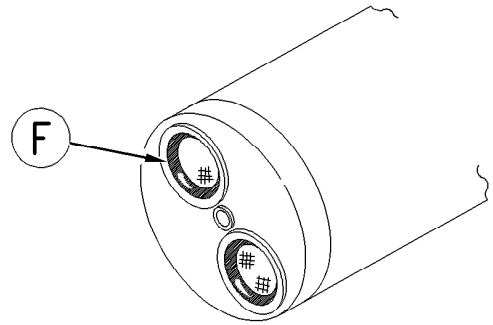


Illustration 379

g00102222

(F) O-rings

c. Check that O-rings (F) have been installed and that oil has been applied to O-rings (F).

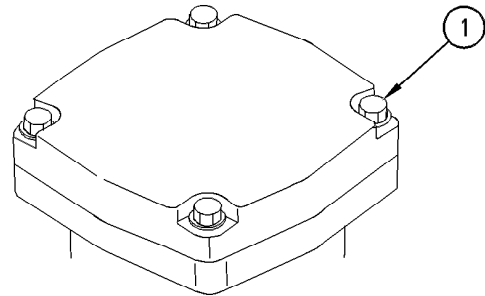


Illustration 380

g00102225

(1) Bolts

d. Install the filter cartridge into the filter case. Turn the filter cartridge clockwise by 180 degrees and push down the filter cartridge when the filter cartridge contacts guide (A).

e. Install plug (4), cover (3), washers (2), and bolts (1). Tighten bolts (1) to a torque of 29 ± 5 N·m (22 ± 4 lb ft).

7. Open the access door on the right side of the machine.

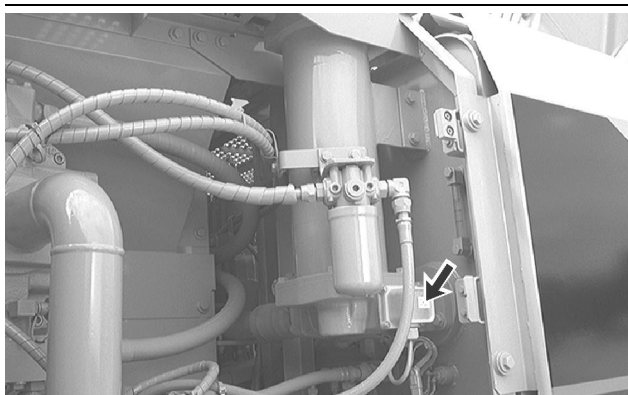


Illustration 381

g00102223

8. Push the reset switch while the engine start switch is in the ON position.
9. Close the access door.

i00529386

Hydraulic System Oil Filter - Replace

SMCS Code: 5068-510

Replace the Pilot Filter

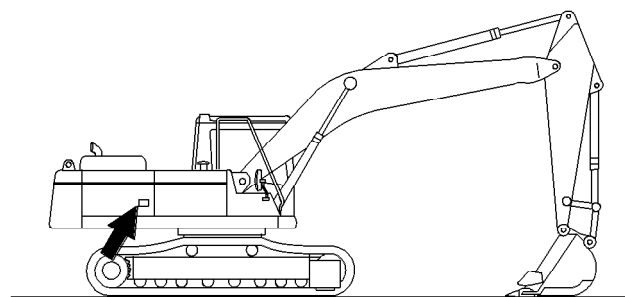


Illustration 382

g00101497

1. Open the access door on the right side of the machine.

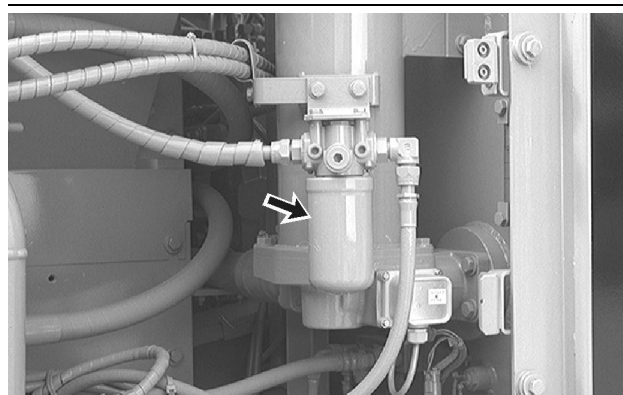


Illustration 383

g00101499

2. Clean the area in order to keep dirt out of the filter base.
3. Remove the used pilot filter element from the filter base.

Note: This element is a cartridge type filter. The element cannot be reused.

Note: Dispose of used filters according to local regulations.

4. Clean the filter base.

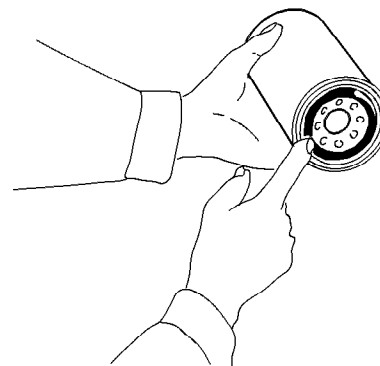


Illustration 384

g00101502

5. Coat the seal of a new pilot filter with clean hydraulic oil. Install the new pilot filter in the filter base. Tighten the pilot filter hand tight.

6. Close the access door.

Replace the Case Drain Filter

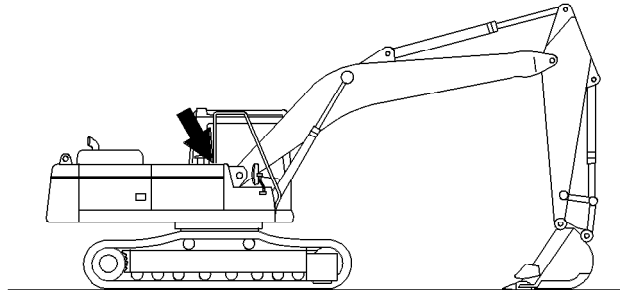


Illustration 385 g00101504

The case drain filter is located on the side of the fuel tank.

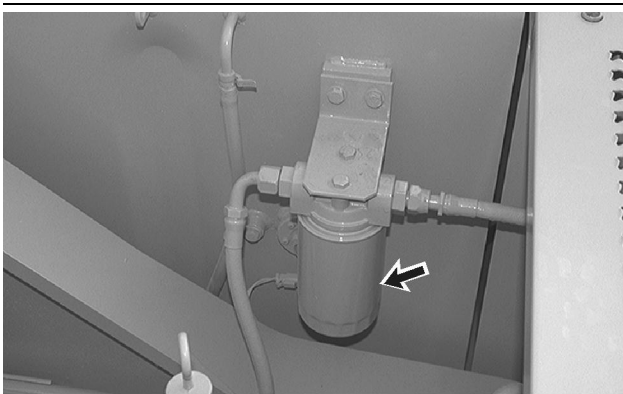


Illustration 386 g00101507

1. Clean the area in order to keep dirt out of the filter base.
2. Remove the used case drain filter from the filter base.

Note: This element is a cartridge type filter. The element cannot be reused.

Note: Dispose of used filters according to local regulations.

3. Clean the filter base.

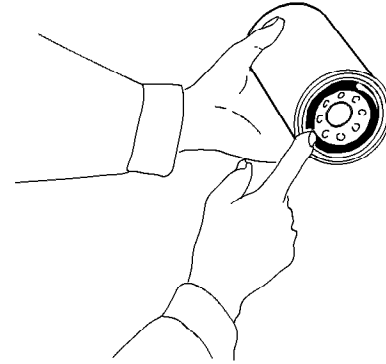


Illustration 387

g00101502

4. Coat the seal of a new case drain filter with clean hydraulic oil. Install the new case drain filter in the filter base. Tighten the case drain filter hand tight.
5. Drive the machine slowly for 10 to 15 minutes. Move each cylinder evenly through several cycles.

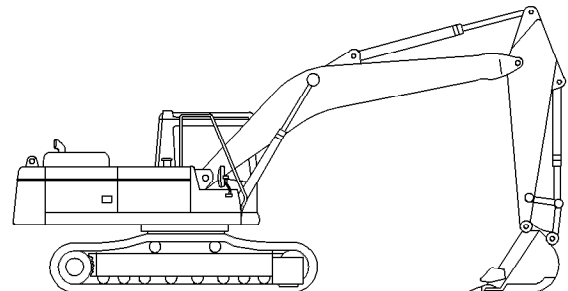


Illustration 388

g00101508

6. Return the machine to the position that is shown above. Check the machine for oil leaks.
7. Stop the engine.
8. Open the access door on the right side of the machine in order to access the sight gauge.

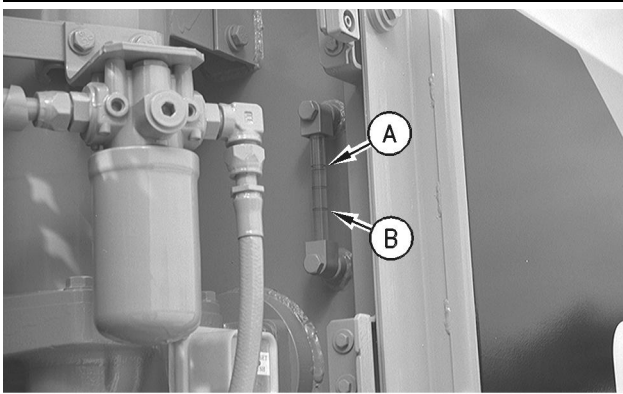


Illustration 389

g00101511

(A) High Temperature Range. (B) Low Temperature Range.

9. Maintain the oil level in the low temperature range for a cold machine. Maintain the oil level in the high temperature range for a machine that is at a normal operating temperature.

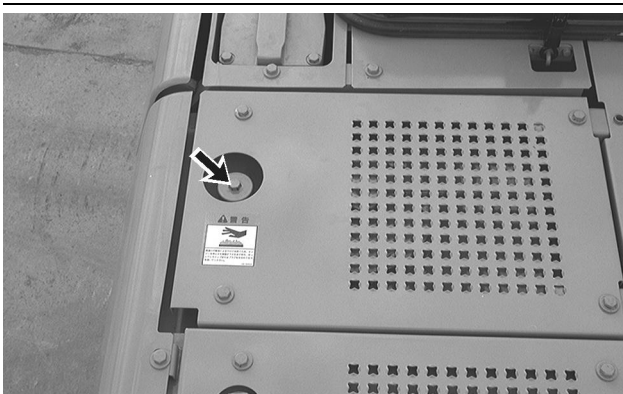


Illustration 390

g00101541

10. Slowly loosen the filler plug in order to relieve any pressure. Remove the filler plug in order to add oil, if necessary.
11. Clean the filler plug. Install the filler plug.

12. Close the access door.

Replace the Case Drain Filter for the Generator (If Equipped)

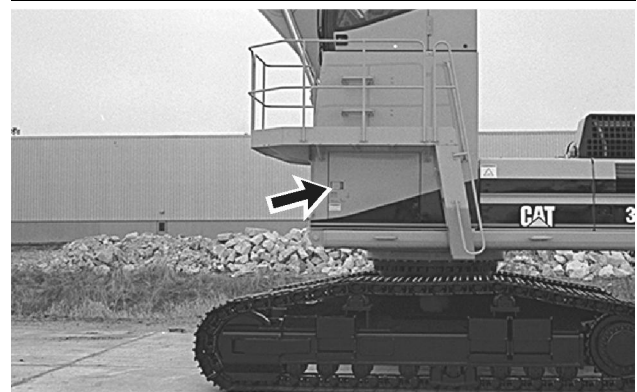


Illustration 391

g00274705

1. Open the cab riser compartment access door on the left side of the machine.

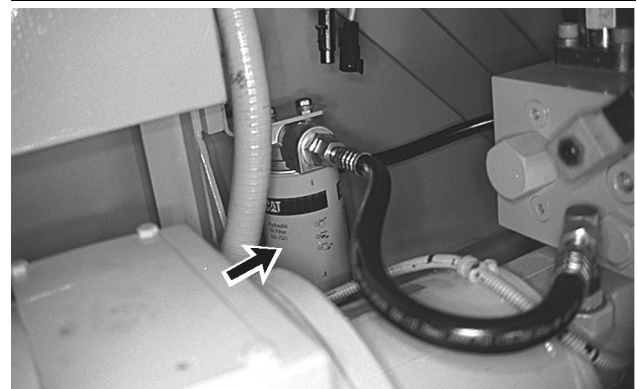


Illustration 392

g00274711

2. Clean the area in order to keep dirt out of the filter base.
3. Remove the used case drain filter from the filter base.

Note: This element is a cartridge type filter. The element cannot be reused.

Note: Dispose of used filters according to local regulations.

4. Clean the filter base.

Maintenance Section
Hydraulic System Oil Filter - Replace

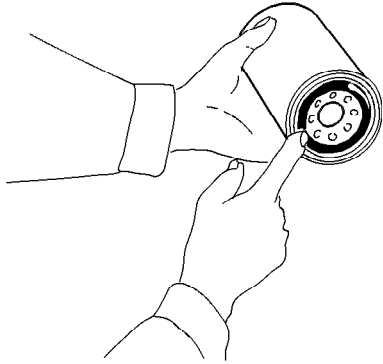


Illustration 393

g00101502

5. Coat the seal of a new case drain filter with clean hydraulic oil. Install the new case drain filter in the filter base. Tighten the case drain filter hand tight.
6. Close the cab riser compartment access door.
7. Drive the machine slowly for 10 to 15 minutes. Move each cylinder evenly through several cycles.

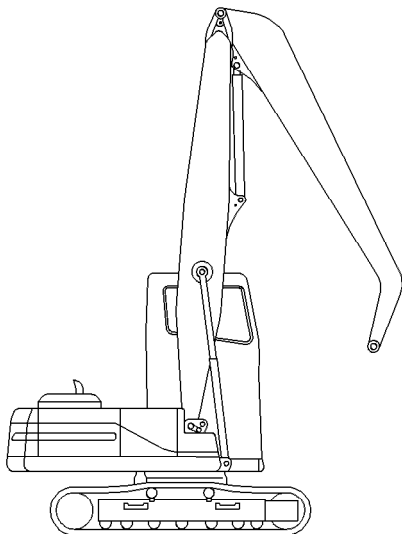


Illustration 394

g00274869

8. Return the machine to the position that is shown above. Check the machine for oil leaks.
9. Stop the engine.
10. Open the access door on the right side of the machine in order to access the sight gauge.

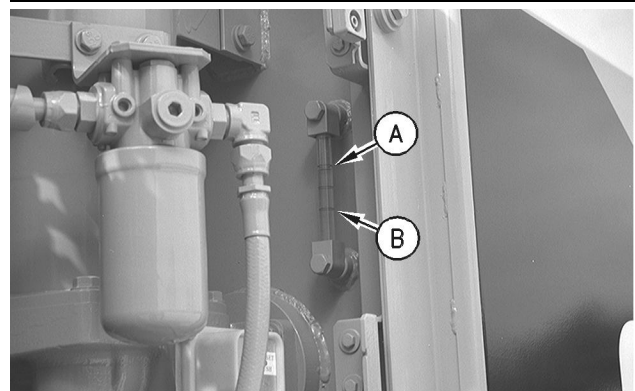


Illustration 395

g00101511

(A) High Temperature Range. (B) Low Temperature Range.

11. Maintain the oil level in the low temperature range for a cold machine. Maintain the oil level in the high temperature range for a machine that is at a normal operating temperature.

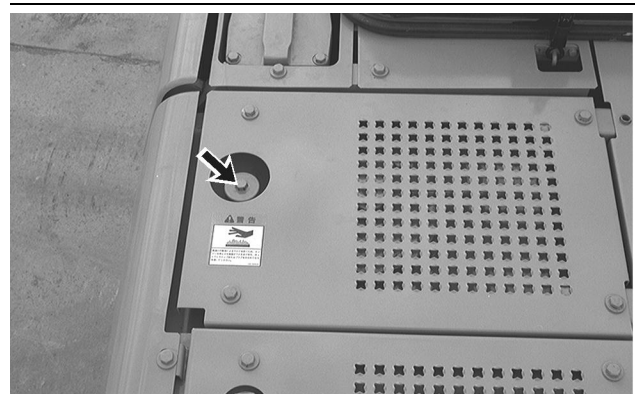


Illustration 396

g00101541

12. Slowly loosen the filler plug in order to relieve any pressure. Remove the filler plug in order to add oil, if necessary.
13. Clean the filler plug. Install the filler plug.

14. Close the access door.

i00073295

i01963541

Hydraulic System Oil Sample - Obtain

SMCS Code: 5050-008-OC; 5095-008; 5095-SM; 7542; 7542-008

Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "S·O·S Oil Analysis" for information on obtaining a sample of the hydraulic oil. Refer to Special Publication, PEHP6001, "How to Take a Good Oil Sample" for information that pertains to obtaining a sample of the hydraulic oil.

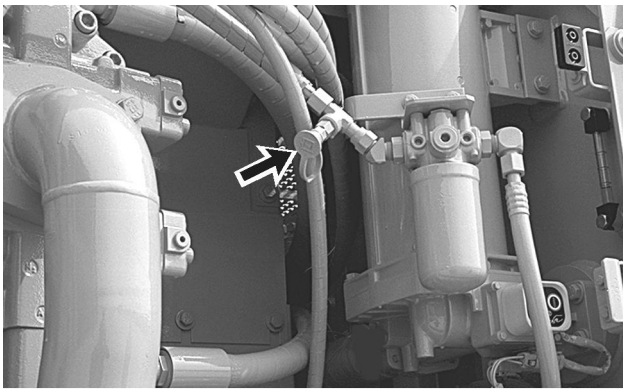


Illustration 397

g00274522

The hydraulic oil sampling valve is located near the pilot filter.

Indicators and Gauges - Test

SMCS Code: 7450-081; 7490-081

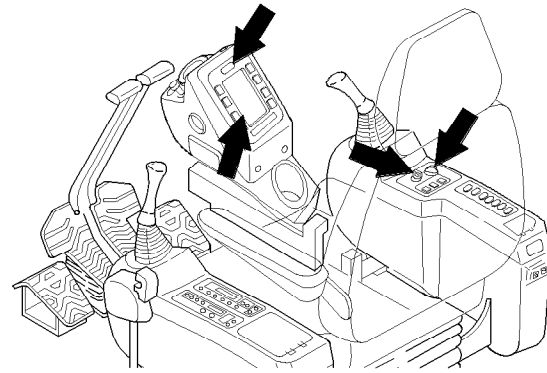


Illustration 398

g00103839

1. Look for broken lenses on the gauges, broken indicator lights, broken switches, and other broken components in the cab.
2. Start the engine.
3. Look for inoperative gauges.
4. Turn on all machine lights. Check for proper operation.
5. Move the machine forward. Release the travel levers and the travel pedals. The machine should stop.
6. Stop the engine.
7. Make any repairs that are required before operating the machine.

i02106227

Oil Filter - Inspect

SMCS Code: 1308-507; 5068-507

Inspect a Used Filter for Debris

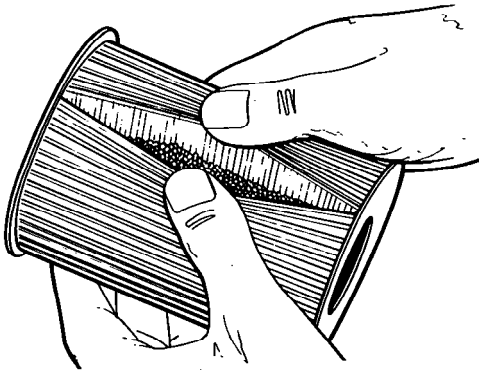


Illustration 399

g00100013

The element is shown with debris.

Use a filter cutter to cut the filter element open. Spread apart the pleats and inspect the element for metal and for other debris. An excessive amount of debris in the filter element can indicate a possible failure.

If metals are found in the filter element, a magnet can be used to differentiate between ferrous metals and nonferrous metals.

Ferrous metals can indicate wear on steel parts and on cast iron parts.

Nonferrous metals can indicate wear on the aluminum parts of the engine such as main bearings, rod bearings, or turbocharger bearings.

Small amounts of debris may be found in the filter element. This could be caused by friction and by normal wear. Consult your Caterpillar dealer in order to arrange for further analysis if an excessive amount of debris is found.

Using an oil filter element that is not recommended by Caterpillar can result in severe engine damage to engine bearings, to the crankshaft, and to other parts. This can result in larger particles in unfiltered oil. The particles could enter the lubricating system and the particles could cause damage.

i00112638

Seat Belt - Inspect

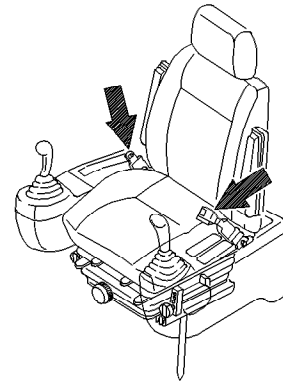
SMCS Code: 7327-040

Illustration 400

g00101563

When this machine was shipped from Caterpillar, Inc., this machine was equipped with a seat belt and with a seat belt installation. At the time of installation, the seat belt and the seat belt installation met "SAE J386 JUN85" for an industrial machine and "SAE J386 JUN93". Consult your Caterpillar dealer for all replacement parts.

Regardless of appearance, replace the seat belt after every three years of use. A date label for determining the age of the seat belt is attached to each seat belt.

Always check the condition of the seat belt and the condition of the seat belt mounting hardware before you operate the machine. If damage or wear is found, replace either the seat belt or the seat belt mounting hardware before operating the machine.

i06891605

Seat Belt - Replace

SMCS Code: 7327-510**S/N:** 1YS1-Up

The seat belt should be replaced within 3 years of the date of installation. A date of installation label is attached to the seat belt retractor and buckle. If the date of installation label is missing, replace belt within 3 years from the year of manufacture as indicated on belt webbing label, buckle housing, or installation tags (non-retractable belts).

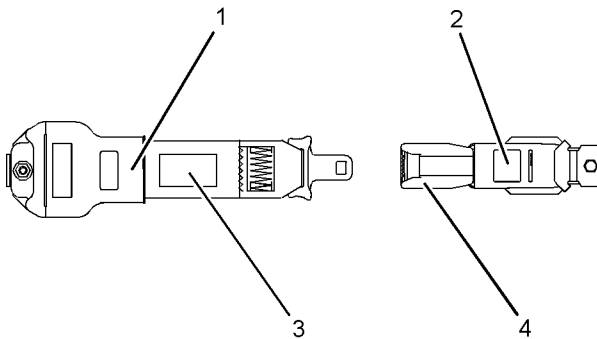


Illustration 401

g01152685

Typical Example

- (1) Date of installation (retractor)
- (2) Date of installation (buckle)
- (3) Year of manufacture (tag) (fully extended web)
- (4) Year of manufacture (underside) (buckle)

Consult your Cat dealer for the replacement of the seat belt and the mounting hardware.

Determine age of new seat belt before installing on seat. A manufacture label is on belt webbing and imprinted on belt buckle. Do not exceed install by date on label.

Complete seat belt system should be installed with new mounting hardware.

Date of installation labels should be marked and affixed to the seat belt retractor and buckle.

Note: Date of installation labels should be permanently marked by punch (retractable belt) or stamp (non-retractable belt).

If your machine is equipped with a seat belt extension, also perform this replacement procedure for the seat belt extension.

i00059356

Swing Bearing - Lubricate**SMCS Code:** 7063-086

Wipe the fittings before you lubricate the swing bearings.

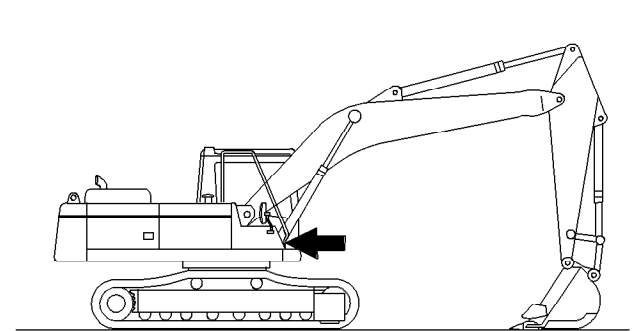


Illustration 402

g00101569

The swing bearings are under the base of the boom.

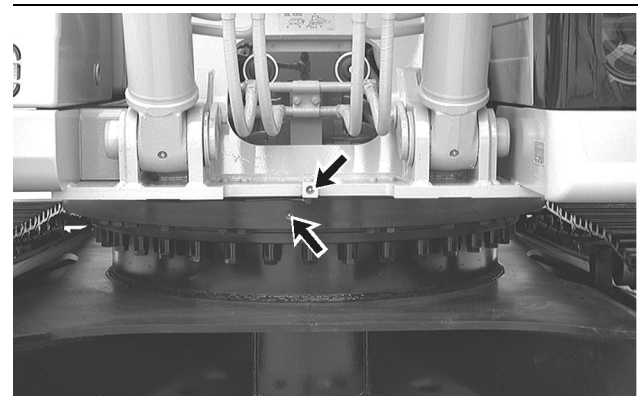


Illustration 403

g00101570

Apply lubricant through the fittings until the lubricant overflows the bearing seals.

i00118503

Swing Drive Oil - Change

SMCS Code: 5459-044

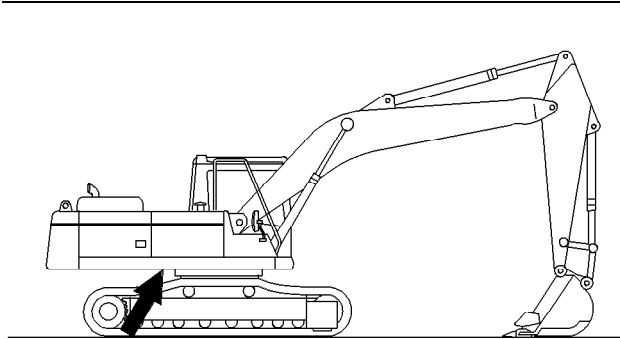


Illustration 404

g00101586

The oil drain hose is under the center of the upper structure.

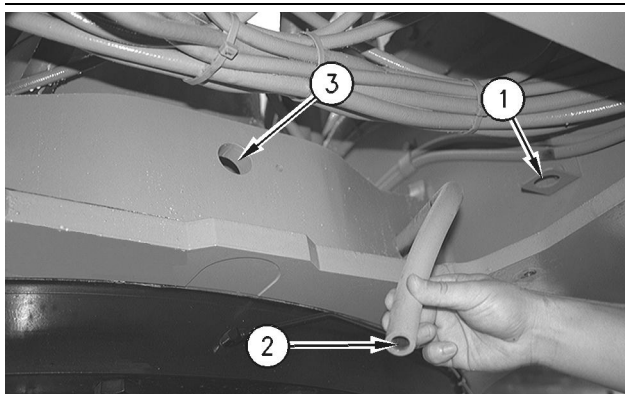


Illustration 405

g00101591

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on Containing Fluid Spillage.

1. Remove drain hose (2) from holder (1) on the upper frame. Face the end of the hose toward the container.
2. Use a universal joint with a socket extension to loosen the drain valve in hole (3). Drain the oil into a suitable container.

Note: Drained fluids should always be disposed of according to local regulations.

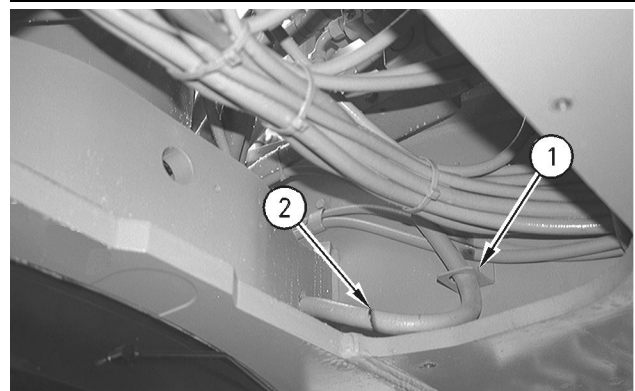


Illustration 406

g00101600

3. Tighten the drain valve. Hook drain hose (2) to holder (1). Make sure that the end of the hose is facing upward.

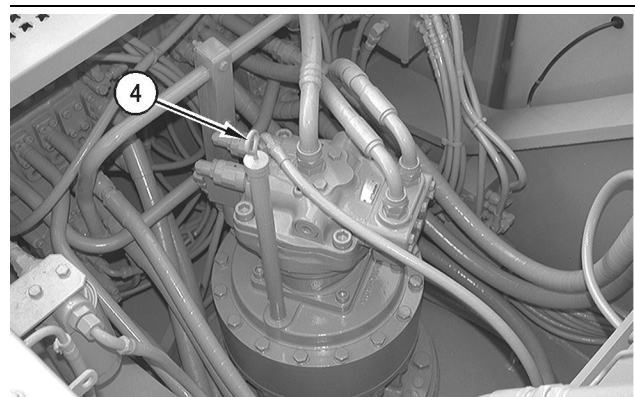


Illustration 407

g00101605

4. Remove dipstick (4).
5. Add the specified quantity of oil through the dipstick tube. See Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Refill Capacities".

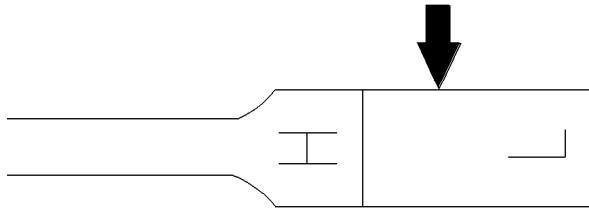


Illustration 408

g00101610

6. Make sure that the oil level is maintained between the marks on dipstick (4).
7. Check the oil that has been drained for metal chips or metal particles. Consult your Caterpillar dealer if any metal chips or metal particles are found.
8. Drained materials should always be disposed of according to local regulations.

i00059375

Swing Drive Oil Level - Check

SMCS Code: 5459-535-FLV

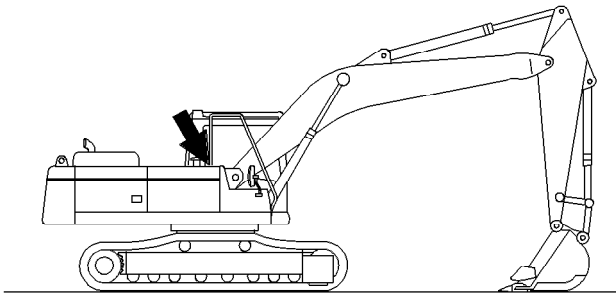


Illustration 409

g00101622

The dipstick for the swing drive oil is on the swing drive at the rear base of the boom.

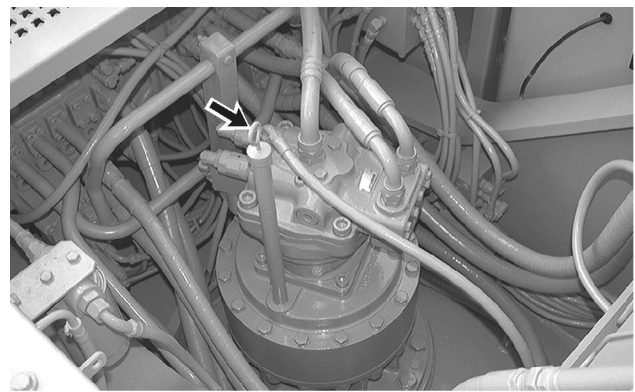


Illustration 410

g00101623

1. Remove the dipstick.

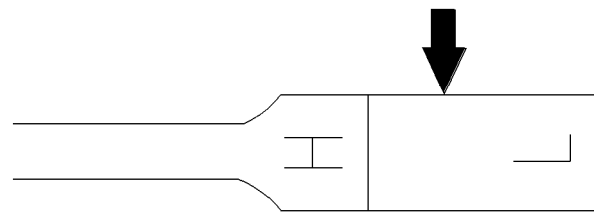


Illustration 411

g00101624

Note: Refer to Operation and Maintenance Manual, "General Hazard Information" for information on Containing Fluid Spillage.

2. Check the dipstick. Maintain the oil level between the marks on the dipstick. Add oil through the dipstick tube, if necessary.
3. Insert the dipstick.

i03754129

Swing Drive Oil Sample - Obtain

SMCS Code: 5459-OC; 5459-008-OC; 5459-554-OC; 5459-008; 7542-008

WARNING

Hot oil and hot components can cause personal injury. Do not allow hot oil or hot components to contact skin.

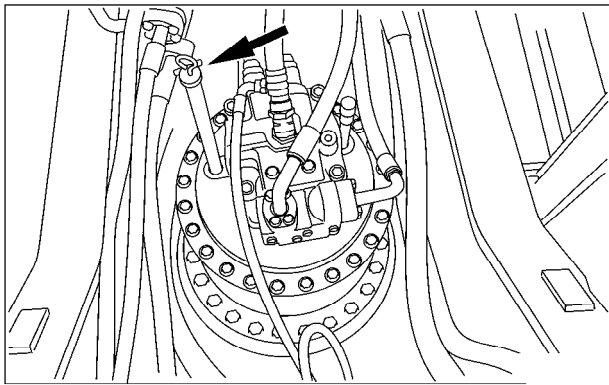


Illustration 412

g00831846

Obtain an oil sample of the swing drive oil through the opening for the dipstick. Refer to Special Publication, SEBU6250, "S·O·S Oil Analysis" for information that pertains to obtaining an oil sample from the swing drive housing. Refer to Special Publication, PEGJ0047, "How To Take A Good Oil Sample" for more information about obtaining an oil sample from the swing drive housing.

i05647259

Track Adjustment - Adjust

SMCS Code: 4170-025

WARNING

Personal injury or death can result from grease under pressure.

Grease coming out of the relief valve under pressure can penetrate the body causing injury or death.

Do not watch the relief valve to see if grease is escaping. Watch the track or track adjustment cylinder to see if the track is being loosened.

Loosen the relief valve one turn only.

If track does not loosen, close the relief valve and contact your Caterpillar dealer.

NOTICE

Keeping the track properly adjusted will increase the service life of the track and drive components.

Note: The track tension must be adjusted according to the current operating conditions. Keep the track as slack as possible if the soil is heavy.

Measuring Track Tension

1. Operate the machine in the direction of the idlers.

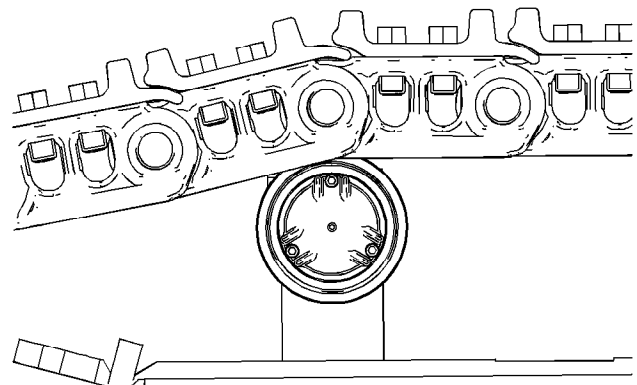


Illustration 413

g01103855

2. Stop with one track pin directly over the front carrier roller. Park the machine and turn off the engine.

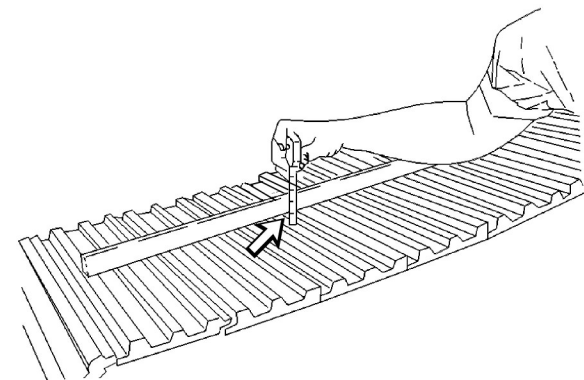


Illustration 414

g03472827

3. Place a straight edge on top of the track grousers between the front carrier roller and the idler. The straight edge should be long enough to reach from the front carrier roller to the idler.

Note: If your machine is equipped with three carrier rollers, place a straight edge on the tracks between the carrier rollers. The straight edge should be long enough to reach from one carrier roller to another carrier roller.

4. Measure the maximum amount of sag in the track. The sag is measured from the highest point of the track grouser to the bottom of the straight edge. A track that is properly adjusted will have a sag of 40.0 to 55.0 mm (1.57 to 2.17 inch).

5. If the track is too tight, or if the track is too loose, adjust the track tension according to the appropriate procedure below.

Adjusting Track Tension

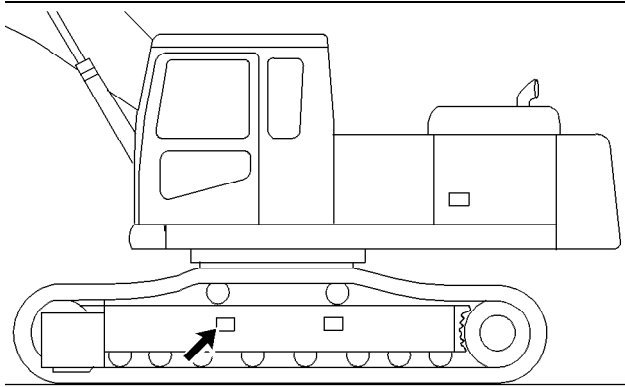


Illustration 415

g00270405

Typical example

The track adjuster is located on the track frame.

Tightening the Track

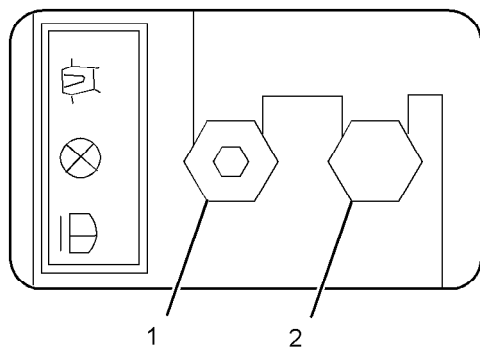


Illustration 416

g01091134

- (1) Grease fitting
(2) Relief valve

Wipe the fitting before you add grease.

1. Add grease through grease fitting (1) until the correct track tension is reached.
2. Operate the machine back and forth in order to equalize the pressure.
3. Check the amount of sag. Adjust the track, as needed.

Loosening the Track

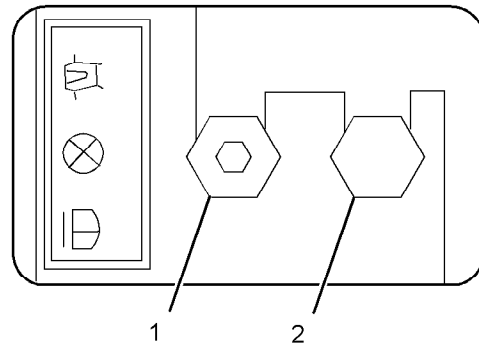


Illustration 417

g01091134

- (1) Grease fitting
(2) Relief valve

1. Loosen relief valve (2) carefully until the track begins to loosen. One turn should be the maximum.
2. Tighten relief valve (2) to $34 \pm 5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$ ($25 \pm 4 \text{ lb ft}$) when the desired track tension is reached.
3. Operate the machine back and forth in order to equalize the pressure.
4. Check the amount of sag. Adjust the track, as needed.

i00059457

Track Adjustment - Inspect

SMCS Code: 4170-040



Illustration 418

g00101790

Check the track adjustment. Check the track for wear and for excessive dirt buildup.

If the track appears to be too tight or too loose, see Operation and Maintenance Manual, "Track Adjustment - Adjust".

i01981714

Travel Alarm - Test (If Equipped)

SMCS Code: 7429-081

You must move the machine in order to test the travel alarm.

1. Start the engine. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the UNLOCKED position.
2. Raise the implements in order to avoid any obstacles. Make sure that there is adequate overhead clearance.

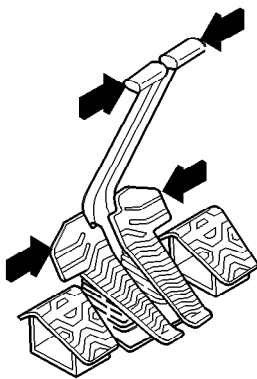


Illustration 419

g00560313

3. Use the travel levers or the travel pedals to move the machine forward. The travel alarm should sound.
4. Release the travel levers and the travel pedals in order to stop the machine.
5. Use the travel levers and the travel pedals to move the machine backward. The travel alarm should sound.

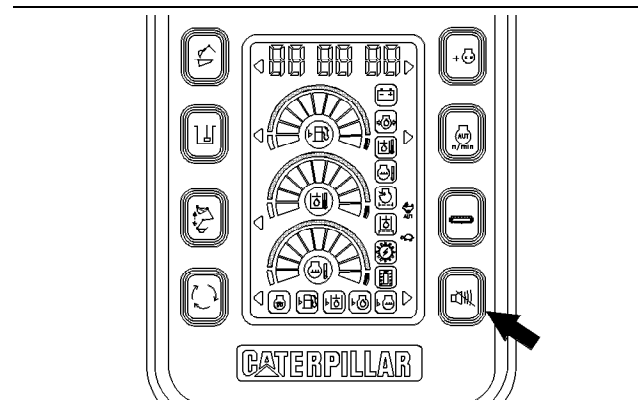


Illustration 420

g00101993

6. Push the alarm cancel switch. The travel alarm should shut off.
7. Stop the machine. Lower the implements. Move the hydraulic lockout control to the LOCKED position. Stop the engine.

i03934011

Undercarriage - Check

SMCS Code: 4150-535

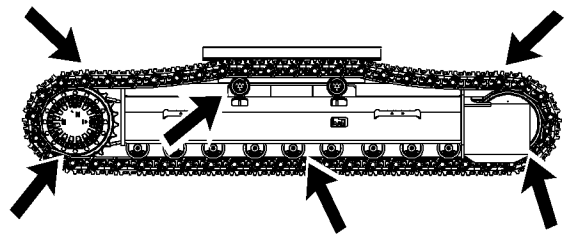


Illustration 421

g02154815

1. Check the carrier rollers, the track rollers, and the idler wheels for possible leakage.
2. Check the surface of the track, the carrier rollers, the track rollers, the idler wheels, the track shoes, and the drive sprockets. Look for signs of wear and loose mounting bolts.
3. Listen for any abnormal noises while you are moving slowly in an open area.
4. If abnormal wear exists or abnormal noises or leaks are found, consult your Caterpillar dealer.

i01150376

Window Washer Reservoir - Fill

SMCS Code: 7306-544-KE

NOTICE

When operating in freezing temperatures, use Caterpillar or any commercially available nonfreezing window washer solvent.

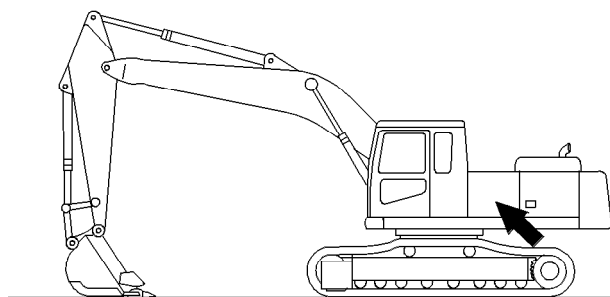


Illustration 422

g00101721

The washer fluid bottle is located behind the cab.

1. Open the access door on the left side of the machine.



Illustration 423

g00101722

2. Remove the filler cap.
3. Fill the washer fluid bottle with washer fluid through the filler opening.
4. Install the filler cap.
5. Close the access door.

6. The window washer nozzles can be adjusted so that the washer fluid will be sprayed in the desired direction.

i01258249

Window Wiper - Inspect/ Replace

SMCS Code: 7305-040; 7305-510

Inspect the condition of the wiper blades. Replace the wiper blades if the wiper blades are worn or damaged or if streaking occurs.

i03912371

Windows - Clean

SMCS Code: 7310-070; 7340-070

S/N: 2JR1-Up

Clean the outside of the windows from the ground, unless handholds are available.

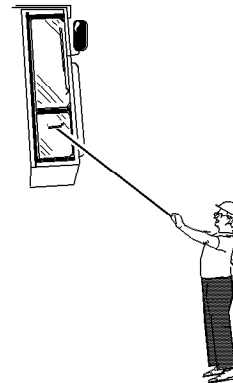


Illustration 424

g00566124

Typical example

Cleaning Methods

Aircraft Window Cleaner

Apply the cleaner with a soft cloth. Rub the window with moderate pressure until all the dirt is removed. Allow the cleaner to dry. Wipe off the cleaner with a clean soft cloth.

Soap and Water

Use a clean sponge or a soft cloth. Wash the windows with a mild soap or with a mild detergent. Also use plenty of lukewarm water. Rinse the windows thoroughly. Dry the windows with a moist chamois or with a moist cellulose sponge.

Stubborn Dirt and Grease

Wash the windows with a good grade of naphtha, of isopropyl alcohol, or of Butyl Cellosolve. Then, wash the windows with soap and with water.

Polycarbonate Windows (If equipped)

Wash polycarbonate windows with a mild soap or detergent. Never use a cleaning solvent on polycarbonate windows.

Wash polycarbonate windows with warm water and a soft sponge, or damp cloth. Never use a dry cloth or paper towels on polycarbonate windows.

Rinse the windows with a sufficient amount of clean water.

Reference Information Section

Reference Materials

i01957765

Reference Material

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

Caterpillar Reference Material

Special Publication, PEHP6046, "Product Data Sheet for Caterpillar Diesel Engine Oils (DEO)", CG-4 engine oils (North America and Australia)

Special Publication, SEBU6250, "Caterpillar Machine Fluids Recommendations".

Special Publication, PEHP7041, "Product Data Sheet for Caterpillar Diesel Engine Oils (DEO)" CG-4 engine oils (International markets)

Special Publication, LEDQ7315, "CG-4 Oil The Preferred Oil for Caterpillar Engines"

Special Publication, PEHP6047, "Product Data Sheet for Caterpillar Biodegradable Hydraulic Oil (BIO HYDO)"

Special Publication, PEHP7508, "Product Data Sheet for Caterpillar Gear Oil (GO)"

Special Publication, PEHP0005, "Product Data Sheet for Caterpillar Hydraulic Oil (HYDO)"

Special Publication, PEHP3050, "Product Data Sheet for Caterpillar Multipurpose Tractor Oil (MTO)"

Special Publication, PEHP7506, "Product Data Sheet for Caterpillar Transmission/Drive Train Oil (TDTO)"

Special Publication, NEHP5621, "How To Select The Right Grease For Any Job"

Special Publication, PEHP0003, "Product Data Sheet for Multipurpose Lithium Complex Grease (MPG)"

Special Publication, PEHP0002, "Product Data Sheet for Multipurpose Lithium Complex Grease with Molybdenum (MPGM)"

Special Publication, PEHP0017, "Product Data Sheet for Special Purpose Grease (SPG) Bearing Lubricant"

Special Publication, PECP6026, "One Safe Source"

Special Publication, SEBD0640, "Oil and Your Engine"

Special Publication, SEBD0717, "Diesel Fuels and Your Engine"

Operation and Maintenance Manual, SEBU5898, "Cold Weather Recommendations"

Special Publication, TEJB1015, "Understanding the S·O·S Report"

Special Publication, PEHP6001, "How to Take a Good Oil Sample"

Special Publication, PEHP4036, "Product Data Sheet for Caterpillar ELC"

Special Publication, PEHP5033, "S·O·S Coolant Analysis"

Special Publication, SEBD0518, "Know Your Cooling System"

Special Publication, SEBD0970, "Coolant and Your Engine"

Special Publication, PEEP5027, "Label - ELC Radiator Label"

Additional Reference Material

ASTM D2896, "TBN Measurements" This can normally be obtained from your local technological society, from your local library, or from your local college.

SAE J313, "Diesel Fuels" This can be found in the SAE handbook. Also, this publication can be obtained from your local technological society, from your local library, or from your local college.

SAE J754, "Nomenclature" This can normally be found in the SAE handbook.

SAE J183, "Classification" This can normally be found in the SAE handbook.

Engine Manufacturers Association Lubricating Oils Data Book

Engine Manufacturers Association
401 North Michigan Avenue
Chicago, Illinois, USA 60611
(312) 644-6610

i03989612

Decommissioning and Disposal

SMCS Code: 1000; 7000

When the product is removed from service, local regulations for the product decommissioning will vary. Disposal of the product will vary with local regulations. Consult the nearest Cat dealer for additional information.

Index

A

Air Conditioning and Heating Control.....	67
Air Conditioning and Heating Control (If Equipped)	69
Automatic Climate Control.....	69
Control Panel	70
Defrost or Dehumidify Operation.....	71
English Versus Metric Toggle	72
Manual Operation	71
Maximum Heating and Cooling Mode	71
Alternate Exit.....	50
Excavator and Material Handler	50
Forest Machine	50
Automatic Engine Speed Control (AEC).....	83
Mode I.....	83
Mode II.....	83
Mode III.....	83
Auxiliary Fuel Tank Switch	64

B

Backup Controls	84
Battery - Clean.....	143
Battery - Recycle	143
Battery Disconnect Switch	56
Battery Hold-Down - Tighten.....	143
Battery or Battery Cable - Inspect/Replace...	143
Before Operation	23, 47
Before Starting Engine	22
Belt - Inspect/Adjust/Replace	144
Air Conditioner Belt.....	145
Alternator Belt and Fan Drive Belt.....	144
Water Pump Belt.....	144
Boom and Stick Linkage - Lubricate	146
Forest Machine	146
Material Handler	148
Boom, Stick and Bucket Linkage - Lubricate	150
Boom, Stick and Bucket Operation	109
Digging.....	109
Lifting Objects	111
Machines that are Equipped with a Long Reach Configuration	112
Bucket Linkage - Inspect/Adjust.....	151
Bucket Tips - Inspect/Replace	152
Bucket Tips	152
Side Cutters	154
Burn Prevention.....	18
Batteries.....	18

Coolant	18
Oils.....	18

C

Cab Air Filter (Fresh Air) - Clean/Replace	155
Cab Tilt Hydraulic System Oil - Change.....	155
Cab Tilt Hydraulic System Oil Level - Check.....	156
Cab Tilt Hydraulic System Screen - Clean/Replace	156
Cab Tilting	123
Forest Machine	123
Material Handler	124
Changing Direction and Speed	104
Circuit Breakers - Reset	157
Clock Adjustment	62
Condenser (Refrigerant) - Clean.....	157
Cooling System Coolant (ELC) - Change	158
Cooling System Coolant Extender (ELC) - Add	159
Cooling System Coolant Level - Check.....	160
Cooling System Coolant Sample (Level 1) - Obtain	162
Cooling System Coolant Sample (Level 2) - Obtain	163
Cooling System Hoses - Inspect.....	163
Replace the Hoses	164
Crushing Prevention and Cutting Prevention..	17

D

Daily Inspection	47
Daily Basis	47
First 100 Hours	47
Severe Applications.....	47
Decommissioning and Disposal.....	197

E

Electrical Storm Injury Prevention.....	22
Engine Air Filter Secondary Element - Replace	164
Engine and Machine Warm-Up.....	102
Engine Governor Oil Supply Screen - Clean/Inspect/Replace	165
Engine Oil and Filter - Change	167
Engine Oil Level - Check.....	165
Engine Oil Sample - Obtain.....	167

Engine Speed Control	77	Fuel System Primary Filter (Water Separator) Element - Replace	175
Backup Method for Controlling Engine Speed	77	Fuel System Priming Pump - Operate	172
Engine Starting	23, 98	Fuel System Secondary Filter Number One - Replace (Lower Filter)	172
Engine Starting (Alternate Methods)	132	Fuel System Secondary Filter Number Two - Replace (Upper Filter)	174
Engine Starting with Ether Starting Aid (If Equipped)	99	Fuel System Water Separator - Drain	175
Engine Starting with Jump Start Cables (If Equipped)	132	Fuel Tank Cap and Strainer - Clean	176
Engine Valve Lash and Fuel Injector Timing - Check	169	Fuel Tank Shutoff and Drain Control	96
Equipment Lowering with Engine Stopped	26, 105	Excavator and Material Handler	96
Machine with a Boom Lowering Control Valve	106	Forest Machine	96
Machine without a Boom Lowering Control Valve	105	Fuses - Replace	177
F		G	
Final Drive Oil - Change	169	Gauges	62
Final Drive Oil Level - Check	169	General Hazard Information	15
Final Drive Oil Sample - Obtain	170	Containing Fluid Spillage	16
Final Drive Ring Gear Removal	130	Dispose of Waste Properly	17
Final Drive Sun Gear Removal	131	Fluid Penetration	16
Fine Swing Control	85	Inhalation	17
Fire Extinguisher Location	22	Pressurized Air and Water	16
Fire Prevention and Explosion Prevention	19	Trapped Pressure	16
Battery and Battery Cables	20	General Information	31
Ether	21	Grapple Float Control	91
Fire Extinguisher	21	Guards	29
General	19	Guards (Operator Protection)	
Lines, Tubes, and Hoses	21	Other Guards (If Equipped)	29
Wiring	20	Rollover Protective Structure (ROPS), Falling Object Protective Structure (FOPS) or Tip Over Protection Structure (TOPS)	29
Forest Machine Operation	113	H	
Log Loader (Butt-N-Top)	114	Hammer Control	91
Log Loader (Heel Type)	113	Hammer Operation (If Equipped)	116
Foreword	4	Hydraulic Lockout Control	85
California Proposition 65 Warning	4	Hydraulic System Oil Filter - Replace	183
Certified Engine Maintenance	5	Replace the Case Drain Filter	184
Literature Information	4	Replace the Case Drain Filter for the Generator (If Equipped)	185
Machine Capacity	5	Replace the Pilot Filter	183
Maintenance	4	Hydraulic System Oil Filter (Return) - Replace	178
Operation	4	Hydraulic System Oil Sample - Obtain	187
Product Identification Number	5	Hydraulic Tank Shutoff Valve (If Equipped)	96
Safety	4	I	
Freezing Conditions	118	Identification Information	46
Frozen Ground Conditions	105	Implement Changing	115
Fuel System Primary Filter - Clean/Replace	170		

Implement Releasing.....	116	Every 250 Service Hours.....	142
Implement Securing.....	115	Every 250 Service Hours or Monthly.....	142
Important Safety Information.....	2	Every 3 Years After Date of Installation or Every 5 Years After Date of Manufacture.....	142
Indicators and Gauges - Test.....	187	Every 50 Service Hours or Weekly.....	141
J			
Joystick Controls.....	86	Every 500 Service Hours.....	142
Excavator.....	86	Every 500 Service Hours or 3 Months.....	142
Forest Machine.....	87	Every 6000 Service Hours or 3 Years.....	142
Material Handler.....	88	Every Year.....	142
Joystick Controls Alternate Patterns (If Equipped).....	92	Initial 250 Service Hours.....	141
L			
Leaving the Machine.....	119	Initial 500 Hours (for New Systems, Refilled Systems, and Converted Systems).....	142
Storing Vandalism Guards.....	120	When Required.....	141
Lifting and Tying Down the Machine.....	128	Maintenance Section.....	134
Lifting Capacities.....	31	Maintenance Support.....	140
322B Forest Machine.....	31	Material Handler Operation.....	114
325B Forest Machine.....	37	Mirror Installation.....	127
325B Material Handler.....	44	Monitoring System.....	56
Lifting Objects.....	25	Prestart Monitoring Function.....	58
Light Switches.....	65	Warning Categories.....	58
Lubricant Viscosities (Fluids Recommendations).....	134	Mounting and Dismounting.....	48
Biodiesel.....	139	Machine Access System Specifications.....	49
Coolant Information.....	139	O	
Diesel Fuel Recommendations.....	138	Oil Filter - Inspect.....	188
Engine Oil.....	134	Inspect a Used Filter for Debris.....	188
Fuel Additives.....	139	Operating Technique Information.....	107
General Information for Lubricants.....	134	Operating Precaution.....	109
Hydraulic Systems.....	135	Restricted Operation.....	107
Other Fluid Applications.....	136	Operating Techniques.....	107
Selecting the Viscosity.....	134	Operation.....	24, 103
Special Lubricants.....	137	Limiting Conditions and Criteria.....	24
Lubricant Viscosities and Refill Capacities ...	134	Machine Operating Temperature Range.....	24
M			
Machine Operation.....	50	Machine Operation.....	24
Magnet Controller and Monitor Panel.....	63	Machine Operation when the Machine is not Completely Assembled.....	25
Maintenance Interval Schedule.....	141	Operation Information.....	103
Every 10 Service Hours or Daily.....	141	Operation Section.....	47
Every 10 Service Hours or Daily for First 100 Hours.....	141	Operator Controls.....	54
Every 10 Service Hours or Daily for Machines Used in Severe Applications.....	141	Operator Station.....	29
Every 1000 Service Hours or 6 Months.....	142	P	
Every 12 000 Service Hours or 6 Years.....	142	Parking.....	25, 118
Every 2000 Service Hours or 1 Year.....	142	Plate Locations and Film Locations.....	46
M			
Machine Operation.....	50	Power Mode Control.....	79
Magnet Controller and Monitor Panel.....	63	Product Information Section.....	31
Maintenance Interval Schedule.....	141		
Every 10 Service Hours or Daily.....	141		
Every 10 Service Hours or Daily for First 100 Hours.....	141		
Every 10 Service Hours or Daily for Machines Used in Severe Applications.....	141		
Every 1000 Service Hours or 6 Months.....	142		
Every 12 000 Service Hours or 6 Years.....	142		
Every 2000 Service Hours or 1 Year.....	142		

R

Reference Information Section	197
Reference Material	197
Additional Reference Material	197
Caterpillar Reference Material.....	197
Reference Materials	197

S

S·O·S Information	139
Safety Messages.....	6
Automatic Engine Speed Control (AEC)	10
Certification for Falling Object Guard Structure (If Equipped).....	14
Changes To Machine Control Pattern	12
Crush Points	14
Do Not Operate.....	6
Engagement of the Quick Coupler Wedge..	13
Height And Reach Of Machine	6
High Pressure Cylinder.....	9
High Pressure Gas	9
Improper Connections For Jump Start Cables.....	7
Lift Eyes Can Fail.....	8
Machine Control Pattern.....	12
No Ether.....	10
Pressurized System.....	11
Relieve Hydraulic Tank Pressure	8
Tilting the Cab.....	13
Travel Speed Control Switch	11
Safety Section	6
Seat	50
Seat Belt.....	52
Extension of the Seat Belt	54
Seat Belt Adjustment for Non-Retractable Seat Belts.....	52
Seat Belt Adjustment for Retractable Seat Belts	54
Seat Belt - Inspect	188
Seat Belt - Replace	188
Securing the Machine.....	121
Service Hour Meter	65
Shipping the Machine.....	121
Shipping a Machine that is not Completely Assembled	121
Sound Information and Vibration Information.....	26
Sound Level Information.....	26
Sources.....	28
“The European Union Physical Agents (Vibration) Directive 2002/44/EC”	26

Stopping the Engine	119
Stopping the Machine.....	118
Storage Box.....	66
Exterior Storage Box	67
Interior Storage Box.....	66
Swing Bearing - Lubricate	189
Swing Drive Oil - Change	190
Swing Drive Oil Level - Check.....	191
Swing Drive Oil Sample - Obtain.....	191

T

Table of Contents	3
Towing Information	129
Towing the Machine.....	129
Lightweight Towing	130
Retrieval and Towing of Machine	130
Track Adjustment - Adjust	192
Adjusting Track Tension	193
Measuring Track Tension	192
Track Adjustment - Inspect.....	193
Track Information	22
Transportation Information	121
Travel Alarm - Test (If Equipped).....	194
Travel Alarm (If Equipped)	66
Travel Alarm Cancel Switch	66
Travel Control	75
Travel Control (Straight Travel Pedal (If Equipped)).....	74
Travel Speed Control	78

U

Undercarriage - Check	194
User Mode Control	81
Activating Memory	81
Selecting a Submode	82
Setting the Customer Mode.....	82

W

Welding on Machines and Engines with Electronic Controls	140
Window (Front).....	72
Lower Windshield	73
Upper Windshield	72
Window Washer Reservoir - Fill	195
Window Wiper - Inspect/Replace	195
Window Wiper and Washer Control	73
Windows - Clean	195
Cleaning Methods.....	195
Polycarbonate Windows (If equipped)	196

Work Mode Control	80
Work Tool Electronic Controller.....	94
Work Tool Flow Mode Control (If Equipped) ...	93
Work Tools.....	23

Product and Dealer Information

Note: For product identification plate locations, see the section "Product Identification Information" in the Operation and Maintenance Manual.

Delivery Date: _____

Product Information

Model: _____

Product Identification Number: _____

Engine Serial Number: _____

Transmission Serial Number: _____

Generator Serial Number: _____

Attachment Serial Numbers: _____

Attachment Information: _____

Customer Equipment Number: _____

Dealer Equipment Number: _____

Dealer Information

Name: _____ Branch: _____

Address: _____

Dealer Contact

Phone Number

Hours

Sales: _____

Parts: _____

Service: _____

SEBU6939
©2019 Caterpillar
All Rights Reserved

CAT, CATERPILLAR, LET'S DO THE WORK, their respective logos, "Caterpillar Corporate Yellow", the "Power Edge" and Cat "Modern Hex" trade dress as well as corporate and product identity used herein, are trademarks of Caterpillar and may not be used without permission.

